



LLB FIVE YEARS DEGREE PROGRAMME

NOTES

***According to the Syllabus of University of Azad Jammu
& Kashmir Muzaffarabad and Other Public, Private
Sector Universities of Pakistan***

Prepared By

- **Advocate Muhammad Adnan Masood Joja**
- **Sardar Javed Zahoor Khan (Advocate)**

CITI Law College Rawalakot

05824-442207, 444222, 0332-4573251, 051-4852737

Near CMH Rawalakot AJK

Web:-www.clc.edu.pk

Citi Law College

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ



بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ
وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا صَلَّيْتَ
عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ
إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مُجِيدٌ
اللَّهُمَّ بَارِكْ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى
آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا بَارَكْتَ عَلَى
إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ
إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مُجِيدٌ

Citi Law College

Failure is a WORD ...
Unknown to me !

(Muhammad Ali Jinnah)





Parts of Speech

NOUNS

A noun is the word that refers to a person, thing or abstract idea. A noun can tell you who or what.

There are several different types of noun: -

There are common nouns such as dog, car, chair etc.

- Nouns that refer to things which can be counted (can be singular or plural) are countable nouns.
- Nouns that refer to some groups of countable nouns, substances, feelings and types of activity (can only be singular) are uncountable nouns.
- Nouns that refer to a group of people or things are collective nouns.
- Nouns that refer to people, organizations or places are proper nouns, only proper nouns are capitalized.
- Nouns that are made up of two or more words are called compound nouns.
- Nouns that are formed from a verb by adding -ing are called gerunds.

EXERCISES:

1. The book was heavy.
2. The child is happy.
3. The box was empty.
4. The synopsis is accurate.
5. The tomato was being baked.

ANSWERS:

1. The books were heavy.
2. The children are happy.
3. The boxes were empty.
4. The synopses are accurate.
5. The tomatoes were being baked.

VERB

The verb is perhaps the most important part of the sentence. A verb or compound verb asserts something about the subject of the sentence and express actions, events, or states of being. The verb or compound verb is the critical element of the predicate of a sentence. In each of the following sentences, the verb or compound verb is highlighted:

Transitive Verbs followed by Adverbs

Back up: support I will back up your story.

Bail out: rescue If you run into difficulties, who will bail you out?

Break in: make something new fit for use I broke in my new hiking boots.

Breathe in: inhale we breathed in the fresh air.

Breathe out: exhale I breathed out a sigh of relief.

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives describe or give information about nouns. The good news is that the form of adjectives does not change; it does not matter if the noun being modified is male or female, singular or plural, subject or object. Some adjectives give us factual information about the noun - age, size colour etc (fact adjectives - can't be argued with). Some adjectives show what somebody thinks about something or somebody - nice, horrid, beautiful etc (opinion adjectives - not everyone may agree).

EXERCISE

1. Yesterday she heard _____ news. (to surprise)
2. The _____ tools must be returned by five o'clock. (to rent)
3. The _____ rabbit stayed perfectly still. (to frighten)
4. We had a _____ experience. (to frighten)
5. The play is _____. (to entertain)

ANSWERS:

1. Surprising
2. Rented
3. Frightened
4. Frightening
5. Entertaining

Preposition

A preposition links noun, pronouns and phrases to other words in a sentence. The word or phrase that the preposition introduces is called the object of the preposition. A preposition usually indicates the temporal, spatial or logical relationship of its object to the rest of the sentence as in the following examples:

- The book is on the table.
- The book is beneath the table.
- The book is leaning against the table.
- The book is beside the table.
- She held the book over the table. She read the book during class.

Conjunction

You can use a conjunction to link words, phrases, and clauses, as in the following

Example

I ate the pizza and the pasta.

Call the movers when you are ready.

Coordinating Conjunctions

You use a coordinating conjunction ("and," "but," "or," "nor," "for," "so," or "yet") to join individual words, phrases, and independent clauses. Note that you can also use the conjunctions "but" and "for" as prepositions. In the following sentences, each of the highlighted words is a coordinating conjunction-

Subordinating Conjunctions

A subordinating conjunction introduces a dependent clause and indicates the nature of the relationship among the independent clause(s) and the dependent clause(s). The most common subordinating conjunctions are "after," "although," "as," "because," "before," "how," "if," "once," "since," "than," "that," "though," "till," "until," "when," "where," "whether," and "while." Each of the highlighted words in the following sentences is a subordinating conjunction: After she had learned to drive,

Alice felt more independent. The subordinating conjunction "after" introduces the dependent clause "After she had learned to drive." If the paperwork arrives on time, your cheque will be mailed on Tuesday. Similarly, the subordinating conjunction "if" introduces the dependent clause "If the paperwork arrives on time." Gerald had to begin his thesis over again when his computer crashed. The subordinating conjunction "when" introduces the dependent clause "when his computer crashed."

Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions always appear in pairs -- you use them to link equivalent sentence elements. The most common correlative conjunctions are "both...and," "either...or," "neither...nor," "not only...but also," "so...as," and "whether...or." (Technically correlative conjunctions consist simply of a coordinating conjunction linked to an adjective or adverb.) The highlighted words in the following sentences are correlative conjunctions: Both my grandfather and my father worked in the steel plant. In this sentence, the correlative conjunction "both...and" is used to link the two noun phrases that act as the compound subject of the sentence: "my grandfather" and "my father".

Sentence Structure

Using different types of sentences allows you to highlight different relationships between ideas and to add variety to your writing. This resource is designed to help you to construct sentences accurately, so that your meaning is clear

Clauses and phrases

Sentences are made up of clauses and phrases. All sentences must have at least one independent clause. A clause is a group of words which has: a subject, ie. the focus of the clause, or someone or thing which does something in the clause and a complete finite verb, ie. a verb which has a subject and a sense of time.

For example, Subject Verb The lecture finished at 3 pm Pollution causes cancer New Zealand is in the south Pacific

There are two kinds of clauses: independent (or main) clauses and dependent (or subordinate) clauses

Independent

An independent clause expresses a complete thought and can stand on its own as a sentence e.g. learning a new language is often frustrating.

Dependent

A dependent clause does not express a complete thought and needs to be joined to an independent clause to become a sentence. It usually begins with a word such as although, while, because, who, which, if, etc. e.g. although learning a new language is often frustrating.

Simple sentences

A simple sentence has only one clause, which must be an independent clause. The word "simple" does not necessarily mean "easy"; simple sentences can also contain

phrases, so they are often long and complicated. However, they still have only one subject and one finite verb.

EXAMPLES

The level of unemployment increased.

The course includes practical report writing.

The Muslim Family Laws act was passed in 1961.

Compound sentences

A compound sentence has two or more independent clauses.

EXAMPLE

The bus stopped, and we got out.

I enjoy playing tennis, but I hate playing golf.

Learning a language is difficult; however, it is worth the effort.

Complex sentences

A complex sentence has one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.

EXAMPLES

Because she did not know the route well, she drove slowly.

She drove slowly because she did not know the route well.

Punctuation Marks

Punctuation marks are pauses or gestures used to clarify the meaning of our words.

"They are signals to the reader that indicate pause, place emphasis, alter the function or show the relationship between the elements of the text."

Importance of Punctuations Marks:

There is no doubt about punctuation marks importance. It has a great importance in writing; it facilitates the reading of a reader, and prevent confusion and overlap between the sentence and words, and if a good writer uses them, and put them in their right positions, they will help the reader to understand what is written. If the writer neglected these signs, used or abused and did not put them in their right positions, it will be difficult to read for the reader, and may lead to misunderstand what is written.

Punctuation Marks and their Usages

Comma (,)

When a subordinate (less important) clause comes before the principal clause.e.g. If you do not go, help me.

To separate phrases in apposition (describing the same Person or thing mentioned earlier) from the rest of sentence.

e.g. Mr. Brwon, the doctor, said that he travelled to Canada.

To separate items in the same list.

e.g. She travelled to America , Canda, and Australia.

Full stop(.)

A full stop is used at the end of the sentence and the next sentence begins with a capital letter.

e.g. Ali felt tired. He went to bed.

an abbreviation ends in a full stop and with acronyms

e.g. Etcetera→ etc. Mr. B.B.C.

Colon (:)

The use of a colon indicates that what follows is an explanation of what precedes it.

e.g. They have some news about the story: John's father has arrived.

It is also used to introduce a list of the items.

e.g. To travel, you need the following items: a passport, a visa, an application and the correct fee.

Semi colon (;)

A semi colon is used to join two independent but related clauses or sentences.

e.g. She is a good writer; she has published several books.

It can also separate clauses of conjunctive adverbs such as however, therefore, moreover...

e.g. We shouldn't go to the fair; however, I do hear that they have good funnel cakes.

Quotation mark (")

A Quotation marks are used for material that is quoted or emphasized.

e.g. Ali said, 'I cannot finish my quiz'

Quotation marks are used to set off the title of short works of writing.

e.g. the television show, 'Cheers'

Apostrophe (')

An apostrophe is used to refer to possessive singular or plural

e.g. The boy's books. (singular)

e.g. The boys' books. (plural)

An apostrophe is used always to be included when telling the time

e.g. It is eight o'clock.

An apostrophe is used to show letters are missing in words (omission).

e.g. You're→ You are

e.g. I'm→ I am

Exclamation mark (!)

An exclamation mark is used to signal the expression of a strong emotions such

As:a

Excitement: e.g. I can't wait! b-Panic: Ex/ Help me!

An exclamation mark is used to add an emphasis to the sentence

e.g. There's a fly in my Soup. There's a fly in my Soup!

Ellipsis (...)

An ellipsis is used to show that the speaker has been cut off abruptly (interrupted).

e.g. 'Whatever you do, don't...'

An ellipsis is used to indicate a trailing off in speech or thought.

e.g. We could do this ... or maybe that...

Slash (/)

Slash is used with fractions.

e.g. 1/2 = one-half

e. g. 2/3 = two-third

Use a slash to separate the day, month, and a year in dates.

e.g. He was born on 18/3/1987

Question mark (?)

Use question mark at the end of any direct questions.

e.g. Who is your teacher?

Use a question mark at the end of a tag question (a statement followed by a short question).

e.g. You speak English, don't you?

Hyphen (-)

A hyphen may separate, in some cases, the prefix from the second part of words.

e.g. co-opt, T-shirt.

A hyphen may join some compound words.

e.g. twenty-one.

Parentheses (())

Parentheses or brackets are often used to include extra or additional information into a sentence.

e.g. The library (which was built in the seventeenth century) needs to be repaired.

Parentheses give additional, but non-essential information in a sentence.

e.g. France, America, and Spanish (but not Chinese) may be studied here.

Square Brackets ([])

Square brackets are used to clarification, to help the reader understands the sentence.

e.g. She drove 60 [mile per hour] on the highway to town.

Dash

(Em—Dash, En-Dash)

1-Em—Dash is used to indicate a break, often informally, or to add Parenthetical information.

e.g. They received a prize —and a certificate as well.

2- An En-Dash is used to indicate a range.

e.g. 1939–1945

PRACTICAL USAGE

NOUNS

The first real word you ever used probably was a noun—a word like *mama*, *daddy*, *car*, or *cookie*. Most children begin building their vocabularies with nouns. A noun names *something*: a person, place, or thing. Most other parts of our language either describe nouns, tell what a noun is doing, or take the place of a noun.

Nouns have these characteristics:

They are abstract or concrete.

They are proper or common.

Most are singular or plural, but...

Some are collective.

In English, nouns are often preceded by *noun markers*—the articles/adjectives *a*, *an*, *the*, or *some* for example; or possessive words like *my* or *your*. A noun always follows a noun marker, though adjectives or other words may come between them:

my former roommate
a sunny June day
an objective and very thorough evaluation
some existential angst

Because of their noun markers, you could safely guess that *roommate*, *day*, *evaluation* and *angst* are nouns (even if you didn't know what *angst* was). Although not all nouns are preceded by markers, you can use a noun marker test to identify many, including abstract nouns. Consider this example:

Enthusiasm and willingness to work hard are a remedy for the existential angst of many students.

Remedy is marked as a noun by the noun marker *a*. *Angst* is preceded by the noun marker *the*. *Students* is preceded by the adjective (adjectives modify nouns) *many*. Test the remaining words: can you have *an enthusiasm* or *some enthusiasm*? Certainly: "I have *an enthusiasm* for snowboarding" or "Show *some enthusiasm*!" So *enthusiasm* is a noun. Can you have *an and* or *some and*? Uh, no. So *and* is not a noun. Can you have *a willingness* or *some willingness*? Sure, you can have "a willingness to learn"; *willingness* is also a noun.

Every noun is either abstract or concrete.

Nouns like *enthusiasm*, *willingness* and *angst* are abstract nouns. Abstract nouns name things we cannot see, touch, or detect readily through our senses. Abstract nouns name ideas (*existentialism*, *democracy*), measurements (*weight*, *percent*), emotions (*love*, *angst*), or qualities (*responsibility*). Concrete nouns, on the other hand, name persons, including animals (*cousins*, *Roger Rabbit*), places (*beach*, *Chico*), or things we can see, touch, or otherwise detect through our senses (*smoke*, *beer*).

Every noun is either proper or common.

A proper noun identifies a *particular* person, animal, place, thing, or idea--*Roger Rabbit*, for example. The first letter of each word of a proper noun is capitalized. A common noun does not name a particular person or thing; rather, it refers to a whole class or type. Common nouns do not require capitalization.

Proper noun (capitalized)

*Sierra Nevada Crystal
Wheat*

*The Rooks and the
Rangers*

Bidwell Park

Lundberg Family Farm

is his favorite

*are our local soccer and
baseball*

*is one of the largest
municipal*

is a sustainable, organic

common noun

beer.

teams.

parks.

farm.

Most nouns are either singular or plural...

Most nouns are made plural with the addition of *s* or *es*. Thus, *instructor* becomes *instructors*, and *class* becomes *classes*. Some nouns have irregular plural forms: *man* becomes *men*, and *woman* becomes *women*. *Child* becomes *children*, and *person* becomes *people*.

Many people, both men and women, believe that having children will be a remedy for their existential angst.

Some nouns have the same form in both singular and plural: "A *moose* is crossing the river. No, wait-- *three moose* are crossing the river!"

...but some nouns are collective.

A *collective* noun names a collection or group of things. Although a collective noun refers to a group of many things, it is usually singular in form. We think of a collective noun as singular because its members act in one accord:

The army is withdrawing from those Asian countries that are in negotiations.

Here, *army* is a collective noun referring to a group of many people acting with one will. We treat it as a singular noun. *Countries* is a plural noun. If several countries joined together to form an alliance, we could say this:

The Asian alliance is united in its determination to repel foreign invaders.

In some instances, a collective noun describes a group that is not acting with one will, whose members rather are taking independent, divergent actions. In this case, the collective noun is treated as a plural to reflect the plurality of the members' actions:

The jury were unable to come to any consensus.

If the jury had reached a unanimous decision, we would have said:

The jury was unanimous in its verdict.

DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES

In English there are three articles: *a*, *an*, and *the*. Articles are used before nouns or noun equivalents and are a type of adjective. The definite article (*the*) is used before a noun to indicate that the identity of the noun is known to the reader. The indefinite article (*a*, *an*) is used before a noun that is general or when its identity is not known. There are certain situations in which a noun takes no article.

As a guide, the following definitions and table summarize the basic use of articles. Continue reading for a more detailed explanation of the rules and for examples of how and when to apply them.

Definite article

the (before a singular or plural noun)

Indefinite article

a (before a singular noun beginning with a consonant sound)

an (before a singular noun beginning with a vowel sound)

Count nouns - refers to items that can be counted and are either singular or plural

Non-count nouns - refers to items that are not counted and are always singular

	COUNT NOUNS	NON-COUNT NOUNS
Rule #1 Specific identity not known	<i>a, an</i>	(no article)
Rule #2 Specific identity known	<i>the</i>	<i>the</i>
Rule #3 All things <i>or</i> things in general	(no article)	(no article)

For the purposes of understanding how articles are used, it is important to know that nouns can be either **count** (can be counted) or **noncount** (indefinite in quantity and cannot be counted). In addition, count nouns are either **singular** (one) or **plural** (more than one). **Noncount** nouns are always in **singular** form.

For example, if we are speaking of water that has been spilled on the table, there can be one drop (**singular**) or two or more drops (**plural**) of water on the table. The word *drop* in this example is a **count** noun because we can count the number of drops. Therefore, according to the rules applying to **count** nouns, the word *drop* would use the articles *a* or *the*.

However, if we are speaking of water in general spilled on the table, it would not be appropriate to count *one water* or *two waters*-- there would simply be *water* on the table. Water is a **noncount** noun. Therefore, according to the rules applying to **noncount** nouns, the word *water* would use *no article* or *the*, but not *a*.

Following are the three specific rules which explain the use of definite and indefinite articles.

Rule #1 - Specific identity not known: Use the indefinite article *a* or *an* only with a singular count noun whose specific identity is not known to the reader. Use *a* before nouns that begin with a consonant sound, and use *an* before nouns that begin with a vowel sound.

- Use the article *a* or *an* to indicate any non-specified member of a group or category.

*I think **an** animal is in the garage*

*That man is **a** scoundrel.*

*We are looking for **an** apartment.*

- Use the article *a* or *an* to indicate one in number (as opposed to more than one).

*I own **a** cat and two dogs.*

- Use the article *a* before a consonant sound, and use *an* before a vowel sound.

***a** boy, **an** apple*

◊ Sometimes an adjective comes between the article and noun:

***an** unhappy boy, **a** red apple*

- The plural form of *a* or *an* is *some*. Use *some* to indicate an unspecified, limited amount (but more than one).

an apple, some apples

Rule #2 - Specific identity known: Use the definite article *the* with any noun (whether singular or plural, count or noncount) when the specific identity of the noun is known to the reader, as in the following situations:

- Use the article *the* when a particular noun has already been mentioned previously.
*I ate **an** apple yesterday. **The** apple was juicy and delicious.*
- Use the article *the* when an adjective, phrase, or clause describing the noun clarifies or restricts its identity.
***The** boy sitting next to me raised his hand.*
*Thank you for **the** advice you gave me.*
- Use the article *the* when the noun refers to something or someone that is unique.
***the** theory of relativity*
***the** 2003 federal budget*

Rule #3 - All things or things in general: Use *no article* with plural count nouns or any noncount nouns used to mean *all* or *in general*.

Trees are beautiful in the fall. (All trees are beautiful in the fall.)

He was asking for advice. (He was asking for advice in general.)

I do not like coffee. (I do not like all coffee in general.)

Additional Information Regarding the Use of Articles

- When indicating an unspecified, limited amount of a **count** or **noncount** noun, use *some*.
My cousin was seeking some advice from a counselor (not advice in general or advice about everything, but a limited amount of advice).

I would love some coffee right now (not coffee in general, but a limited amount of coffee).

We might get rain tomorrow. Some rain would be good for the crops (a certain amount of rain, as opposed to rain in general).

There are some drops of water on the table (a limited number, but more than one drop).

- **Noncount nouns** are those which usually cannot be counted. Following are some common examples:
 - ◊ **Certain food and drink items:** bacon, beef, bread, broccoli, butter, cabbage, candy, cauliflower, celery, cereal, cheese, chicken, chocolate, coffee, corn, cream, fish, flour, fruit, ice cream, lettuce, meat, milk, oil, pasta, rice, salt, spinach, sugar, tea, water, wine, yogurt
 - ◊ **Certain nonfood substances:** air, cement, coal, dirt, gasoline, gold, paper, petroleum, plastic, rain, silver, snow, soap, steel, wood, wool
 - ◊ **Most abstract nouns:** advice, anger, beauty, confidence, courage, employment, fun, happiness, health, honesty, information, intelligence, knowledge, love, poverty, satisfaction, truth, wealth
 - ◊ **Areas of study:** history, math, biology, etc.

◇ **Sports:** soccer, football, baseball, hockey, etc.

◇ **Languages:** Chinese, Spanish, Russian, English, etc.

◇ **Other:** clothing, equipment, furniture, homework, jewelry, luggage, lumber, machinery, mail, money, news, poetry, pollution, research, scenery, traffic, transportation, violence, weather, work

- Geographical names are confusing because some require the and some do not.

Use *the* with: united countries, large regions, deserts, peninsulas, oceans, seas, gulfs, canals, rivers, mountain ranges, groups of islands

the Gobi Desert

the United Arab Emirates

the Sacramento River

the Aleutians

◇ **Do not use *the* with:** streets, parks, cities, states, counties, most countries, continents, bays, single lakes, single mountains, islands

Japan

Chico

Mt. Everest

San Francisco Bay

Examples of the Use of Articles

*I do not want **a** gun in my house* (any gun).

***The** gun is in his closet* (implies there is a specific gun).

I am afraid of guns (all guns in general).

*She sent me **a** postcard from Italy* (an unspecific postcard - not a letter, not an e-mail).

*It's **the** postcard that I have in my office* (one specific postcard).

Getting postcards makes me want to travel (any postcard in general).

*I have **a** dog* (one dog).

***The** dog is very friendly* (the dog that I have already mentioned).

Dogs make great pets (dogs in general).

Greta needs furniture in her apartment (furniture is a non-countable noun).

*She is going to select **the** furniture that she needs* (the specific furniture that she needs).

*She hopes to find **some** furniture this weekend* (an unspecified, limited amount of furniture).

*We are going to see **the** Statue of Liberty this weekend* (the only Statue of Liberty).

PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

Prepositions are common; they are not flashy. They are sometimes very little words, like *on*, *in*, and *unlike*; sometimes they are two words, like *according to*. A preposition combined with a noun (or pronoun), in that order, makes a prepositional phrase:

***in** Duffy's Tavern*

***on** the dashboard **of** my car*

unlike most biologists
according to most moviegoers

Prepositional phrases usually tell where or when. Or, as most instructors are fond of saying, they show relationship, for example, of location (*in Duffy's Tavern*) or of time (*in February*).

The formula, with variations

To describe a prepositional phrase we can borrow some math shorthand (although our description does not really function like an equation--the preposition must always come first!):

preposition + noun or pronoun = prepositional phrase

without Suzanna
without her

Stuff can be added between, usually in the form of various adjectives, but a prepositional phrase always begins with the preposition and ends with the noun (or pronoun):

preposition + adjectives + noun or pronoun = prepositional phrase

in a yellow submarine
of the best and brightest students
above it

The second example above adds multiple adjectives (as well as a conjunction) but it begins with the preposition and ends with the noun, and that is what matters.

The noun (or pronoun) that ends a prepositional phrase is called the *object of the preposition*. If all prepositional phrases ended with nouns, you might not care to know this; however, prepositional phrases may also end with pronouns, and those pronouns must be objective pronouns: *her* (not *she*), *him* (not *he*), *me* (not *I*), *them* (not *they*), *us* (not *we*).

*Rossi will come **with** her and me.*
*Why council members didn't explain **about** it was **beyond** us.*

Notice that prepositional phrases may end with double nouns or double pronouns (compound objects of the preposition), as illustrated above.

A complete list of prepositions would be huge. You do not need to know all of them, but become familiar with at least some common prepositions:

about	below	inside	throughout
above	beneath	into	to
across	beside	like	toward
after	between	near	under
against	beyond	of	underneath
along	by	off	unlike
among	down	on	until
around	during	out	up
as	except	outside	upon
at	for	over	with
before	from	past	within

behind

in

through

without

The no-subject rule

Is there any practical advantage to knowing about prepositional phrases, you ask? Well, consider that it is a common mistake for beginning writers to misidentify the subject of a sentence (randomly picking out a likely noun, perhaps), make punctuation choices based on this mistake, and end up with basic sentence errors in their writing. And consider further that you will not make this mistake if you remember this rule: a prepositional phrase never contains the subject of a sentence.

This is the advantage to knowing how to recognize prepositions and prepositional phrases in your own writing. You need to be able to identify the subjects of sentences to be sure you have constructed and punctuated them correctly. For example, you must be able to identify subjects in order to avoid creating comma splices and fragments; ESL learners need to be able to identify the subject in order to make sure the verb is in agreement with the subject.

To make this rule work for you, place parentheses around the prepositional phrases in your sentences. Whatever is inside the parentheses is not the subject, no matter how prominently it is placed:

(After the homecoming game), (before midnight), we will leave.

Since the nouns in this sentence, game and midnight, occur in prepositional phrases, they are disqualified as subjects. That leaves only *we*—a simple pronoun subject buried near the end of the sentence and easily overlooked.

Preposition look-alikes

"Preposition" is a function of the word, not the word itself. A preposition, to be a preposition, must be in a prepositional phrase. Sometimes a word on the list of common prepositions above occurs alone in a sentence, without a noun or pronoun following. In the following example, outside is not a preposition at all, but a simple adverb modifying the verb practice: Please practice your soccer dribbling outside!

For more on adverbs, see the TIP Sheet "Adverbs."

Another preposition look-alike occurs when the word *to* appears followed by a verb rather than by a noun. This is a type of verbal phrase called an *infinitive*.

They practiced their dribbling outside to avoid breaking the furniture.

For more on verbals, see the TIP Sheet "Other Phrases: Verbal, Appositive, Absolute."

Yet another preposition look-alike is the phrasal verb—two-word verbs such as check out, run into, or show up:

Carol never showed up for the soccer game on Sunday.

For more information on phrasal verbs, see the TIP Sheet "Two-word (Phrasal) Verbs."

Problem expressions

Which prepositions go with which verbs in which expressions is often a matter of custom rather than rule. For ESL students in particular, prepositions can be difficult to master. The prepositions describing when something occurs are a good example. If you wish to state that an event occurred generally within a particular season, week, month, or year, use *during* or *in*:

*During the winter break I worked at the Heavenly Valley ski resort.
In 2002 the snow was pretty sparse; we're hoping for more this year.
That year we were already getting spring snow conditions **in February!***

On the other hand, if you are stating that an event occurred on a particular calendar date, weekday, or holiday, use *on*:

*You'd be surprised how many families ski **on Christmas.**
I'll meet you there **on the 24th.***

For specific times of day and clock times, use *at*:

*The best time to catch the gondola to the top is **at 11:30**, just before the lunch rush.
Our favorite ski run of the day is the run from the top **at sunset.***

In addition, one can be *on time* for a scheduled event, but *in time* for an unscheduled one:

*He met me at the bottom of the expert run right **on time**, as we had agreed.
The Ski Patrol arrived just **in time** to keep Jeff from breaking his neck.*

Other expressions mean very different things depending on which prepositions they are paired with, for example, *differ from* (be dissimilar) and *differ with* (disagree with). In comparisons, a thing is *similar to* another thing. We *agree with* a person, but we *agree on* a plan and *agree to* particular actions.

VERBS

If a noun was the first word you ever spoke (*Mama* or *cookie*), a verb probably followed just as soon as you learned that "*Give cookie*" got you better results than "*Cookie*." In a sentence, the verb expresses what the subject does (She *hopes* for the job) or what the subject is (She *is* confident). All verbs are one of three types:

- Action verbs
- Linking verbs
- Helping verbs

Action verbs

In a sentence, an action verb tells what the subject *does*. Action verbs express physical or mental actions: *think, eat, collide, realize, dance*. Admittedly, some of these seem more active than others. Nevertheless, *realize* is still as much a verb as *collide*:

*I finally realized my mistake.
The outfielder collided with the second-baseman.
She dances every Friday night.*

(In the present tense, statements with subjects of *he, she*, or *it*, we add an *s* to the verb: *I go* downstairs, *we go* downstairs, and *ballplayers go* downstairs, but *he goes* downstairs and *Loren goes* downstairs. For more, see the TIP Sheet "Subject-Verb Agreement.")

Linking verbs

Linking verbs are the couch potatoes of verbs, that is, not very active at all. In a sentence, a linking verb tells what the subject *is* rather than what it *does*; linking verbs express a state of being. For example, all the forms of the verb *to be* are linking verbs:

	1st person (I; we)	2nd person (you)	3rd person (she, he, it; they)
present	<i>am; are</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>is; are</i>
past	<i>was; were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>was; were</i>
participle	<i>[have] been; [had] been</i>	<i>[have] been; [had] been</i>	<i>[has] been; [had] been</i>

These verbs connect a subject, say, *Loren*, with more information about that subject: *Loren is an athlete*, or *Loren was glad*.

Another set of linking verbs are those pertaining to our five senses--seeing, tasting, touching, hearing, and smelling--and how we perceive the world: the verbs *appear*, *seem*, *look*, *feel*, *smell*, *taste*, and *sound*, for example. When used as linking verbs, they connect the subject with a word offering more information about that subject:

Loren seems anxious about the test.

The well water tastes wonderful.

My carpet still feels damp.

You sound hoarse.

The curtains smell a little smoky.

As linking verbs, these "sense" verbs have about the same meaning as *is*. *Loren seems anxious* is roughly equivalent to *Loren is anxious*; *the curtains smell smoky* is about the same as *the curtains are smoky*. However, these same "sense" verbs can sometimes be action verbs instead. The real test whether one of these verbs is or is not a linking verb is whether it draws an equivalence with the subject, almost like a math equation: *Loren = anxious*; *curtains = smoky*. Consider the sentence *I can't taste my lunch because I have a cold*. *Taste* here does not draw an equivalence between *I* and *lunch*; rather, here it is an action verb, something the subject does. In the sentence *Can you smell smoke?* *smell* does not describe what the subject *is*, but what the subject *does*; it is an action verb.

Other common linking verbs include *become*, *remain*, and *grow*, when they link the subject to more information (either a noun or an adjective) about that subject:

You will soon become tired of the monotony.

Pha has become a very responsible teenager.

I remain hopeful.

Daniel grew more and more confident.

Again, these verbs might be action verbs in other sentences, such as in *I grew carrots*.

Helping verbs...

Verbs often appear with helping verbs that fine-tune their meaning, usually expressing when something occurred. The *complete verb* is the main verb plus all its helping verbs.

Verb *tense* is the name for the characteristic verbs have of expressing time. Simple present tense verbs express present or habitual action, and simple past tense verbs express actions that were completed in the past; neither simple present nor simple past tense verbs require helping verbs. However, most other verb tenses require one or more helping verbs. Moreover,

some helping verbs express more than just time-possibility, obligation, or permission, for example.

...have, has, had

Every verb has three basic forms: present or simple form, past form, and participle form. All participle forms require a helping verb that fine-tunes the time expression:

Comets have collided with earth many times.
Stan had known about the plan for some time.

The table below demonstrates these three forms with their required helping verbs:

present or simple form	past form	participle form	participle + helper
<i>collide</i>	<i>collided</i>	<i>collided</i>	<i>has, have, had collided</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>been</i>	<i>has, have, had been</i>
<i>choose</i>	<i>chose</i>	<i>chosen</i>	<i>has, have, had been</i>
<i>know</i>	<i>knew</i>	<i>known</i>	<i>has, have, had been</i>

Participles used as verbs in a sentence *must* be used with *has, have, or had*. Participles used without helpers become adjectives: *The early explorers sailed beyond the known world.*

...to be: am, are, is, was, were, been

Verbs with *-ing* endings require a helper from the *to be* family of verbs. These progressive verb tenses express ongoing present action, continuous past action or future planned action:

They are still working on the contract.
Phanat was studying all night.
Holly had been reviewing her notes since the day before.
We are holding student elections next September.

Verbs with *-ing* endings *must* be used with one of the *to be* helpers; an *-ing* word without a helper is ineligible to act as the verb of a sentence. It can, however, be a noun (*Hiking is fun*) or an adjective (*The hiking trail is closed*).

...do, does, did

The helping verbs *do, does, and did* may be used optionally to add emphasis: *She certainly does like her morning mocha.*

While adding emphasis is optional, these helpers *must* be used when forming questions: Does Andrea ski every weekend? They must also accompany the verb in sentences that combine not with an action verb: *Don't you want to take the train? Do not wait for me past 4:30.*

When *do* and *does* are used, they change form to match the subject while the main verb remains in simple form: instead of *She likes coffee*, we would say, *She sure does like her coffee*. Similarly, for questions, we change the form of the helper and leave the main verb in simple form: *Does Andrea ski?* The negative is *Andrea does not ski*, even though the statement would have been *Andrea skis*. (In the past tense, with *did*, the verb never changes form.)

...will and shall

Future tense verbs require a helper, *will* or *shall*, and express intention, expectation, or action that will happen later.

We shall drive to Santa Barbara in August.

Krista will not attend.

We will be holding student elections in September.

...would, could, should, can, may, might...

The verb helpers *would, could, should, can, may, might, must, supposed to, ought to, used to*, and *have to* are examples of *modal* helpers. (*Will* and *shall* are technically modals as well.)

Modal helpers are little different from real verbs because they never change form. They are easy to use because they always are used with the simple form of the verb:

I may want to change my flight.

You can cash your check at the grocery store.

Paul must notify his employer soon.

Instead of expressing time, modals help verbs express a variety of other things:

Expresses	For example...
past habit	<i>I never used to eat breakfast; I would never eat breakfast.</i>
requests	<i>He would like us to clean up; could you clean up? Can you do it?</i>
permission	<i>Yes, you can go. You may change the channel. He could leave early.</i>
necessity, advisability	<i>You must see that movie! We ought to go soon; we will have to call later.</i>
possibility	<i>I might pay with cash; we may write a check. That could be true.</i>

PRONOUNS

Pronouns replace nouns. Without them, language would be repetitious, lengthy, and awkward:

President John Kennedy had severe back trouble, and although President John Kennedy approached stairs gingerly and lifted with care, President John Kennedy did swim and sail, and occasionally President John Kennedy even managed to play touch football with friends, family members, or co-workers.

With pronouns taking the place of some nouns, that sentence reads more naturally:

President John Kennedy had severe back trouble, and although he approached stairs gingerly and lifted with care, he did swim and sail, and occasionally he even managed to play touch football with friends, family members, or co-workers.

The pronoun *he* takes the place of the proper noun *President John Kennedy*. This makes *President John Kennedy* the *antecedent* of the pronoun. The antecedent is the noun or pronoun that a pronoun replaces. There are six types of pronouns:

Personal	Reflexive
Indefinite	Relative
Possessive	Demonstrative

Personal pronouns

Since nouns refer to specific persons, places, or things, *personal pronouns* also refer to specific persons, places, or things. Pronouns have characteristics called *number*, *person*, and *case*.

Number refers to whether a pronoun is singular (*him*) or plural (*them*). Thus John Kennedy becomes *he* or *him*, while the president's friends would be *they* or *them*.

Person is a little more abstract. The *first person* is the person speaking-*I*. The sentence "*I* expect to graduate in January," is in the first person. The *second person* is the one being spoken to-*you*: "*You* may be able to graduate sooner!" The *third person* is being spoken of-*he, she, it, they, them*: "*She*, on the other hand, may have to wait until June to graduate." A pronoun must match (*agree with*) its antecedent in person as well as number. So graduating *students* must be referred to as *they* or *them*, not as *us*; a valedictorian must be referred to as *he* or *she, him* or *her*, not as *we* or *you*.

Case refers to what job a pronoun can legally perform in a sentence. Some pronouns can be subjects and others cannot. For example, we are allowed to say "*I* expect to graduate soon," but we are not allowed to say "*Me* expect to graduate soon." Pronouns that may be subjects are in the *subjective* case; they are *subject pronouns*. Some pronouns cannot be subjects; they are, instead, used as direct objects, indirect objects, or objects of prepositions. They are in *objective* case; they are *object pronouns*: "His uncle hired *him* after graduation." "Uncle Joe gave *her* a job, too." "Without *them*, he would have been shorthanded."

First person		Second person		Third person	
Subjective	Objective	Subjective	Objective	Subjective	Objective
<i>I, we</i>	<i>me, us</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>he, she, it, they</i>	<i>him, her, it, them</i>

Subject pronouns also are used after linking verbs, where they refer back to the subject: "The valedictorian was

she."

Indefinite pronouns

While personal pronouns refer to specific persons, places, or things, *indefinite* pronouns refer to *general* persons, places, or things. Indefinite pronouns all are third-person pronouns and can be subjects or objects in sentences.

Many indefinite pronouns seem to refer to groups—*everybody* seems like a crowd, right?—and so are often mistakenly treated as plurals ("*Everybody* overfilled *their* backpack"). However, any indefinite pronoun that ends in *-one*, *-body*, *-thing* is singular:

"*Everybody* overfilled *his* (or *her*) backpack." The following indefinite pronouns are usually singular; if one of these words is the antecedent in a sentence, the pronoun that refers to it must also be singular. Thus, we must write, "*Does anyone* know," rather than "Do anyone know"; "*Each* of them *knows*," rather than "Each of them know"; and "*Someone* left *her* cell phone," rather than, "Someone left their cell phone."

Indefinite pronouns, singular

<i>anyone</i>	<i>anybody</i>	<i>anything</i>	<i>either</i>	<i>each</i>
<i>no one</i>	<i>nobody</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>another</i>	<i>one</i>
<i>someone</i>	<i>somebody</i>	<i>something</i>		<i>any</i>
<i>everyone</i>	<i>everybody</i>	<i>everything</i>		

On the other hand, some indefinite pronouns are plural:

Indefinite pronouns, plural

<i>both</i>	<i>few</i>	<i>many</i>	<i>several</i>
-------------	------------	-------------	----------------

Plural indefinite pronouns take plural verbs and plural pronouns: "*Both were* rewarded for *their* courage." "Many *attend* in spite of *their* other obligations."

A few indefinite pronouns can be either singular or plural, depending on the context:

Indefinite pronouns, singular or plural

<i>most</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>none</i>	<i>some</i>	<i>neither</i>
-------------	------------	------------	-------------	-------------	----------------

Thus, we may write, "*All is* well," (singular) in reference to the general condition of things, or "*All are* attending," (plural) in reference to individuals. (For more, look up *count and non-count nouns* in an English grammar reference or online.)

(Some of the indefinite pronouns above can also be used as adjectives. In "*Many* left their trash on the riverbank," *many* is a pronoun replacing *swimmers*. In contrast, in "*Many* students went tubing on the river," *many* is an adjective modifying *students*. For more information, see the TIP sheet "Adjectives.")

Possessive Pronouns

Possessive pronouns replace possessive nouns. Thus, *Jamie's Corvette* becomes *her Corvette*. Possessive pronouns never take apostrophes.

Possessive pronouns

<i>my</i>	<i>our</i>	<i>your</i>	<i>his, her</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>whose</i>
<i>mine</i>	<i>ours</i>	<i>yours</i>	<i>his, hers</i>		<i>theirs</i>	

In the table above, the words in the upper row must accompany nouns: *her Corvette*, *our Nissan*. The pronouns in the lower row stand alone, as replacements for the adjective + noun pair- "*Hers* is fast; *mine* is slow."

Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns add emphasis. They always follow a noun or personal pronoun and do not appear alone in a sentence: "*Jamie herself* changed the tire." "*She herself* changed the tire." The meaning is that she, and *no one else*, changed the tire, and the emphasis is on the independence of her action. Reflexive pronouns also show that someone did something to himself or herself: "She surprised *herself* with how well she did on the test."

Reflexive pronouns

<i>myself ourselves</i>	<i>yourself yourselves</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself themselves</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------	--

A reflexive pronoun cannot *replace* the subject of a sentence, such as in "Burcu and *myself* are taking that class together." Instead, use a personal pronoun: "Burcu and I are taking that class together" or "Burcu and *I myself* are taking that class together."

There is no *theirselves* or *theihselves*. "They waxed the car *themselves* at home." There is no *hissel*: "Jesse taught *himself* French."

Relative pronouns

A relative pronoun begins a clause that refers to a noun in a sentence. (A clause is a word group with its own subject and verb.) *Who* begins a clause that refers to people: "Krista is the math tutor *who helped me the most*." *That* may refer either to persons or things: "Laura is the math tutor *that knows the most about calculus*; calculus is the class *that I am taking in the fall*." *Which* begins a clause that refers to things: "Statistics, *which is the interpretation of collected numerical data*, has many practical applications."

Relative pronouns

<i>that</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>whoever</i>	<i>whose</i>
<i>which</i>	<i>whom</i>	<i>whomever</i>	<i>what</i>

Who is a subject pronoun; it can be the subject of a sentence: "*Who* was at the door?" *Whom* is an object pronoun. It cannot be the subject of a sentence, but it can be a direct or indirect object or the object of a preposition: "Don't ask *for whom* the bell tolls." *Who* and *whom* often appear in questions where the natural word order is inverted and where the words you see first are the pronouns *who* or *whom*, followed by part of the verb, *then* the subject, *then* the rest of the verb. So it isn't always easy to figure out if you should use *who* or *whom*. Is it

"Who did you visit last summer?" or "Whom did you visit last summer?" To decide, follow these steps:

Change the question to a statement: "You did visit *who/whom* last summer." This restores natural word order: subject, verb, direct object.

1. In place of *who/whom*, substitute the personal pronouns *he* and *him*: "You did visit *he* last summer"; "You did visit *him* last summer."
2. If *he*, a subject pronoun, is right, then the right choice for the original question is *who*—another subject pronoun. If *him*, an object pronoun, is correct, then the right choice for the original question is *whom*—another object pronoun.
3. Based on step three, above, correctly frame the question: "Whom did you visit last summer?"

Similarly, *whoever* is a subject pronoun, and *whomever* is an object pronoun. Use the same test for, "Whoever/whomever would want to run on such a humid day?" Change the question to a statement, substituting *he* and *him*: "He (not *him*) would want to run on such a humid day." The right word, therefore, would be *whoever*, the subject pronoun. On the other hand, you would say, "Hand out plenty of water to *whomever* you see." You would see and hand the water out *to him*, not *to he*; this sentence requires the object pronoun.

Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns indicate specific persons, places, or things: "That is a great idea!" That is a pronoun referring to the abstract noun *idea*.

Demonstrative pronouns

<i>this</i>	<i>these</i>
<i>that</i>	<i>those</i>

(Like some indefinite pronouns, demonstrative pronouns can also be used as adjectives. In "That band started playing local Chico clubs," *that* modifies the noun *band*.)

For more on pronouns, see the TIP Sheets "The Eight Parts of Speech," "Pronoun Reference," and "Relative Pronouns: Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Clauses."

ADJECTIVES

An adjective is a word used to describe, or modify, noun or a pronoun. Adjectives usually answer questions like *which one*, *what kind*, or *how many*.

that hilarious book
the red one
several heavy books

In English adjectives usually precede nouns or pronouns. However, in sentences with linking verbs, such as the *to be* verbs or the "sense" verbs, adjectives can follow the

Descriptive Adjectives

Descriptive adjectives (*steamy*, *stormy*) call up images, tones, and feelings. *Steamy weather* is different from *stormy weather*. *Steamy* and *stormy* conjure different pictures, feelings, and associations.

Many descriptive adjectives come from verbs. The verb *had broken*, without the helper *had*, is an adjective: *a broken keyboard*. Likewise, the *-ing* verb form, such as *is running*, used without its helper *is*, can be an adjective: *running shoes*. (For more on *-ed* and *-ing* forms, see the TIP SheetS "Verbs" and "Consistent Verb Tense.")

Nouns can be used as adjectives, too. For instance, the noun *student* can be made to modify, or describe, the noun *bookstore*: the *student bookstore*. Nouns often combine to produce compound adjectives that modify a noun as a unit, usually joined by hyphens when they precede the noun. When they follow the noun, the hyphens are omitted:

He was an 18-year-old boy, but the girl was only 16 years old.

Other compound adjectives do not use hyphens in any case. In *income tax forms*, *income tax* is a compound adjective that does not require a hyphen.

Articles

The, *an*, and *a*, called *articles*, are adjectives that answer the question which one? *The* modifies a noun or pronoun by limiting its reference to a particular or known thing, either singular or plural. *A* expands the reference to a single non-specific or previously unknown thing. *An* is similar to *a*, but is used when the word following it begins with a vowel sound:

the books on the table

a book from an online store, the one we ordered last week

Demonstrative adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives answer the question *which one(s)*? They are the only adjectives that have both a singular and plural form--*this* and *that* are singular; *these* and *those* are plural. Demonstrative adjectives point to particular or previously named things. *This* and *these* indicate things nearby (in time or space), while *that* and *those* suggest distance (in time or space):

This novel is the worst I've ever read; these biographies are much better.

Tell me more about that author; why does she write about those events?

Possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives answer the question *whose*? They include *my*, *our*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, and *their*:

our joke book

its well-worn pages

Indefinite adjectives

Indefinite adjectives include *some*, *many*, *any*, *few*, *several*, and *all*:

some jokes

few listeners

Note that these words can also be used as pronouns: *Some were in bad taste; few could carpool*. For Questioning adjectives

Which and *what* are adjectives when they modify nouns or pronouns:

Which joke did you like better, and what reason can you give for your preference?

Like indefinite adjectives, the questioning (or interrogative) adjectives can also function as pronouns; see the TIP Sheets "Pronouns" and "Pronoun Reference."

Adjective order and punctuation

Some stacks of adjectives can be rearranged freely without changing the meaning. They are *coordinate adjectives*, and they are equal and separate in the way they modify a noun. For example, we can freely rearrange a ***dull, dark, and depressing day***. a ***depressing, dark, dull day***. Separate two or more coordinate adjectives with commas (note that no comma goes immediately before the noun).

Other adjective groups cannot be freely rearranged. These *cumulative adjectives* are not separated by commas. ***Rich chocolate layer cake*** cannot be changed to ***layer chocolate rich cake***. For more on identifying and punctuating coordinate and cumulative adjectives, see the TIP Sheet "Commas."

If you were born to English, you may not realize that there are rules for placing adjective groups in order. For example, the determiner (*a, an, the*) comes first, then size words, then color, then purpose:

a large, purple sleeping bag

You can't freely rearrange these adjectives and say, for example, ***sleeping, purple, a large bag*** without awkwardness, absurdity, or loss of meaning. The rule is that a stack of adjectives generally occurs in the following order: opinion (*useful, lovely, ugly*), size (*big, small*), age (*young, old*), shape (*square, squiggly*), color (*cobalt, yellow*), origin (*Canadian, solar*), material (*granite, wool*), and purpose (*shopping, running*).

scary, squiggly solar flares

lovely, cobalt, Canadian running shoes

Cobalt, running, Canadian, lovely shoes doesn't work. If English is a second language for you, consult an ESL guide for more information.

CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions join words, phrases, or clauses. The three different types of conjunctions indicate different relationships between the elements joined. *Coordinating conjunctions* link elements of equal value. *Correlative conjunctions* are used in pairs to establish a specific relationship between elements of equal value. *Subordinating conjunctions* indicate that one element is of lesser value (subordinate) to another element.

1. Use a coordinating conjunction to connect elements (words, phrases, or clauses) of equal grammatical value.

- There are seven coordinating conjunctions in English:
and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet

(Note: These are often remembered with the acronym FANBOYS.)

- Coordinating conjunctions link equal elements.
*Swimming **and** reading are my two favorite summer activities.* (Swimming and reading are both subjects in the sentence.)

*Please place the papers on top of the desk **or** in the drawer. (On top of the desk and in the drawer are both prepositional phrases.)*

*She wanted to drive the car, **but** she had never received her license. (She wanted to drive the car and she had never received her license are both independent clauses.)*

2. Use correlative conjunctions in pairs to connect words, phrases, or clauses of equal grammatical value. Correct use of these conjunctions is critical in achieving parallelism in sentence structure (see TIP Sheet on "Achieving Parallelism").

- Correlative conjunctions always come in pairs:

as...as

both...and

not only...but also

either...or

neither...nor

whether...or

- Make sure that the grammatical structure following the second half of the pair is the same as that following the first half.

*You must decide **either** to fly **or** to drive. (The elements to fly and to drive are both infinitives.)*

*Contrary to my plans, I spent much of my vacation **both** correcting papers **and** contacting students. (The elements correcting papers and contacting students are both participial phrases.)*

*I hope **not only** that you will attend the play, **but also** that you will stay for the cast party afterwards. (The elements that you will attend the play and that you will stay for the cast party afterwards are both subordinate clauses.)*

3. Use a subordinating conjunction to connect a subordinate (dependent) clause to an independent clause.

- Common subordinating conjunctions include the following:

after

even though

than

whenever

although

if

that

where

as

in order that

though

whereas

as if

rather than

unless

wherever

because

since

until

whether

before

so that

when

while

(Note: Some of the words listed can serve as different parts of speech, depending on how they are used.)

- A subordinating conjunction indicates that the dependent clause is not complete without an attached independent clause.

If you finish your homework, you will be prepared for the test. (If you finish your homework by itself is an incomplete thought.)

*I lose myself in the music **whenever** I practice the piano. (Whenever I practice the piano by itself is an incomplete thought.)*

4. Conjunctive adverbs (sometimes called adverbial conjunctions) are used to indicate a relationship between sentences and independent clauses.

- Common conjunctive adverbs include the following:
however, therefore moreover nevertheless
- When a conjunctive adverb appears at the beginning or in the middle of an independent clause, it is usually set off by commas. When a conjunctive adverb introduces a second clause within a sentence, a semicolon precedes it and a comma follows it.

*Carrot cake is very tasty. **Moreover**, the carrots make it a "healthy" choice for dessert.*

*I realize you were busy. It is unfortunate, **however**, that you missed that phone call.*

*The hurricane has lessened in intensity; **nevertheless**, we are evacuating in an hour.*

INTERJECTIONS

Interjections are words intended to express different levels of emotion or surprise, and are usually seen as independent grammatically from the main sentence.

- Interjections usually stand alone and are often punctuated with an exclamation point.
Oh! Wow! My goodness!
- Sometimes mild interjections are included within a sentence and are then set off by commas.

Well, it's about time you showed up.

Analysis of Sentence Structure

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

The verb of a sentence must agree with the simple subject of the sentence in number and person. *Number* refers to whether a word is singular (*child, account, city, I*) or plural (*children, accounts, cities, we*). *Person* refers to whether the word denotes a speaker (*I, we are first person*), the person spoken to (*you is second person*), or what is spoken of (*he, she, it, they, Gary, college, taxes are third person*).

Third person singular

Choosing verbs to agree with first and second person subjects is not usually much of a problem, but a peculiarity of third person singular verbs causes some students, especially ESL students, some confusion when working with third person singular subjects.

It matters whether a subject in the third person is singular or plural because the verb form for third person singular often differs from other verb forms. For most third person singular verbs, add an *s* to the root form of the verb: *sit + s = sits*, the third person singular form. (Be careful-while an *s* on a noun usually denotes a plural, an *s* on a verb does not make the verb plural.) Examples of how the verb form changes in third person singular follow; notice that even irregular helping verbs (*to have, to be, to do*) add an *s* – *has, is, was, does* – in third person singular:

Third person singular (*he - she - it*)

sits

is sitting

was sitting

has sat

has been sitting

does not sit

doesn't sit

Third person plural (*they*)

sit

are sitting

were sitting

have sat

have been sitting

do not sit

don't sit

Thus, Olivia *sits*, Phong *sits*, the college president *sits* in her office, and the remote control *sits* on the table. When Olivia and Phong get together, however, they *sit*; the college trustees *sit*.

Only the simple subject

The verb must agree with its simple subject -- not with the description or explanation of the subject; ignore the descriptions and explanations. If the simple subject is singular, use the singular form of the verb. If the simple subject is plural, use the plural form of the verb. (For more about subjects, see the TIP Sheet *Parts of Sentences: Subject, Verb, Object, Complement*. For tips on how to use prepositional phrases to help identify the subject, see *Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases*.)

*The pink and red flowers in the tall vase **have wilted**.*

*The old table that my parents gave us **needs** a coat of paint.*

*The back wheels of the car you borrowed **are** wobbling.*

The verb must agree with its simple subject -- not with the subject complement. The subject and its complement are not always both singular or both plural. Even if one is singular and the other plural, the verb agrees with the subject:

*His only hobby **is** his pigeons.*

*Her parents **are** her sole support.*

Compound subjects

A compound subject joined by *and* is plural and takes a plural verb form:

*Olivia and Phong **are** looking for the remote control. (They are looking.)*

The verb for compound subjects joined by *or* or by *(n) either... (n) or* agrees with the subject nearer to the verb:

*Olivia or Phong **has** the responsibility to make the video presentation. (He has.)*

*Neither Phong nor Olivia **knows** if the board will be pleased. (She knows.)*

*The college president or the trustees **interview** all the candidates. (They interview.)*

*The trustees or the president often **asks** for a second interview. (He or she asks.)*

Relative clauses

Relative clauses begin with the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which* and contain a verb separate from that of the independent clause. The verb in a relative clause agrees in person and number to the word -- the person or thing -- to which the relative pronoun refers:

Most instructors appreciate students who **ask** good questions.

The student who **asks** a lot of questions is a valuable asset to a class.

The logic class, which is known to be difficult, nevertheless attracts a certain type of student. The classes, which **are** held in the fall, usually fill up fast.

Verb preceding the subject

In questions, the subject follows the verb, but the subject still determines the person and number of the verb:

*Where in the house **are** the medicines **kept**? (They are kept.)*

*Why **doesn't** the soup **have** any noodles? (It does have.)*

*Under which tree **do** the mushrooms **grow**? (They do grow.)*

In sentences that begin with a construction such as *here is* or *there are*, the subject follows the verb but still determines the person and number of the verb:

*Here **is** the famous flea circus. (It is here.)*

*Here **are** the famous fleas. (They are here.)*

*There **is** a mouse in the attic. (It is there.)*

*There **are** mice in the attic. (They are there.)*

Indefinite pronoun subjects

Some indefinite pronouns are always singular, and some are always plural. (Some can go either way; for more on indefinite pronouns, see the TIP

Sheets *Pronouns* and *Pronoun Reference*, or see a writers' guide such as *SF Writer*.)

Some indefinite pronouns are always singular no matter how much you feel that words like *everyone* are plural. They require the third person singular verb form:

*Nobody **knows** her.*

***Has** anyone **asked**?*

*Everyone **says** so.*

*Each **gets** a ticket.*

*One **uses** a hammer.*

*Another **has** arrived.*

Other indefinite pronouns are always plural and require a plural verb form:

*Several **work** here.*

*Many **have done** it.*

*Few **believe** it.*

*Both **were** yellow.*

BASIC SENTENCE STRUCTURE

Parts of Sentences: Subject, Predicate, Object, Indirect Object, Complement

Every word in a sentence serves a specific purpose within the structure of that particular sentence. According to rules of grammar, sentence structure can sometimes be quite complicated. For the sake of simplicity, however, the basic parts of a sentence are discussed here.

The two most basic parts of a sentence are the *subject* and *predicate*.

SUBJECT

The subject of a sentence is the person, place, or thing that is performing the action of the sentence. The subject represents what or whom the sentence is about. The simple subject usually contains a noun or pronoun and can include modifying words, phrases, or clauses.

The man . . .

PREDICATE

The predicate expresses action or being within the sentence. The simple predicate contains the verb and can also contain modifying words, phrases, or clauses.

The man / builds a house.

The subject and predicate make up the two basic structural parts of any complete sentence. In addition, there are other elements, contained within the subject or predicate, that add meaning or detail. These elements include the direct object, indirect object, and subject complement. All of these elements can be expanded and further combined into simple, compound, complex, or compound/complex sentences. (See TIP Sheet on "Sentence Type and Purpose.")

DIRECT OBJECT

The direct object receives the action of the sentence. The direct object is usually a noun or pronoun.

The man builds a house.

The man builds it.

INDIRECT OBJECT

The indirect object indicates to whom or for whom the action of the sentence is being done. The indirect object is usually a noun or pronoun.

The man builds his family a house.

The man builds them a house.

SUBJECT COMPLEMENT

A subject complement either renames or describes the subject, and therefore is usually a noun, pronoun, or adjective. Subject complements occur when there is a *linking verb* within the sentence (often a linking verb is a form of the verb *to be*).

The man is a good father. (*father* = noun which renames the subject)

The man seems kind. (*kind* = adjective which describes the subject)

Note: As an example of the difference between parts of speech and parts of a sentence, a noun can function within a sentence as subject, direct object, indirect object, object of a preposition, or subject complement.

For more information on the structure and formation of sentences, see the following TIP Sheets:

Sentence Types and Purposes

Sentence Fragments

Independent and Dependent Clauses: Coordination and Subordination

Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

Other Phrases: Verbal, Appositive, Absolute

Comma Splices and Run-on Sentences

The Eight Parts of Speech

Nouns

Pronouns

Verbs

Adjectives

Adverbs

Conjunctions

Interjections

SENTENCE FRAGMENTS

A sentence is a group of words that contains three things:

- A subject (that makes sense with the verb)
- A verb (that goes with the subject)
- A complete thought

A sentence fragment is a group of words that lacks one or more of these three things. While there are many ways to end up with a fragment, almost every fragment is simply a result of one of the following three problems:

- It is missing a subject
- It is missing a verb.
- It fails to complete the thought it starts.

Fragments are no big deal in conversation; spoken English is full of them. In fact, if you spoke in complete sentences for one entire day, you would probably get some strange looks. But English conventions require that you avoid *writing* fragments (except in very rare instances), so you must be able to identify them in your writing and fix them.

To begin to identify fragments in your writing, read a sentence aloud. Does it sound complete? If you walked up to a stranger and said it to him, would it sound like a complete thought to him? Or would he be waiting expectantly for you to finish? Even if it sounds okay to you (because you already know what you mean), look at it and identify the subject (who or what did the action) and the verb (what the subject did) to make sure they're there. (For help identifying subjects and verbs, see the TIP Sheet *Parts of Sentences*.) If you think a subject is missing, or the verb sounds a little strange, or the thought is left hanging, refer to the tips below.

Missing subjects

Some fragments are missing subjects. Often the subject appears nearby, perhaps in the preceding sentence; however, each sentence must have a subject of its own. The following fragment lacks a subject:

Fragment

Was running late that day.

Who was running late? The instructor? The train? The simplest (but by no means only) way to correct this fragment is to add a subject:

I was running late that day.

Phrases which include words ending in *-ing* often appear as fragments:

Fragment

Biking and swimming after work on Thursday.

What about biking and swimming? Who is biking and swimming? Are you proposing that we all go biking and swimming? Add both a subject and a verb to correct this (again, not the only solution):

Mitchell went biking and swimming after work on Thursday.

Another suspect in the missing subject category is a phrase like this one:

Fragment

To register for class before the deadline.

Who wants to register? Or failed to register? Or plans to register? This fragment lacks both subject and verb. ("To register" is not really a verb, but another thing entirely; see the TIP Sheet *Other Phrases: Verbal, Appositive, Absolute*). The simplest fix is to add a subject and verb:

Stan hopes to register for class before the deadline.

(Avoid the mistake of thinking that a command, demand, or request lacks a subject. This kind of sentence has an unstated subject, *you*. So the subject of "*Turn in your schedule changes at the counter*" is *you*. "[*You*] turn in your schedule changes at the counter.")

Missing verbs

Some fragments are fragments because they are missing a verb or an essential part of a verb. Any phrase, no matter how long, is a fragment if the verb is missing:

Fragment

The birch trees with their rattling yellow leaves.

What about the birch trees? Adding a verb makes this fragment complete:

The birch trees with their rattling yellow leaves swayed in the wind.

Some verbs require helpers in order to be complete. Words ending in *-ing*, for example, must include helpers such as *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *will be*, or *has been* to be real verbs; without these helpers, they are not verbs. (If you want to know more about verb look-alikes, see the TIP Sheet *Other Phrases: Verbal, Appositive, Absolute*.) The fragment below contains an incomplete verb:

Fragment

Caroline studying her sociology tonight at Moxie's downtown.

Did your ear hear the strangeness? Add helpers to make the verb complete and repair the fragment:

Caroline will be studying her sociology tonight at Moxie's downtown.

Unfinished thoughts

A very common type of fragment is the unfinished thought fragment. While other kinds of fragments require you to add something--a subject, or a verb, or both--you can often fix unfinished thought fragments simply by joining them to a preceding or following sentence. The following example, while it contains a subject and a verb, fails to complete the thought:

Fragment

Because tuition increased again this semester.

The word to blame for making this thought incomplete is *because*. (Contrary to rumor, it's perfectly okay to start a sentence with *because*; you just have to finish what you're saying--in the same sentence.) If you find a fragment of this kind, see if the sentence before or the sentence after it would complete it:

Because tuition increased again this semester, Kou got a second job as a Student Assistant.

Or

Kou must take fewer units because tuition increased again this semester.

If the preceding or following sentence does not complete the unfinished thought, add the missing information to the fragment to make it complete. There are many words that, by their mere presence, make a clause incomplete, for example, *since, while, when, unless, although*. For more about these words, see the TIP Sheet *Independent & Dependent Clauses*.

In spite of the rules of grammar, language is plastic and can be shaped a great many ways, so for any fragment problem, many solutions exist. The more you practice writing, the more you will be able to spot fragments and fix them. And the more you learn about English, the more ways you will find to make your grammatically correct sentences say exactly what you mean.

SENTENCE TYPE AND PURPOSE

Sentences come in a variety of shapes and lengths. Yet whatever their shapes and lengths (or types), all sentences serve one of only a few very basic purposes.

Sentence Type

Sentence variety is not about mere novelty; it is about meaning. You can avoid boredom (yours and your readers') and choppiness by varying your sentence types. Longer, more complex sentences can increase the impact of a shorter, simpler sentence.

Every sentence is one of the following types.

- Simple
- Compound
- Complex

- **Compound/Complex**

In order to vary your writing, you want to be able to construct sentences of each kind. To master these four types, though, you really only need to master two things: independent and dependent clauses. This is because the four types of sentences are really only four different ways to combine independent and dependent clauses.

(Let's review: independent clauses are essentially simple, complete sentences. They can stand alone or be combined with other independent clauses. Dependent clauses are unfinished thoughts that cannot stand alone; they are a type of sentence fragment and must be joined to independent clauses. For more information, see the TIP Sheet *Independent & Dependent Clauses: Coordination and Subordination*.)

The simple sentence

A simple sentence is simple because it contains only one independent clause:

Justin dropped his Agricultural Economics class.

A simple sentence is not necessarily short or simple. It can be long and involved, with many parts and compound elements. But if there is only one independent clause, it is, nevertheless, a simple sentence. The following example has a single independent clause with a single subject (*Justin*) and a compound verb (*gulped, swallowed, groaned, and decided*):

Justin gulped down his fourth cup of coffee, swallowed a Tylenol for his pounding headache, groaned, and decided he would have to drop his Agricultural Economics class.

The compound sentence

When you join two simple sentences properly, you get a compound sentence. Conversely, a compound sentence can be broken into two complete sentences, each with its own subject and its own verb. You can join simple sentences to create compound sentences either of two ways:

- With a semicolon
- With a comma and coordinating conjunction (for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so)

For example, the following pairs of independent clauses can be joined either way:

Homer has Basic Plant Science on Mondays and Wednesdays; Environmental Horticulture conflicted with his schedule.

Homer has Basic Plant Science on Mondays and Wednesdays, but Environmental Horticulture conflicted with his schedule.

(Be aware that if you join two simple sentences *improperly*, you do not get a compound sentence; you get a *run-on*, most likely either a comma splice or a fused sentence. For more information, see the TIP Sheets *Comma Splices and Run-on Sentences* and *Independent & Dependent Clauses: Coordination & Subordination*.)

The complex sentence

A complex sentence is a sentence that contains both a dependent and an independent clause. In the following example, both clauses contain a subject and a verb, but the dependent clause has, in addition, the dependent-making words *even though*. If you start the sentence with the dependent-making words (or subordinating conjunction), place a comma between the clauses.

On the other hand, if you start with the independent clause and place the dependent-making words in the middle of the sentence, do not use a comma:

Even though Eva took Turf Management just to fill out her schedule, she found it unexpectedly interesting.

Eva found Turf Management unexpectedly interesting even though she took it just to fill out her schedule.

(For more on subordinating conjunctions, see the TIP Sheet *Independent & Dependent Clauses: Coordination & Subordination*.)

The compound-complex sentence

A compound-complex sentence combines at least two independent clauses and at least one dependent clause. The punctuation rules remain the same: the two simple sentences are joined by one of the two methods described above, and the dependent clause is punctuated (or not) depending on whether it precedes or follows an independent clause. In the following example, the dependent-making word signaling the beginning of the dependent clause is *while*:

Homer was already in class, and Eva was in the lab while Justin was sleeping off his headache.

While Justin was sleeping off his headache, Homer was already in class, and Eva was in the lab.

Homer was already in class while Justin slept off his headache; Eva was in the lab.

Sentence Purpose

Sentences can do different things. The purpose of some sentences is to make statements. Declarative sentences make statements and end with periods:

I am planning to drop Agricultural Economics.

The purpose of another sentence may be to pose a question. These interrogative sentences ask questions and end with question marks:

Have you taken any Agricultural Engineering classes?

Imperative sentences give commands or make demands or requests. They usually end with a period. An imperative sentence often has as its subject an unstated "you" (giving to beginners in English grammar the appearance of lacking a subject altogether). The subject of each of the following four sentences is "you:"

Hand in your homework assignments, please.

Stop. Drop. Roll.

Exclamatory sentences convey strong emotion and end with exclamation marks; use them sparingly:

Watch out for the rattlesnake!

INDEPENDENT & DEPENDENT CLAUSES: COORDINATION & SUBORDINATION

An independent person is one who can solve problems on his own, take care of his own needs, and stand on his own two feet, so to speak. An *independent clause* (a clause is a group of words

that contains at least one subject and one verb) is one that can stand on its own two feet--independently. You can join independent clauses if you want to. This is called *coordination*.

A dependent person is one who needs help from another, more independent person. A dependent person needs to lean on someone stronger. A *dependent clause* is one that cannot stand on its own two feet--it needs an *independent clause* to lean on. You must join a dependent clause to an independent one. This is called *subordination*.

Independent clauses are strong

Compare an independent clause to the ideal roommate: She cleans up after herself, pays her share of the bills, never forgets to turn off the iron, and can fix a leaky faucet. Like the ideal roommate, an independent clause lacks nothing to stand on its own. For example, each of the following independent clauses can stand alone:

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet before leaving for the party.
Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

The clauses above contain a subject and a verb, and they finish the thought they have started; they are complete simple sentences. For the sake of variety, however, you will often want to combine simple sentences using coordination to create compound sentences. You can choose one of two methods:

- Join two independent clauses with a semicolon.
- Join two independent clauses with a comma and coordinating conjunction.

The most used coordinating conjunctions are often referred to as the FANBOYS (*for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so*). When you use one of the FANBOYS between independent clauses, you signal that the clauses are equal (sort of like how two independent roommates are equals). These two methods of coordination are demonstrated below:

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet before leaving for the party; Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet before leaving for the party, and Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

If you choose to coordinate two independent clauses using a semicolon, you have another option. You may choose to add a conjunctive adverb (followed by a comma--the adverb acts rather like an introductory phrase) after the semicolon:

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet before leaving for the party; moreover, Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

A conjunctive adverb adds meaning or clarifies the relationship between the two clauses. See how choosing a different conjunctive adverb subtly changes the meaning of the pair:

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet before leaving for the party; however, Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

The pattern, with appropriate punctuation (and yes, the punctuation counts) is as follows:

Coordinating Independent Clauses			
Method 1 Semicolon	Independent clause	;	Independent clause
Semicolon with conjunctive adverb and comma	Independent clause	; moreover, ; however, ; consequently, ; indeed, ; nevertheless, ; therefore,	Independent clause
Method 2 Comma and coordinating conjunction	Independent clause	, for , and , nor , but , or , yet , so	Independent clause

(Note: Do *not* try to join two independent clauses with a simple comma. This error is called a *comma splice*. Furthermore, do *not* try to join two independent clauses with a coordinating conjunction alone, omitting the comma. This error is called a *run-on*. For more on these errors, see the TIP Sheet Comma Splices and Run-on Sentences.)

Dependent clauses are needy

In contrast to an independent clause, a dependent clause is incomplete; it is a type of sentence fragment. (For more information, see the TIP Sheet *Fragments*.) A dependent clause may contain a subject and a verb, but it begins a thought that it doesn't finish:

Because Amy left the iron on.

When the firemen arrived at the dorm.

The words that are to blame for making the above dependent clauses dependent are the words *because* and *when*. Inquiring minds want to know-what happened as a result of the iron being left on? What happened when the fire department reached the dorm? Like a needy roommate, these dependent clauses need to lean on something stronger. In the following examples we have added independent clauses for the dependent clauses to lean on:

The dorm's obsolete wiring melted and started a fire because Amy left the iron on.

Jennifer and Mai had already put out the fire when the firemen arrive at the dorm.

When you join a dependent clause to an independent clause, you are not joining equals. One side of the resulting sentence (the independent clause) is stronger, and the other side (the dependent clause) is weaker, or *subordinate*. (If you are a *subordinate* at work, you do as you're told.) The words used to join unequal pairs of clauses are called *subordinating conjunctions*.

But even here you have choices. Just because the independent clause is stronger, it doesn't have to always go first. (Sometimes the stronger person holds the door open to allow the person on crutches to enter first.) You could just as well write the following:

*Because Amy left the iron on, the dorm's obsolete wiring melted and started a fire.
When the firemen arrived at the dorm, Jennifer and Mai had already put out the fire.*

The important thing to remember about subordination is that the punctuation differs depending on whether the independent or the dependent clause "enters" first. If the dependent clause is first (again, rather like an introduction to the main clause), it is followed by a comma (like in this sentence and the next). If the independent clause comes first, no punctuation separates the two.

The pattern, with appropriate punctuation, is as follows:

Subordinating Dependent Clauses			
Method 1 Independent clause first	Independent clause	(No punctuation)	Dependent Clause
Method 2 Dependent clause first	Dependent clause	, (comma)	Independent Clause

For variety or to fine-tune meaning, you may choose to combine two independent clauses, making one of the clauses subordinate to the other with the addition of a subordinating conjunction:

While Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet, Mai figured out how to fix the garbage disposal.

Jennifer put a new washer in the bathroom faucet since Mai was figuring out how to fix the garbage disposal.

Here is a partial list of subordinating conjunctions. (Some textbooks call them "dependent-making words," or "dependent marker words.")

Common Subordinating Conjunctions		
after	in order that	unless
although	rather than	until
as (as if)	since	when
because	so that	whenever
before	than	whereas
even though	that	whether
if	though	while

While other punctuation rules apply to particular kinds of clauses (for example, see the TIP Sheet Relative Pronouns: Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Clauses), if you learn to distinguish independent from dependent clauses and recognize subordinating conjunctions you will be more apt to avoid some common fragment and punctuation errors in your writing.

TRANSITIONS

The burden of moving smoothly from one thought to another belongs to the writer. When you write, your reader should never have to go to the trouble of puzzling out hidden connections between ideas; those connections should be readily apparent. You can help your reader see at a glance that a certain train of thought is begun, developed, challenged, or completed by using word signals called *transitions*.

Good writers combine two transition techniques:

- Using transitional words and phrases (such as *however* or *moreover*) to make connections
- Using placement of ideas to make connections (especially in longer papers)

Transitional words and phrases

Transitions are words or phrases (*furthermore, for example, nevertheless, indeed*) that indicate how a statement in one sentence relates to a statement that precedes or follows. In the following example, the underlined transitions signal contrast:

In the winter of 1973-74 drivers lined up all over America to fill their gas tanks. But it was not merely a question of a fifteen-minute wait and back on the road again. On the contrary, cars often began to congregate at dawn.

Transition words are most effective when they are placed at the beginnings of sentences (although they can also be used in the middle or at the end). The transition below signals a shift to similarity:

Similarly, walkers appeared early on frigid mornings with an empty five-gallon can in one hand and a pint of steaming coffee in the other, determined to wait out the chill and avoid disappointment.

The next passage uses a cause-and-effect transition:

Everybody had to wait. As a result, high-school kids took Saturday morning jobs as gas line sitters; spouses drove their mates to work and spent the rest of the day in line, and libraries had a surge of activity as people decided to catch up on their reading while waiting.

In the final passage, this writer signals that she is summing up and concluding:

All in all, Americans were at their best during that bizarre season, abiding by the new rules as if a place in the gas line had been guaranteed to everyone by the Bill of Rights.

In the lists below you will find that some transitions can do double duty, signaling, for instance, either addition or amplification, depending on the context:

To add a thought or to show sequence in your own writing, use the following transitions:

again	equally important	in the first place	still
also	finally	last	then
and	first	moreover	
and then	furthermore	next	

besides	in addition	second	
---------	-------------	--------	--

To amplify or intensify:

and	also	furthermore	moreover
again	further	in addition	too
after all	even	indeed	truly
interestingly	it is true	of course	

To show insistence:

indeed	in fact	yes	no
--------	---------	-----	----

To compare or show likeness:

also	in the same way	likewise	similarly
------	-----------------	----------	-----------

To show concession:

granted	it is true	of course	to be sure
---------	------------	-----------	------------

To show contrast:

although	despite	however	notwithstanding	still
and yet	even so	in contrast	on the contrary	though
at the same time	even though	in spite of	on the other hand	whereas
but	for all that	nevertheless	regardless	yet

To give examples:

an illustration of	for instance	specifically
for example	in fact	to illustrate

To show a restatement:

that is	in other words	in simpler terms	to put it differently
---------	----------------	------------------	-----------------------

To show cause and effect or consequence:

accordingly	consequently	otherwise	therefore	to this end
as a result	for this purpose	since	thereupon	thus
because	hence	then	this	with this object

To show *time* or *place*:

above	below	formerly	near(by)	subsequently
adjacent to	earlier	here	opposite to	there
afterward	elsewhere	hitherto	simultaneously	this time
at the same time	farther on	later	so far	until now

To repeat, summarize, or conclude:

all in all	in brief	in particular	in summary	therefore
altogether	in conclusion	in short	on the whole	to put it differently
as has been said	in other words	in simpler terms	that is	to summarize

Placement of ideas

Another strategy is to place older, previously stated ideas first, followed by newer, just-introduced ideas. This is effective in essay and research papers (generally in pieces longer than a single paragraph).

In the following example, the second paragraph recaps the information contained in the first paragraph before going on to introduce a new idea:

Interestingly, in A Canticle for Leibowitz it is institutional religion itself that leads the struggle against ignorance and superstition. The brothers of the Albertian Order of St. Leibowitz live their lives-and sometimes lay those lives down-for the preservation of those fragments of written human knowledge that have survived both the nuclear holocaust and the Great Simplification.

The above example combines this placement technique with transitions of emphasis, time, addition, contrast, and restatement; you, too, may use every trick in the book to lead your reader along the path of your thought

Active and Passive Voice

Active and passive voice, rules, examples You must have the knowledge of active and passive sentences (What is a sentence?) as an English learner. If you are a speaker of English then you may experience those situations too where you have to use both the form of tenses i.e. active form and passive form. On the basis of form we have two types of voice, active voice and passive voice given below.

Active voice: In active sentences, the subject is active or the subject performs the actions.

For example, the cow (Subject) is eating (Verb) grass (Object). —Active Voice

Passive voice: In passive sentences, the subject is no longer active or the subject is acted upon by the verb.

For example Grass (Subject) is being eaten (Verb) by the cow (Object).—Passive Voice

Active and passive voice with tenses.

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

Construction

is,am,are+3rd verb

Active Voice

He lights the candle.

He does not light the candle.

Do you eat meat?

Passive Voice

The candle is lighted by him.

The candle is not lighted by him.

Is meat eaten by you?

PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Construction

Is, am, are+being+3rd verb

Active Voice

I am driving a car.

I am not driving a car.

Am I driving a car?

Passive Voice

A car is being driven by me.

A car is not being driven by me.

Is a car being driven by me?

PRESENT TERFECT TENSE

Construction

Has, have+been+3rd verb

Active Voice

She has stolen my book.

She has not stolen my book

Has she stolen my book?

Passive Voice

My book has been stolen by her.

My book has not been stolen by her.

Has my book been stolen by her?

SIMPLE PAST TENSE

Construction

Was, were+3rd verb

Active Voice

He was revising his books.

He was not revising his books.

Was he revising his books?

Passive Voice

Work was finished by her.

Work was not finished by her.

Was work finished by her?

PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

Construction

Was, were+being+3rd verb

Active Voice

He was revising his books.

He was not revising his books.

Was he revising his books?

Passive Voice

His books were being revised by him.

His books were not being revised by him.

Were his books being revised by him?

Past Perfect Tense

Construction

Had+been+3rd verb

Active Voice

I had completed the assignment.

I had not completed the
Assignment.

Had I completed the assignment?

Passive Voice

The assignment had been completed
By me.

The assignment had not been
Completed by me.

Had the assignment been completed
by me?

Simple Future Tense

Construction

Will, shall+be+3rd verb

Active Voice

My uncle will pay my tuition fee.

My uncle will not pay my tuition fee.

Will my uncle pay my tuition fee?

Passive Voice

My tuition fee will be paid by my uncle.

My tuition fee will not be paid by my uncle.

Will my tuition fee be paid by my uncle?

Future Perfect Tense

Construction

Will, shall+ have been+3rd verb

Active Voice

We shall have done our home-work.

We shall not have done our homework.

Shall we have done our home?
Work?

Passive Voice

Our home -work shall have been done
by us.

Our home -work shall not have been
done by us.

Shall our home -work have been done
by us?

Active and passive voice with modals

Modals

Can/
Could,

Has to/
Have to

Must

May

Might

Should

Auxiliary Verb in Passive Voice

Can/Could+ be+ 3rd
Verb

Has to/ Have to+3rd
Verb

Must+3rd verb

May+be+3rd verb

Might+ be+ 3rd Verb

Should+ be+3rd verb

Examples

<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
I can solve these sums.	These sums can be solved by me.
I cannot solve these sums.	These sums cannot be solved by me.
Can I solve these sums?	Can these sums be solved by me?
He has to complete his Assignment.	His assignment has to be completed by him?
You must learn this book.	This book must be learnt by you.
I may buy the book.	The book may be bought by me.
They might play chess	Chess might be played by them.
Students should learn all Lessons.	All lessons should be learnt by students.

Active and passive voice with Imperative Sentences

These are the sentences in which we express our feeling and emotions like command, order, advice, and request.

Rules

1. Lets + new object + be/Not be +past participle or 3rd form
2. For sentences containing, Request, advice and order, we will use you, are Requested to, advised to and ordered to .
3. Note: Always remove please and kind if they are given in the sentence.

Examples

Active Voice

Shut the door.

Post the letter at once.

Always speak the truth.

Do not starve the cow.

Let him help his brother.

Clean your room.

Learn your lesson.

Please do me a favor tonight

Get out of my house.

Kindly do not smoke in public place.

Passive Voice

Let the door be shut.

Let the letter be posted at once.

Let the truth always be spoken.

Let the cow not be starved.

Let his brother be helped by him.

Let your room be cleaned.

Let your lesson be learnt.

You are requested to do me a favor tonight.

You are ordered to get out of mu house.

You are requested not to smoke in public place.

To make passive voice, First of all you have to use following rules.

1. Change the object into subject. If in object, we have a pronoun of object case convert that by following rules.

Me to I

You to You

Her to She

Them to They

Us to We

Him to He

It to It

Whom to Who

2. Change the subject into object. And use by before the object. If in subject, we have a pronoun of nominative case convert that by the following rules.

I by me

You by you

She by her

They by them

We by us

He by him

It by it

Who by whom

Some basic rules of active voice and voice are given below

First of all, find subject, object and the main verb it means find SVO .

Convert the object into subject.

Use the suitable helping verb or auxiliary verb according to the tense. If helping verb is given, use verb as it is. But note that the helping verb used should be according to the object.

Convert the verb into past participle or 3rd form of the verb.

Use the preposition "By"

Convert the subject into object

Reading Comprehension

Passage

Influence is a very powerful effect that plays a crucial role to guide our actions and development and when an individual affects the behavior of the masses, it becomes essential to know what makes that person so different from the rest. Let's go through the profiles of these three people who rose from humble beginnings to occupy great positions in the society.

The appointment of **Google's new CEO, Sundar Pichai**, an IITian from India, created history and influenced billions this year. Pichai grew up in Chennai. He was a shy lad who did his engineering from IIT Kharagpur and then took a flight to Stanford on scholarship with a plan to get a PhD in Materials Science and Semiconductor Physics. However, his destiny too had some plans different than he aspired. Hence, he dropped out of the program and joined Google in 2004 via Silicon Valley and McKinsey. In Google, he drew attention with his thrilling idea to build Google's own browser. Apart from Chrome, Pichai had led the innovative efforts for many other Google's products including Chrome OS, which became a huge success. Pichai also supervised Google's other core efforts like Gmail, Google Maps and Google Drive. As a CEO, he is **self-deprecating**, supportive and graceful at navigating political minefields which influence not only his fans but his rivals equally.

With the increasing level of violence across the globe, the entire mankind is in search of a peaceful corner today. It seems that the whole world is sitting on the brink of a constant war. With his **arduous** efforts, our next personality is spreading peace and trying to demolish violence. **LhamoThondup, the 14th Dalai Lama**, makes his modest effort to awaken us with a message, "Our prime purpose in this life is to help others. And if you can't help others, at least don't hurt them". After, he got his heart injured by China's Invasion on Tibet in 1950, he along with his large number of followers migrated to Dharmasala, India where he established a monastery and started taking actions with the hope to establish an autonomous Tibetan state within the People's Republic of China. A part of his **humanitarian** efforts, he has conducted many conferences, workshops and lectures across the world. In 1989, he was conferred on the Nobel Peace Prize for his **endeavors**. Kenneth H. Blanchard rightly states, "The key to successful leadership is influence, not authority", and that is what is the objective of this colossal religious figure.

It could not have been easy for **Tim Cook, the CEO of Apple**, to step into the immense shadow cast by the late Apple co-founder, Steve Jobs. But with elegance and courage and an unabashed willingness to be his own man, Tim has shoved Apple to **implausible** profitability — and greater social responsibility. A new standard for what business can do in the world has been set by him. Tim's commitment to renewable energy is also making our planet cleaner and greener, especially for the generations yet to come. Most importantly, he has proved that profitability and integrity are **interwoven**. He has proved that even the well-tuned companies can and should be judged by more than just their bottom line.

Born in the **exquisite** Swat Valley of Pakistan in 1997 and started realizing the grave condition of girls' education in the area at a very young age, **Malala Yousafzai**, emerged as one of the most prominent figures striving for children's rights across the world. Despite the continuous threats of Taliban to deny her education, Malala bravely gave voice to her revolutionary

thoughts at the age of only 13 from the ramparts of Peshawar, Pakistan in 2008. The platform was constantly growing to support her activism and she too continued demanding for her as well as for the other women, the right to education. Her efforts resulted in her being nominated for the International Children's Peace Prize in 2011. Moreover, she was awarded the Pakistan's National Youth Peace Prize the same year.

But her increasing **activism** proved exasperating for Taliban, therefore, on Oct. 9, 2012, a gunman shot on Malala's head when she was on her way home from school. She got critically injured and was taken to Peshawar and then Birmingham, England for multiple brain surgeries. After struggling for life for some days in coma, she woke up and continued her contribution for the betterment of women. For her bold efforts, she was recognized by the European Parliament and was awarded the Sakharov Prize for Freedom of Thought followed by the Nobel Peace Prize in 2014.

(Directions: Questions 1—4) Find the word most similar in meaning to the words as used in the passage:

Q 1 – Arduous

- A - Confusing
- B - Grueling
- C - Unsupportive
- D - Uncaring

Answer - B

Explanation

Arduous means **some grueling work or difficult work.**

Q 2 – Endeavors

- A - Way
- B - Objective
- C - Effort
- D - Plan

Answer - C

Explanation

Endeavors means **to put an effort or to attempt.**

Q 3 – Implausible

- A - Impossible
- B - Impractical
- C - Unimportant

D - Far-fetched

Answer - D

Explanation

Implausible means **something that has less chances of happening or being done.**

Q 4 – Humanitarian

A - Do-gooder

B - Sooth-sayer

C - Listener

D - Praying

Answer - A

Explanation

Humanitarian means **someone who does good for others.**

(Directions: Questions 5—7) Find the word most dissimilar in meaning to the words as used in the passage:

Q 5 – Activism

A - Action

B - Method

C - Policy

D - Passivity

Answer - D

Explanation

Activism means participating in an activity for a social cause, **passivity** means inaction.

Q 6 – Exquisite

A - Ugly

B - Dainty

C - Dishonest

D - Beautiful

Answer - A

Explanation

Exquisite means something that's beautiful, **ugly** is the opposite of that.

Q 7 – Interwoven

A - Intermixed

B - Separate

C - Interlace

D - Disparate

Answer - D

Explanation

Interwoven means processed with one another, **disparate** means completely independent of one another.

Q 8 – What does the author mean when he says “well-tuned companies can and should be judged by more than just their bottom line”?

A - Companies should be given more tasks

B - Companies should become more responsible

C - Companies need to be better at getting more profits.

D - Companies need to be ranked on parameters other than profit-generating.

Answer - D

Explanation

Bottom-line means profit margin, **well-tuned** means well-connected and profiting.

Q 9 – What was Malala Yousafzai’s inspiration behind her activism?

A - Get free education for herself.

B - To be a young revolutionary

C - To get free education as a right to all women

D - To provide education to children globally

Answer - C

Explanation

In the passage, the following sentence — “The platform was constantly growing to support her activism and she too continued demanding for her as well as for the other women, the right to education” explains this point.

Q 10 – What message did LhamoThondup give to the rest of the world on leadership?

A - Leadership can only be obtained through authority.

B - Leadership is possible through influence.

C - Leadership demands courage and discipline.

D - Leadership is not a skill someone is born with.

Answer - B

Explanation

In the passage, the line “Kenneth H. Blanchard rightly states, “The key to successful leadership is influence, not authority”, and that is what is the objective of this colossal religious figure.” explains this.

Basic Listening Skills

Rules of Effective Listening Skills.

Listening is a significant part of communication process. Communication cannot take place until and unless a message is heard and retained thoroughly and positively by the receivers/listeners. Listening is a dynamic process. **Listening means attentiveness and interest perceptible in the posture as well as expressions.** Listening implies decoding (i.e., translating the symbols into meaning) and interpreting the messages correctly in communication process.

Listening differs from hearing in sense that:

- Hearing implies just perceiving the sounds while listening means listening with understanding whatever you are listening. Both the body as well as mind is involved in listening process.
- Listening is an active process while hearing is a passive activity.
- Hearing is an effortless activity while listening is an act requiring conscious efforts, concentration and interest. Listening involves both physical and psychological efforts.

Effective listening requires both deliberate efforts and a keen mind. Effective listeners appreciate flow of new ideas and information. Organizations that follow the principles of effective listening are always informed timely, updated with the changes and implementations, and are always out of crisis situation. Effective listening promotes organizational relationships, encourages product delivery and innovation, as well as helps organization to deal with the diversity in employees and customers it serves.

To improve your communication skills, you must learn to listen effectively. Effective listening gives you an advantage and makes you more impressive when you speak. It also boosts your performance.

Effective Listening Skills

1. Discover your interests' field.
2. Grasp and understand the matter/content.
3. Remain calm. Do not lose your temper. Anger hampers and inhibits communication. Angry people jam their minds to the words of others.
4. Be open to accept new ideas and information.

5. Jot down and take a note of important points.
6. Work upon listening. Analyze and evaluate the speech in spare time.
7. Rephrase and summarize the speaker's ideas.
8. Keep on asking questions. This demonstrates that how well you understand the speaker's ideas and also that you are listening.
9. Avoid distractions.
10. "Step into the shoes of others", i.e., put yourself in the position of the speaker and observe things from his view point. This will help creating an atmosphere of mutual understanding and improve the exchange of ideas in communication process.

Characteristics of Good and Effective Listener

Good and effective listener tries to give maximum amount of thought to the speaker's ideas being communicated, leaving a minimum amount of time for mental exercises to go off track. A good listener:

1. **Is attentive-** Good listener must pay attention to the key points. He should be alert. He should avoid any kind of distraction.
2. **Do not assume-** Good listener does not ignore the information he considers is unnecessary. He should always summarize the speaker's ideas so that there is no misunderstanding of thoughts of speakers. He avoids premature judgements about the speaker's message.
3. **Listen for feelings and facts-** Good listener deliberately listens for the feelings of the speaker. He concentrates totally on the facts. He evaluates the facts objectively. His listening is sympathetic, active and alert. He keenly observes the gestures, facial expression and body language of the speaker. In short, a good listener should be projective (i.e. one who tries to understand the views of the speaker) and empathic (i.e. one who concentrates not only on the surface meaning of the message but tries to probe the feelings and emotions of the speaker).
4. **Concentrate on the other speakers kindly and generously-** A good listener makes deliberate efforts to give a chance to other speakers also to express their thoughts and views. He tries to learn from every speaker. He evaluates the speaker's ideas in spare time. He focuses on the content of the speaker's message and not on the speaker's personality and looks.
5. **Opportunities-** A good listener tries to take benefit from the opportunities arising. He asks "What's in it for me?"

To conclude, effective listening enhances the communication quality. It makes all attentive. It encourages optimistic attitude, healthy relations and more participation. It leads to better decision- making in an organization. Effective listening is directly related to our ability to do team work. It must be noted that "We listen at about an efficiency rate of 25 percent maximum, and we remember only about 50 percent of what is delivered during a ten minute speech/lecture/communication."

Paragraph Writing

Paragraph

Paragraph Writing: Take a wild guess as to what will you say to describe a paragraph? From whatever you may know so far, many students describe paragraphs as what consists the story, or a set of sentences that are grouped together to form a paragraph or a set of sentences that cover half a page of your story, and so on.

Although these ideas may look true in many instances, they don't really define what the idea behind a paragraph is. This is one of those subtle things in English writing that never really gets explained on priority making it one of those commonly used things that are barely understood. Which is why this read is going to be great.

The true intent of a paragraph is to express coherent points. It could be one sentence or through many sentences. The idea or what we call the "main idea" of the paragraph always flows in one direction. As soon as this idea changes, we change the paragraph too.

Basic Rules of Paragraph writing

- It all begins with one idea and everything familiar that naturally flows with it fits into one paragraph.
- Every paragraph you have should have points or sentence/s related and referring to the central idea.
- These ideas should not be random. It always helps to jot down quick points quickly in a rough sheet, arrange them into a logical chronological order that flows in one direction making it easier to read.
- Don't leave any point or sentence hanging loose without any substantiation or explanation. Every statement you make should be backed by logical reasoning that stays in one paragraph.

Model Paragraphs

Desperate Plea

A female judge from Punjab, Dr Sajida Ahmad, has written a moving letter to the chief justice of the Lahore High Court and to the chief justice of Pakistan, asking if lawyers and other persons usually present in a courtroom should be allowed to humiliate, harass, and mock female judges. Judge Dr Sajida has said that this is a frequent occurrence, and that she had even contemplated suicide before the Supreme Court Pakistan had this not been against the tenants of Islam. The judge has also said that the judicial profession has sunk to new depths and now it is extremely difficult for female judges to retain dignity in the courts. It has become virtually impossible to maintain the dignity of the court in a situation where lawyers feel free to mock

judges. It is true that as a female member of the judiciary, the complaining judge deserves utmost respect. This is certainly not why our judges study and train – only to be harassed by those in the same legal fraternity. Judge Dr Sajida has also asked what the point of her education is if this is what it comes down to.

This is an important issue. If more women are to be encouraged to come into the judiciary, the environment for them must be made acceptable and friendly. We have recently seen increased hooliganism from lawyers and members who form a part of the judicial circle. As Judge Dr Sajida has pointed out, the attack by lawyers on the Pakistan Institute of Cardiology in Lahore is just one example of this. It is obvious that something needs to be done to restore the dignity and honour of the judicial profession. It should not be so traumatic for a female judge to preside over court. Indeed, the presence of women in the judiciary is important, given that they may often be more able to adopt a sensitive attitude in certain cases, and are as qualified as their male counterparts.

Discrimination on the basis of gender is unacceptable. Such complaints come under the ambit of violation of the law against the harassment of women in the workplace. This law was put on the books in 2010 but has still to be properly implemented in the country. We hope that the concerned senior judges and also other members of the judiciary as well as the bar councils of Pakistan will take Judge Dr Sajida's letter seriously. The judiciary should be made a place where everyone can feel safe and where everyone's respect is honoured as per the code of conduct expected of the legal fraternity, a code that does not allow base hooliganism.

Pak Russia Talks

The latest talks to finalize an agreement to start work on the North-South Gas Pipeline Project (NSGPP) shows that Pakistan and Russia are keen on taking strategic engagement further. The discussions in Islamabad are crucial, as they will pave the way to kick-start the much-delayed project. The initiative, stretching hundreds of kilo metres from Karachi to Lahore, will be the largest in the history of Russian-Pakistani economic cooperation.

Given the current energy crisis in general and our dependence on gas that accounts for nearly 46 percent of Pakistan's total primary energy supplies, the project is of immense significance for Pakistan. Due to past governments' irrational policies and their inability to increase indigenous gas production, the gas crisis is coming sooner than later. The gap between demand and supply has grown to a level that experts estimate that our consumption will surpass indigenous supply by 4.6 billion cubic feet by 2022-23. Therefore, given the delays in the completion of other energy projects, for instance, the Turkmenistan Afghanistan Pakistan India Pipeline Project (TAPI), the most viable option to bridge the growing gap is to priorities NSGPP.

Energy projects are crucial for our economic progress. But the government's inability to solve Pakistan's energy crisis has sapped our economic growth so far. Many industrialists shifted their production units elsewhere, especially to Bangladesh. Nevertheless, the Russian backed project can mitigate the worsening gas shortage and help Pakistan achieve economic stability. Similarly, Russia is interested in the project because it will open up Pakistan's market for

Russian companies. The benefits that the two sides will reap from the project make it a win-win deal.

What is important now for the two sides is to make these talks a success so that the work can be started on NSGPP without further ado. Moreover, if the project is completed amicably, the possibilities of developing a multi-dimensional relationship between Islamabad and Moscow will grow manifold.

Letter Writing/Memo Writing

Rules for Writing Formal Letters

In English there are a number of conventions that should be used when writing a formal or business letter. Furthermore, you try to write as simply and as clearly as possible, and not to make the letter longer than necessary. Remember not to use informal language like contractions.

Addresses:

1) Your Address

The return address should be written in the top right-hand corner of the letter.

2) The Address of the person you are writing to

The inside address should be written on the left, starting below your address.

Date:

Different people put the date on different sides of the page. You can write this on the right or the left on the line after the address you are writing to. Write the month as a word.

Salutation or greeting:

1) Dear Sir or Madam,

If you do not know the name of the person you are writing to, use this. It is always advisable to try to find out a name.

2) Dear Mr Ali,

If you know the name, use the title (Mr, Mrs, Miss or Ms, Dr, etc.) and the surname only. If you are writing to a woman and do not know if she uses Mrs or Miss, you can use Ms, which is for married and single women.

Ending a letter:

1) Yours Faithfully

If you do not know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

2) Yours Sincerely

If you know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

3) Your signature

Sign your name, then print it underneath the signature. If you think the person you are writing to might not know whether you are male or female, put your title in brackets after your name.

Graphical Illustration

Date July 1, 2002

Sender's Address GP & ASSOCIATES
2652 SW Channing Avenue, Suite 400
Denver, CO 80244
gparker@gpaaccounting.com
www.gpaaccounting.com

Inside Address Mr. Tim Turlington
ACTION ITEMS
3490 Chestnut Parkway
Denver, CO 80244

Salutation Dear Mr. Turlington:

Body Text I understand from our mutual acquaintance, Chad Johnson, that you are looking to retain an accounting firm to assist you in the sale of your business. I would welcome the opportunity to show you how GP & Associates was able to help Chad successfully sell his business earlier this year.

As you'll see on our Web site, my associates and I have extensive experience in finance/accounting, internal audits, and tax compliance. For the past several years, we have specialized in business valuation and transition services for sellers. We enjoy working closely with clients throughout the sale process to ensure a smooth transition. As our clients can attest, our various pre-sale price improvement strategies can significantly optimize a business's sale price.

Should you be thinking of purchasing another business, please note that we also offer business acquisition services. For your reference, I have enclosed additional information describing GP & Associates' full range of services.

To set up an appointment to discuss your specific needs, please contact me at 303-459-0007. I know how busy you are, so I will give you a call on Tuesday to follow up if I haven't heard from you.

Closing "Call to Action" Best regards,

Signature Block Greg Parker

Enclosures Carbon Copy Enclosures
CC:

Memo Writing

MEMO WRITING

Memo writing is something of an art form. A letter is not a memo, nor is a memo a letter. A memo is a short, to the point communication conveying your thoughts, reactions or opinion on something. A memo can call people to action or broadcast a bit of timely news. **With memo writing, shorter is better.**

As with all writing, memo writing needs a structure. Because they are short, rambling meanderings will soon destroy the memo's effectiveness and become a waste of productive time to those that read it and to the person who wrote it.

If you have something longer than a page, it's better to send it as an attachment or a document that follows the memo used as a cover letter. Never make a memo long. If someone takes a glance at a memo that appears to be too long, there's a good chance it will be set aside for a time when they aren't busy. This can defeat your memo's purpose which is timely communication.

BASIC FORMATS

Memos can be approached in different ways depending on your purpose:

1. Decide if it's to be persuasive or informative.

While many memos are a combination of the two ("In order to process your claim promptly, please submit it no later than January 15."), sometimes memos have to be one or the other for the reader to take the appropriate action. A persuasive memo engages the reader's interest before issuing a directive, where as an informative memo outlines the facts and then requests the reader's actions.

2. Clearly state the purpose of communication in the subject line.

Most memo formats have the basics of the header, like "to," "from" and "date" in place. But you have a responsibility to make the subject line as descriptive as possible so the reader understands the intent. A memo simply titled "Vacation Time" might appear to be good news – until the document explains that vacation time won't be granted unless first requested in writing. Thus, a better memo title might be "New Vacation Time Request Policy".

3. Write memos with purpose and make that purpose known in the first paragraph.

Needless memo writing should be a crime across all states. One way to make sure no one reads or heeds memos is to send them out for the slightest issue. Try to avoid doing this. Also, outline the purpose and the desired action in the memo's first paragraph. Readers will become conditioned to the importance of a memo and gain that knowledge as soon as they open it.

4. K.I.S.S. – Keep It Simple, Short.

Most memo formats accommodate one page of information. This means that the topic details should be concise, with clear directives and contacts for follow-up. If it's a complex topic extending into multiple pages, still keep the language as direct as possible, add headings or bullets to guide the reader and conclude with a summary paragraph of key points. Reinforce the reader's necessary action. At the end of the memo, specifically direct the reader to the desired action.

5. Effective business communication improves workflow and relationships.

Use the tools of memo formats and well-constructed information to your advantage.

PARTS OF A MEMO

There are three basic reasons to write a memo:

- to persuade action
- to issue a directive
- or to provide a report.

Regardless of your purpose, memos are generally divided into segments in order to organize the information and to achieve your intention.

HEADING

The heading segment follows this general format:

TO: (readers' names and job titles)

CC: (any people you are copying the memo to)

FROM: (your name and job title)

DATE: (complete and current date)

SUBJECT: (what the memo is about, highlighted in some way)

- Make sure you address the reader by his or her correct name and job title.
- Be specific and concise in your subject line.

OPENING SEGMENT

The gist of a memo should occur in the opening sentences/paragraphs. It's a good idea to include some information about the context, a task statement and perhaps a purpose statement.

1. The context is the event, circumstance, or background of the problem you are solving or the directive you are giving. You can use a paragraph to establish the background and state the problem or more commonly simply use the opening of a sentence. Include only what your reader needs and be sure it is clear.
2. In the task statement describe what you are doing to deal with a situation. If an action was requested, refer to it by a sentence opening like, "You asked that I look at...." If you want to explain your intentions, you might say, "To determine the best method of xxx, I will...."
3. Finally, the purpose statement of a memo gives your reason for writing it and forecasts what is in the rest of the memo. You want to come right out and tell your reader the kind of information that's in store. For example, you might say: "This memo presents a description of the current situation, some proposed alternatives, and my recommendations." If you choose to use headings for your memo segments, you can refer to your major headings in this forecast statement to provide a guide for your reader.

SUMMARY SEGMENT

If your memo is longer than a page, you may want to include a separate summary segment. This segment provides a brief statement of the key recommendations you have reached. These will help your reader understand the key points of the memo immediately. This segment may also include references to methods and sources you have used in your research, but remember to keep it brief.

You can help your reader understand your memo better by using headings for the summary and the discussion segments that follow it. Try to write headings that are short but that clarify the content of the segment. For example, instead of using "Summary" for your heading, try "New Rat-Part Elimination System," which is much more specific. The major headings you choose here are the ones that will appear in your purpose-statement forecast.

DISCUSSION SEGMENTS

The discussion segments are the parts in which you get to include all the juicy details that support your ideas. Keep two things in mind:

1. Begin with the information that is most important. This may mean that you will start with key findings or recommendations.

2. Start with your most general information and move to your specific or supporting facts. (Be sure to use the same format when including details: strongest--->weakest.)
3. For easy reading, put important points or details into lists rather than paragraphs when possible.
4. Be careful to make lists parallel in grammatical form.

CLOSING SEGMENT

You're almost done. After the reader has read your information, you want to close with a courteous ending stating what action you want your reader to take. Make sure you consider how the reader will benefit from the desired actions and how you can make those actions easier. For example, you might say, "I will be glad to discuss this recommendation with you during our Tuesday trip to the spa and follow through on any decisions you make."

NECESSARY ATTACHMENTS

Make sure you document your findings or provide detailed information whenever necessary. You can do this by attaching lists, graphs, tables, etc. at the end of your memo. Be sure to refer to your attachments in your memo and add a notation about what is attached below your closing, like this:

Attached: Several Complaints about Product, January - June 2007

EXAMPLES

PERSUASIVE MEMORANDUM

To: M/S Star Corporation Karachi Pakistan
CC: Muhammad younas
From: The Boss
Date: June 1, 2020
Re: Need for New Memo Format

I've noticed that we don't seem to be able to communicate important changes, requirements and progress reports throughout the company as effectively as we should. I propose developing one consistent memo format, recognizable by all staff as the official means of communicating company directives.

While I know this seems like a simple solution, I believe it will cut down on needless e-mail, improve universal communication and allow the staff to save necessary information for later referral.

Please talk among yourselves to determine the proper points of memo writing and return the input to me by 12 noon. I will then send out a notice to the entire staff regarding the new memo format.

Thank you for your prompt attention to this.

DIRECTIVE MEMO

To: All Staff
From: The Boss
Date: June 1, 2020
Re: New Memo Format Effective June 1

In order to make interoffice communications easier, please adhere to the following guidelines for writing effective memos:

- Clearly state the purpose of the memo in the subject line and in the first paragraph.
- Keep language professional, simple and polite.
- Use short sentences.
- Use bullets if a lot of information is conveyed.
- Proofread before sending.
- Address the memo to the person(s) who will take action on the subject, and CC those who need to know about the action.
- Attach additional information: don't place it in the body of the memo if possible.
- Please put this format into practice immediately. We appreciate your assistance in developing clear communications.

If you have any questions, please don't hesitate to call me. Thank you.

TECHNICAL MEMO

To: The Boss
From: Rawalakot AJK
Date: May 15, 2020
Re: Update on the T-12 Phase Three testing

As we enter Phase Four of the T-12 testing, I wanted to provide a progress overview of the Phase Three testing.

[The body of the memo might include two-four paragraphs outlining the purpose of the memo. If this is a longer memo, each paragraph will have a subhead to help guide the reader through the document. Finally, there is a summary paragraph, which features bullets highlighting the main points of each previous paragraph, and concludes the memo with a stated action required by the reader or writer.]

Minutes of Meeting Writing

Whether you've been tasked with taking notes for a committee or you've been appointed Secretary to the Board of your organization, preparing meeting minutes doesn't have to be an arduous task. Here are some tips and ideas that will help you get started with writing and

preparing effective meeting minutes, as well as a meeting minutes sample and a meeting minute's template that you can follow.

This guide on how to write meeting minutes was prepared by Wild Apricot to help the volunteers and/or staff of small non-profits and membership organizations who may be new to the task of taking and preparing minutes of meeting for committees or Boards of Directors.

Please note that since the format, style and content requirements for meeting minutes varies depending on the organization and the type of committee or Board, this article offers only general guidelines to help get you started.

What is the purpose of meeting minutes?

You shouldn't be intimidated by the term "minutes" since it's actually a little misleading. After all, your committee or Board doesn't want or need a record of its meeting proceedings minute by minute! But it is important to capture the essence of the meeting, including details such as:

- Decisions made (motions made, votes, etc.)
- Next steps planned
- Identification and tracking of action items

Minutes are a tangible record of the meeting for its participants and a source of information for members who were unable to attend. In some cases, meeting minutes can act as a reference point, for example:

- when a meeting's outcomes impact other collaborative activities or projects within the organization
- minutes can serve to notify (or remind) individuals of tasks assigned to them and/or timelines

Why are they called minutes of a meeting?

According to "minutes" of "meeting minutes" don't refer to the minute measurement of time, but to the "minute" (my-newt) notes taken during meetings.

What's involved with meeting minutes?

As mentioned above, there are essentially five steps involved with meeting minutes:

1. Pre-Planning
2. Record taking - at the meeting
3. Minutes writing or transcribing
4. Distributing or sharing of meeting minutes
5. Filing or storage of minutes for future reference

1. Pre-planning meeting minutes:

A well-planned meeting helps ensure effective meeting minutes. If the Chair and the Secretary or minutes-taker work together to ensure the agenda and meeting are well thought out, it

makes minute taking much easier. For example, depending on the meeting structure and the tools you use, the minutes-taker could work with the Chair to create a document format that works as an agenda and minutes outline as well.

What is the agenda of a meeting?

Meeting agenda = outline:

At the very least, it's important to get a copy of the meeting agenda and use it as a guide or outline for taking notes, setting up your mom format, and preparing the minutes – with the order and numbering of items on the minutes of meeting matching those of the agenda.

In addition, the agenda and/or meeting notice also provides information that will need to be included in the minutes, such as:

- the names of all the meeting attendees, including guests or speakers
- documents that are sent out with the agenda or handed out in the meeting – copies (digital or hard copy) of handouts should be stored with the meeting minutes for future reference and for sharing with those who were unable to attend the meeting (and others as determined by the meeting's Chair).

Clarifying Expectations:

When you take on a new role as minutes-taker or Secretary, be sure to ask the Chair of the committee or Board what their expectations are of your role during the meeting, as well as the type of detail he/she expects in the minutes. For example, if your Board or committee will be dealing with motions, or voting on items/issues, be clear on whether you need to offer names of those making motions, seconding, etc.

2. What should be included in meeting minutes?

Before you start taking notes, it's important to understand the type of information you need to record at the meeting. As noted earlier, your organization may have required content and a specific mom format that you'll need to follow, but generally, meeting minutes usually include the following:

- Date and time of the meeting
- Names of the meeting participants and those unable to attend (e.g., "regrets")
- Acceptance or corrections/amendments to previous meeting minutes
- Decisions made about each agenda item, for example:
- Actions taken or agreed to be taken
- Next steps
- Voting outcomes – e.g., (if necessary, details regarding who made motions; who seconded and approved or via show of hands, etc.)
- Motions taken or rejected
- Items to be held over
- New business
- Next meeting date and time

Tips that might help your note taking:

- **Create an outline** – as discussed earlier, having an outline (or template) based on the agenda makes it easy for you to simply jot down notes, decisions, etc. under each item as you go along. If you are taking notes by hand, consider including space below each item on your outline for your hand-written notes, then print these out and use this to capture minutes.
- **Check-off attendees as they enter the room** - if you know the meeting attendees, you can check them off as they arrive, if not have folks introduce themselves at the start of the meeting or circulate an attendance list they can check-off themselves.
- **Record decisions or notes on action items** in your outline as soon as they occur to be sure they are recorded accurately
- **Ask for clarification if necessary** – for example, if the group moves on without making a decision or an obvious conclusion, ask for clarification of the decision and/or next steps involved.
- **Don't try to capture it all** – you can't keep up if you try to write down the conversation verbatim, so be sure to simply (and clearly) write (or type) just the decisions, assignments, action steps, etc.
- **Record it** – literally, if you are concerned about being able to keep up with note taking, consider recording the meeting (e.g., on your smart phone, iPad, recording device, etc.) but be sure to let participants know they are being recording. While you don't want to use the recording to create a word-for-word transcript of the meeting, the recording can come in handy if you need clarification.

Meeting Minutes Template

Toronto Association of Beekeepers

Meeting Minutes
April 25, 2019

Opening

The regular meeting of the Toronto Association of Beekeepers was called to order at 6:00 PM on April 25, 2019 in The Hive by Tatiana Morand.

Present

Tatiana Morand, Facilitator
Drusa Shyamala, Secretary
Saifullah Dagney, Board Member
Juda Zackary, Board Member
Agatha Kay, Board Member
Drusilla Longos, Board Member
Enrique Carver, Executive Director

Absent

James Clarkson, Marketing Manager

Approval of Agenda

The agenda was unanimously approved as distributed.

Approval of Minutes

The minutes of the previous meeting were unanimously approved as distributed.

Business from the Previous Meeting

Budget Committee Report:

The budget for 2019 has been finalized, and was distributed at this meeting by Saifullah Dagney, who led the committee. She ran through an itemized list of the line items, with board members asking questions periodically. The main change from 2018's budget was an increased marketing spend. The motion to accept the revised budget was seconded and passed.

New Hive Research:

Juda Zackary explained the result of the research she had been doing into the new brand of hives that some members have been purchasing. She found that to buy them in bulk for the association would be too expensive, and recommended against it. Her motion to dismiss this proposal was seconded and passed.

New Business

Marketing Plan for Gala:

Deferred for next meeting as James Clarkson was not in attendance.

Additions to the Agenda

Juda Zackary made a motion that a honey sale at the local farmers' market be discussed. Enrique Carver dismissed the motion, and proposed adding it to next month's meeting instead. Agatha Kay seconded that motion, and it was added to the agenda for next meeting.

Agenda for Next Meeting

Marketing Plan for Gala
Gala Agenda
Farmer's Market Honey Sale

Adjournment

Meeting was adjourned at 8:30 PM by Tatiana Morand. The next general meeting will be at 6:00 PM on May 22nd, 2019, in The Hive.

Minutes submitted by: Drusa Shyamala

Approved by: Enrique Carver

3. The Minutes Writing Process

Once the meeting is over, it's time to pull together your notes and write the minutes. Here are some tips that might help:

- Try to write the minutes as soon after the meeting as possible while everything is fresh in your mind.
- Review your outline and if necessary, add additional notes or clarify points raised. Also check to ensure all decisions, actions and motions are clearly noted.
- Ensure you're including sufficient detail
 - For Board of Director's minutes in particular, we recommend including a short description of each action taken, as well as the rationale behind the decision
 - If there was a lot of discussion before passing a motion, write down the major arguments for and against
- Edit to ensure brevity and clarity, so the minutes are easy to read
- In terms of mom format, here are a few things to keep in mind:
 - Be objective
 - Write in the same tense throughout
 - Avoid using names other than to record motions and seconds.
 - Avoid personal observations — the minutes should be solely fact-based
 - If you need to refer to other documents, don't try to summarize them. Rather, simply indicate where they can be found or attach them as an appendix

4. Do meeting minutes have to be approved?

Before you share your meeting minutes, make sure that the Chair has reviewed and either revised and/or approved the minutes for circulation. They are not an official record of a meeting unless this has taken place. Depending on your Board, minutes may also be formally approved at the beginning of the next meeting.

5. Distributing or Sharing Meeting Minutes

As the official “minutes-taker” or Secretary, your role may include dissemination of the minutes.

Study Skills

Study skills are the skills you need to enable you to study and learn efficiently – they are an important set of transferable life skills. Our pages provide generic study skills advice – appropriate to learners across all disciplines and in different life circumstances: full and part-time students, those returning to education later in life, those engaged in professional development and anybody who wants to learn how to learn effectively.

Key points about study skills:

- **You will develop your own personal approach to study and learning** in a way that meets your own individual needs. As you develop your study skills you will discover what works for you, and what doesn't.
- **Study skills are not subject specific** - they are generic and can be used when studying any area. You will, of course, need to understand the concepts, theories and ideas surrounding your specific subject area. To get the most out of your studies, however, you'll want to develop your study skills.
- **You need to practise and develop your study skills.** This will increase your awareness of how you study and you'll become more confident. Once mastered, study skills will be beneficial throughout your life.
- **Study skills are not just for students.** Study skills are transferable - you will take them with you beyond your education into new contexts. For example, organisational skills, time management, prioritising, learning how to analyse, problem solving, and the self-discipline that is required to remain motivated. Study skills relate closely to the type of skills that employers look for. (See **Transferable Skills** and **Employability Skills** for more.)

Techniques of Study Skills

• **Getting Organized to Study**

Getting organised is an important first step to effective study. Our page covers the basic organisation skills you need to consider – fundamentals such as where and when to study and the importance of developing a network of contacts who can help you when you need it.

• **Finding Time to Study**

This page covers some of the basic principles of time management – with reference to study. If you manage your time badly then you will be less productive, which can lead to stress and anxiety. This page will help you by outlining the importance of a personal study timetable and how to set goals and prioritise your time.

• **Sources of Information for Study**

Learn what is meant by, and the importance of, primary, secondary and tertiary documents and how you may source such information in a library or online.

• **Styles of Writing**

By understanding different writing styles you can put what you read into perspective. This page covers the main writing styles that you are likely to come across, including academic, journal, and journalistic styles.

- **Effective Reading**

When studying, it is likely that you will need to read a lot of information – and you will wish to use this time effectively as possible by developing your reading skills. Discover ways that you can engage with your reading, form links, understand opinions and put ideas and research into perspective. In short, develop your reading skills.

- **Critical Reading and Reading Strategies**

This page explains what is meant by critical reading and critical thinking – skills which are fundamental to true learning, personal development and advancement. The page also covers how to develop a personal reading strategy and use SQ3R to help you manage your reading.

- **Note-Taking**

Learning to take notes effectively is not only important to study but also in many other situations, at work and in your personal life. Develop your note-taking skills with our pages: **Note-Taking for Verbal Exchanges** and **Note-Taking for Reading**.

- **Planning an Essay**

It pays to carefully think about and plan an essay or other piece of written work before you start writing. This page provides you with a framework for planning which will help ensure your work is relevant, well-constructed and produced efficiently.

- **Essay Writing**

Learn about the processes involved in writing an essay, or other piece of assessed work. Avoid common mistakes and follow best practice to help ensure that the work you produce is of a high quality.

- **How to Write a Dissertation or Thesis**

Working on a dissertation, thesis or other research project can be the most challenging part of study. Our guide offers practical advice and explains how to work on each part of a research document, including:

- How to Write a Research Proposal
- Ethical Issues in Research
- Researching and Writing a Literature Review
- Writing your Methodology
- Writing up your Results and Discussion

- **Academic Referencing**

Learning how to reference correctly is vital if you are a student. This page not only covers why you should reference, and what may happen if you don't, but also includes some detailed guidelines on how to reference different types of materials.

Presentation Skills

Presenting information clearly and effectively is a key skill in getting your message across. Today, presentation skills are required in almost every field, and most of us are required to give presentations on occasions. While some people take this in their stride, others find it much more challenging. It is, however, possible to improve your presentation skills with a bit of work. This section of Skills You Need is designed to help

Essentials of Presentation Skills

These can all be considered presentations.

They do not, however, all require the same approach. You would not, for example, use PowerPoint to thank a colleague who was leaving. It would be unusual (though it has been done) to use it in a speech at a wedding. However, a conference audience would be somewhat surprised NOT to see slides projected onto a screen.

It follows, therefore, that there is no single set of rules that apply to all presentations. There are, however, some things that every presentation opportunity has in common. These include:

- **You will present better if you have prepared effectively.** This does NOT necessarily mean that you have written out your speech verbatim and rehearsed it until you know it off by heart—although that might work for some people. It does, however, mean that you have to be confident that you are saying the right thing, in the right way, to the right people.
- **You need to be clear about your audience and your message.** Every presentation will be better if you have clearly considered the message that you want or need to convey, and how best to convey it to your audience. These two pieces of information drive your style, structure, content, and use of visual aids.
- **You must never overrun your allocated time.** In other words, don't outstay your welcome. Almost every speech or presentation is better if it is shorter. Nobody minds going for coffee early or finishing before they expected to do so. Everybody minds being held up.
- **Generally speaking, your audience starts on your side.** As a rule, your audience is there (more or less) voluntarily. They have chosen to listen to you, and they want to enjoy your presentation. The occasion is yours to lose.

When you present, you are in charge of the room. The audience has effectively handed you control and is sitting back waiting for you to do something. You may have prepared a specific talk, but if you see that isn't working, you can always change it. You are, after all, the expert.

You can, for example:

- Skip through some slides to a section that they may find more interesting;
- Ask your audience whether there is particular information that they were expecting that you are not providing;

- Suggest that everyone looks a bit sleepy, and maybe it would be better to start questions early, or have a discussion; or
- Ask the audience at the start of the presentation what they are expecting and what they want you to cover. That way, you can tailor the presentation to fit their expectations.

Just as when you are facilitating, you want to help your audience get the most out of your presentation. The best way to do that is to accept feedback—which may include smiles, nods of interest, or people getting their phones out.

This will give you some ‘quick wins’ that will help you improve your presentations. If you’re already an experienced presenter, this page should be a useful refresher, or even take your skills from good to great.

Our tips include general ideas about connecting with your audience, information about the importance of voice and body language, and detailed tips about preparing slide-shows.

Practical Guide to Effective Presentation

The most important tip of all, however, is to remember that it's all about your audience.

Keep that in mind, and your presentation skills will almost instantly improve.

If you have more time to develop your presentation skills...

...then the Presentation Skills section of Skills You Need is designed to help.

Our Presentation Skills section is split into two parts.

- The first gives you a **step-by-step guide to putting together and delivering a professional and effective presentation.**
- The second provides **more detailed information about presenting and communicating in particular circumstances.**

You can either use our step-by-step guide to walk you through the presentation preparation and delivery process, or you can focus on particular areas that are an issue for you.

Preparing for Your Presentation

The guide starts by explaining what is a Presentation?

We define a presentation as a means of communication that can be adapted to various speaking situations, such as talking to a group, addressing a meeting or briefing a team. Effective presentations usually require careful thought and preparation—although this preparation need not take very long.

Preparation is the most important part of making a successful presentation. Our page on **Preparing For A Presentation** explains what information you need before you can really start to plan your presentation and decide what you are going to say. The most important aspects include the objective of the presentation, the subject, and the audience.

Irrespective of whether the occasion is formal or informal, you should always aim to give a clear, well-structured delivery. To do so, you need to **organise your presentation material**. You can either do this in your head, or use a technique like mind-mapping to help you identify links and good flow.

By the time you come to **write your presentation**, you should know exactly what you want to say and the order in which you want to say it. You may want to use one of the standard presentation structures, such as 'What, Why, How?'. You will also find it helpful to consider how to tell your story most effectively, and to use stories in your presentation to illustrate points. There is more about this in our page on **writing your presentation**.

You also need to decide on your presentation method. Presentations range from the formal to the informal. Your choice of presentation method will depend on many factors, including the audience, the venue, the facilities, and your own preferences.

Visual aids can add another dimension to your presentation, helping to hold your audience's attention, and also act as a reminder of what you wanted to say. However, they need handling with care. **Only use visual aids if they are necessary to maintain interest and assist comprehension.** If visual aids are not used well, they can ruin a presentation.

See **Working with Visual Aids** to avoid falling into the trap of the dreaded '*Death by PowerPoint*'.

A particular case of visual aids is the use of data in a presentation.

There are times when using data in a presentation can really help you to tell the story better. It is, however, important not to blind your audience with statistics. You also need to remember that many people find numbers difficult to understand. Our page on **Presenting Data** gives some hints and tips about using data effectively in a presentation situation.

On the Day of the Presentation

There are a number of aspects to delivering your presentation on the day.

The practicalities of how you manage your presentation can make a significant difference to its success, and to your nerves! For example, turning up early means that you will have a chance to see the room, and ensure that you can operate all the necessary equipment. There is more about how to cope, including managing sound systems, audio-visual equipment and lecterns in our page on **Managing the Presentation Event**.

Many people also feel very nervous before and during a presentation. This is entirely normal, and can even be helpful if you can channel it in the right way. There are some tried and tested strategies and techniques to manage your nerves so that you can concentrate on delivering an effective and engaging presentation.

See **Coping with Presentation Nerves** for some ideas that will help.

How you present yourself can also affect how your audience responds to your presentation.

You need to fit with your audience's expectations if they are not going to spend quite a large chunk of your presentation dealing with the differences between expectations and reality.

For more about aspects of self-presentation, see our page on **Self-Presentation in Presentations**.

You also need to consider how to **manage your presentation notes**.

Few people are able to give a presentation without notes. You will need to know your own abilities and decide how best to make the presentation. You might manage your talk by using full text, notes on cue cards, keywords on cue cards, or mind maps. There is more about this in our page on **Managing your Presentation Notes**.

After the presentation, you may be faced with a question-and-answer session. For many people, this is the worst part of the event.

Decide in advance how and when you wish to handle questions. Some speakers prefer questions to be raised as they arise during the presentation whilst others prefer to deal with questions at the end. At the start of your presentation, you should make clear your preferences to the audience. See our page on **Dealing with Questions** for more ideas about how to make the question session pleasant and productive, rather than something to dread.

Presenting Under Particular Circumstances

You may find that you need to give a presentation under certain circumstances, where your previous experience is less helpful.

Circumstances that may be new to you include:

- **Presentations in Interviews**
- **Presenting to Large Groups and Conferences**
- **Giving Lectures and Seminars**
- **Giving a Speech**, for example, at a wedding.

One particular special case is attending public consultation meetings.

Our pages on **Attending Public Consultation Meetings**, and **Managing Public Consultation Meetings** provide information to help whether you are a concerned member of the public, or responsible for organizing a public meeting.

You may also find yourself required to organize or manage a press conference.

Although this may not strictly be what you would describe as a 'presentation', it is nonetheless an event at which you are required to present your organization in a particular light.

Our page on **Managing a Press Conference** gives some ideas about how best to do that.

Finally, should you be unlucky enough to be involved in a serious crisis or disaster that affects your organization, our page on **Crisis Communications** gives some ideas about how to manage press and public relations on these occasions.

Essay Writing

Despite the fact that, as Shakespeare said, "The pen is mightier than the sword," the pen itself is not enough to make an effective writer. In fact, though we may all like to think of ourselves as the next Shakespeare, inspiration alone is not the key to effective essay writing. You see, the conventions of English essays are more formulaic than you might think

Structure of Essay

An essay should be written in a flowing manner with each sentence following on logically from the previous one and with appropriate signposts to guide the reader.

An essay usually takes the following structured format:

- The introduction
- The main body: a development of the issues
- A conclusion

The Introduction

The function of the introduction is simply to introduce the subject, to explain how you understand the question, and describe briefly how you intend to deal with it.

You could begin by defining essential terms, providing a brief historical or personal context if appropriate, and/or by explaining why you think the subject is significant or interesting.

Some students find it best to write a provisional introduction, when starting to write an essay, and then to rewrite this when they have finished the first draft of their essay. To write a provisional introduction, ask yourself what the reader needs to know in order to follow your subsequent discussion.

Other students write the introduction after they have written the main body of the essay – do whatever feels right for you and the piece of work you are writing.

The Main Body: A Development of the Issues

Essays are generally a blend of researched evidence (e.g. from additional reading) and comment.

Some students' essays amount to catalogues of factual material or summaries of other people's thoughts, attitudes, philosophies or viewpoints.

At the opposite extreme, other students express only personal opinions with little or no researched evidence or examples taken from other writers to support their views. What is needed is a balance.

The balance between other researchers' and writers' analysis of the subject and your own comment will vary with the subject and the nature of the question. Generally, it is important to back up the points you wish to make from your experience with the findings of other published researchers and writers.

You will have likely been given a reading list or some core text books to read. Use these as your research base but try to expand on what is said and read around the subject as fully as you can. Always keep a note of your sources as you go along.

You will be encouraged and expected to cite other authors or to quote or paraphrase from books that you have read. The most important requirement is that the material you cite or use should illustrate, or provide evidence of, the point you are making. How much evidence you use depends on the type of essay you are writing.

If you want a weight of evidence on some factual point, bring in two or three examples but no more.

Quotations should not be used as a substitute for your own words. A quote should always have an explanation in your own words to show its significance to your argument.

When you are citing another author's text you should always indicate exactly where the evidence comes from with a reference, i.e. give the author's name, date of publication and the page number in your work. A full reference should also be provided in the reference list at the end.

A Conclusion

At the end of an essay you should include a short conclusion, the purpose of which is to sum up or draw a conclusion from your argument or comparison of viewpoints.

In other words, indicate what has been learned or accomplished. The conclusion is also a good place to mention questions that are left open or further issues which you recognise, but which do not come within the scope of your essay.

Neither the conclusion, nor the introduction, should totally summarize your whole argument: if you try this, you are in danger of writing another assignment that simply repeats the whole case over again.

Translation Skills

Model Translation Passages: -

سفر انسان کی تعلیم اور ترقی کے لیے ضروری ہے۔ یہ نوجوانوں کی تربیت کا بہترین ذریعہ ہے۔ بیرون ملک جا کر ہم نئے تجربات حاصل کرتے ہیں۔ یہ تجربات ہمارے ذہن کو وسیع کرتے ہیں۔ ہمارے زندگی کے بارے میں خیالات بہتر ہوتے ہیں۔ لیکن بیرون ملک سفر کے دوران ہمیں ایسی بات کرنے سے پرہیز کرنا چاہیے جس سے ہمارے ملک کی بدنامی ہو۔

For man s' education and progress, travelling is necessary. It is the best way for the training of the youth. In the foreign countries, we get new experiences. These experiences broaden our mind. Our ideas about life get better shape. But during travelling abroad, we should avoid such actions that may bring bad name to our country.

اس وقت پاکستان بہت سی ملکی اور بین الاقوامی مشکلات میں گھرا ہوا ہے۔ ہمارے دشمن ہمیں دن رات نقصان پہنچانے کے پیکر میں ہیں۔ اور ہم سب اس سے باخوبی آگاہ ہیں۔ ملت اسلامیہ کا دشمن بہت ہی شاطر اور ہوشیار ہے۔ ان تمام مشکلات سے نکلنے کے لیے ہمیں ایک مخلص، دیانتدار اور قوم پرست رہبر کی ضرورت ہے جو ہمیں تباہی اور اذیت کے اس منہدم ہارے سے نکال سکے۔

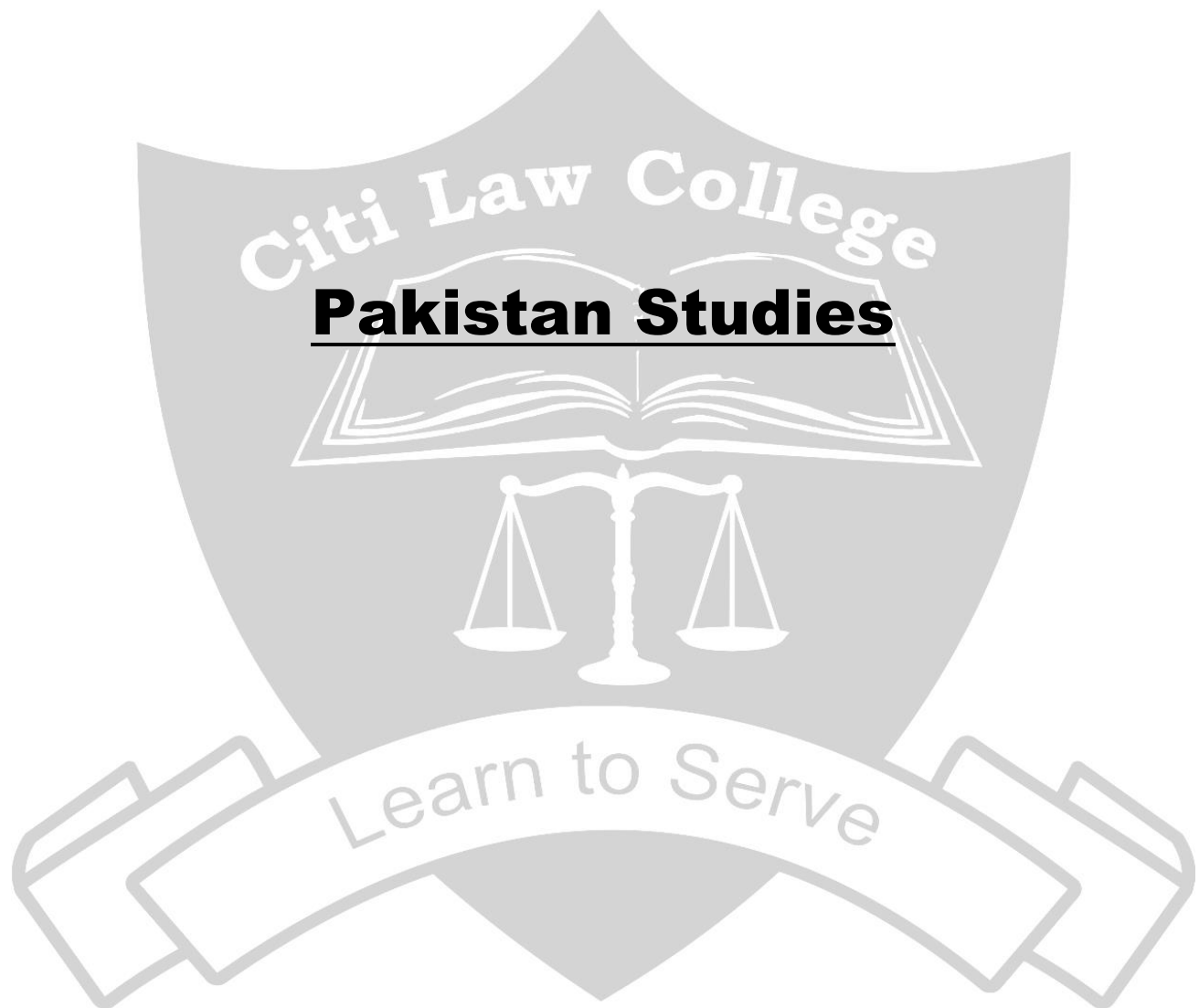
Nowdays Pakistan is facing many difficulties related to national and international issues. Our enemy is trying day and night to harm us and we all are well aware of it. The enemy of the Islamic Nation is very cunning and clever. We need a sincere, honest and nationalist leader to cope up these difficulties, a person who can take us out of the deep sea of destructions and pains

تندرستی ہزار نعمت ہے۔ لیکن آدمی جب تندرست رہتا ہے اپنی صحت کی قدر نہیں کرتا۔ جو طبی بیمار پڑتا ہے تو اسے صحت کی قدر معلوم ہو جاتی ہے۔ تندرستی ہو تو کھانے پینے میں بھی جی لگتا ہے۔ صحت گر جائے تو کوئی بھی چیز مزہ نہیں دیتی۔ بیمار آدمی تو زندہ در گور ہو جاتا ہے۔ ہم کو اپنی صحت کا خیال رکھنا چاہیے۔ پرہیز علاج سے بہتر ہے۔ Health is wealth. As long as a man remains healthy, he does not realize the value and importance of his health. As he falls ill, the importance of health is known to him. A healthy man enjoys eating. A man with broken health, enjoys nothing. A sick man is buried alive. We should take care of our health. Prevention is better than cure.

قوموں کی زندگی میں اتحاد و اتفاق ہی وہ طاقت ہے، جس کی بدولت وہ مشکلات پر قابو پا کر کامیاب ہو سکتی ہیں۔ قومی اتحاد ملک کی ترقی میں اہم کردار ادا کرتا ہے۔ قومی اتحاد ہماری قوم کو مضبوط بنانے کے لئے بہت اہم ہے۔ اس میں کوئی شک نہیں ہے کہ پاکستان اپنی تاریخ کے سب سے نازک دور سے گزر رہا ہے۔ پاکستان کو طاقتور اور خوشحال بنانے کے لئے قومی اتحاد ایک لازمی امر ہے۔ آپس کے اختلافات ختم کرنے اور اتحاد و یکجہتی کی جتنی ضرورت آج ہے، شاید پہلے کبھی نہ تھی۔

In the life of the nations, national unity is the strength due to which a nation can succeed by overpowering the difficulties. National unity plays an important role in the development of the country. National unity is very important to strengthen our nation. There is no doubt that Pakistan is passing through the most critical period of its history. National unity is an essential fact to make Pakistan strong and prosperous. Today the need of eradication mutual contradictions and to have unity and harmony is more than ever.



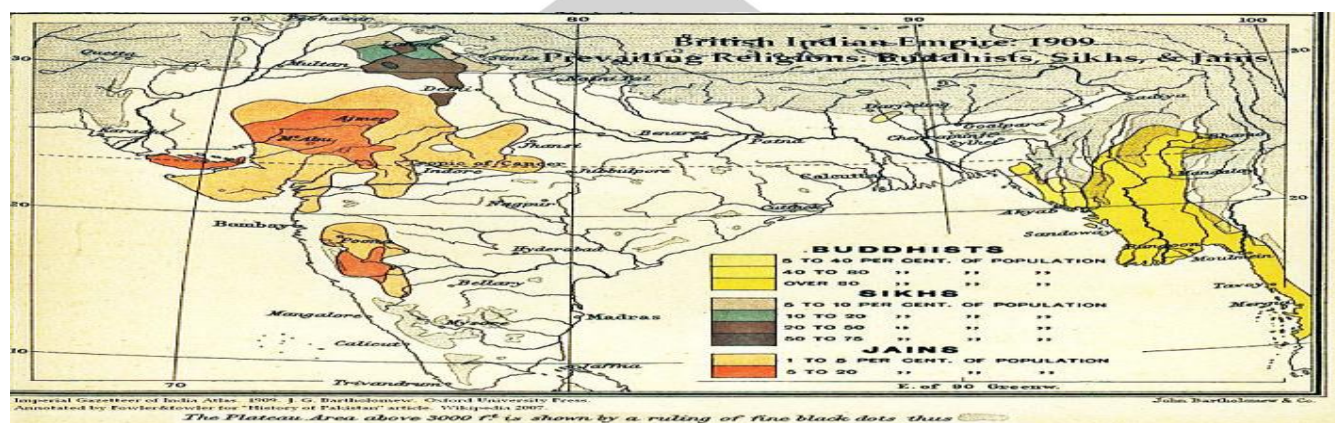


Pakistan Studies

Pakistan Studies

Freedom movement, brief resumes from 1857 to 1947





Freedom movement Events at a Glance (1857 to 1947)



1857 War of Independence

An anti-British uprising also known as the Sepoy Rebellion/First War of independence. It was crushed with an iron hand. The British blamed the Muslims for the 'mutiny' and subjected them to ruthless punishment. It marked the final collapse of the Mughal Empire and the progressive decline of the Muslims. It had a far-reaching effect on the destiny of the Muslims.



1885-Formation of the Indian National Congress

A liberal Indian organization founded by A.W. Hume, a retired member of the Indian Civil Service. Its aim: to fuse all discordant elements, regenerate the nation and consolidate the union between England and India. After 1930 it became a typical Hindu organization always at loggerheads with the Muslim League.

Birth of the Congress

The credit for the birth of the Indian National Congress is generally given to **A.O. Hume**, a retired British civil servant who inaugurated it. However there is general consensus on the view that the Congress was a natural and inevitable consequence of various political, economic and social forces.



A.O.Hume

**Allan Octavian
Hume**

- **1901 -Creation of N.W.E.P. By British Govt.**

1905-Partition of Bengal



The Bengal Presidency was partitioned by Lord Curzon and its boundaries redrawn to create two provinces of manageable size. It was purely an administrative measure but the Hindus raised great hue and cry and denounced it as an anti-Hindu measure aimed at breaking their monopoly. It reflected the divergent attitude of the Hindus and the Muslims.

Swadeshi movement; started by Hindus against partition of Bengal.

1906-Simla Deputation



A deputation, representing all shades of Muslims opinion and led by Aga Khan and 35 notable leaders of Muslims called on the viceroy Lord Minto on October 1 at Simla. It made two basic demands:

- a. Separate representation for Muslims**
- b. Weight age in all elected bodies. It represented the earliest Muslim attempt to safeguard their rights.**

1906-Founding of the All-India Muslim League



The All India Muslim League was founded in Dhaka in December 1906 to watch and safeguard Muslim interests. Its major aims:

- 1. To promote loyalty to the British government,**
- 2. Advance the interests of the Muslims of India and prevent any feeling of hostility towards other communities. It played a dynamic role in the Pakistan Movement.**



1909-Minto – Morley Reforms

These reforms provided for separate electorates in all the provinces. The Imperial Legislative Council and the provincial councils were enlarged. It also met the demands of the Simla Deputation (1906).



1911-Annulment of the Partition of Bengal

In December 1911, at a 'darbar' in Delhi, King George V announced the annulment of the partition of Bengal. The Muslims were bewildered. Hindu agitation had triumphed. Khawaja Sir Salimullah, President-elect of the All India Muslim League said: "The annulment of the partition has put a premium on sedition and disloyalty." The annulment widened the cleavage between Hindus and Muslims... more



1914-18 World War I

Also known as the Great War. It was an international struggle that raged over the old world between August 1914 and November 1918. France, Russia and Great Britain were arrayed on one side and Germany, Austria, Turkey, on the other. The war ended with the treaty of Versailles (1918). The Khilafat Movement (1919-24) in India was an offshoot of this war.

1916 Lucknow Pact

A joint League – Congress agreement in which the Muslim League overtures of good will and friendship were fully reciprocated by the Congress who conceded separate electorates to the Muslims. This pact was signed between Muslims and Hindus due to Quaid's efforts. It was the first and last agreement between Muslims and Hindus. Quaid e Azam was titled As an Ambassador of Hindu Muslim unity by Saroj Naidu.



1919 Montague – Chelmsford Reforms

These reforms introduced 'diarchy'. Separate electorates were continued.

Home Rule Movement

When Great Britain was involved in World War I, India's national movement took on new dimensions. One of them was the Home Rule Movement. On April 28, 1916, the Home Rule League was set up with its headquarters at Pune. **Tilak** went on a whirlwind tour of the country, appealing to everybody to unite under the banner of Home Rule League. **Annie Besant**, an Irish lady, who was a member of the Theosophical Society of India, played a key role in this movement.

To quell the growing revolutionary fervour and spirit, the British government enforced stricter laws to prevent agitations and meetings. The importance of the Home Rule movement lay in the fact that for the first time, the independence of India clearly became the objective of the Indian national movement. The public at large especially the youth began to indulge in acts of terrorism, bombing parliamentary meetings, blowing up railway lines and picketing shops. It was at this juncture that a new leader appeared on the political horizon.



Annie Besant

Rowlatt Act

Meanwhile in 1917-18, came the Rowlatt Act, proposed by Justice Rowlatt which, among other things gave the courts the right to try political cases without a jury while provincial governments, apart from the centre, had the power of internment without trial. Gandhi vehemently opposed the Rowlatt Act saying that since it raised issues of trust and self-respect, and hence should be met by a moral response

1919-23 Khilafat Movement

An Indian Muslim Movement for the preservation of the Khilafat' and the territorial integrity of Ottoman Empire. **The Ali Brothers were its leading proponents.** Gandhi supported the movement and encouraged non-cooperation with the British. **A section of Indian Muslims, to express their indignation, resorted to 'Hijrat'.** They gained nothing. **The movement petered (come to an end gradually) out when Mustafa Kamal Atatürk itself abolished the caliphate.**



1920 Jinnah resigned from congress.



1922-29 Hindu – Muslim Riots

Starting with 1922, India was the scene of bloody Hindu-Muslim riots for the next seven years. Hindu leaders were rabid communalists. Arya Samaj, shuddhi, sanghathan activities targeted the Muslims. These riots marked a high point in communal bitterness and increased Muslim 's hostility.

1927 Arrival of Simon Commission headed by sir Simon.

1927 Delhi Muslim Proposals

These proposals were a fresh try for a Hindu-Muslim settlement. A group of prominent Muslims met at Delhi on March 20, 1927. The Muslims were ready to forgo (omit) the separate electorate if their following demands were conceded.

1. Sind should be separated from Bombay,
2. Reforms introduced in NWFP and Baluchistan.
3. Muslim representation in the Central Legislature should not be less than 1/3.
4. The Muslims should be given representation according their population with reservation of seats.

1928 Nehru Report

The Nehru Report published in August was a patently anti-Muslim document. It included a draft constitution for India. It recommended that:

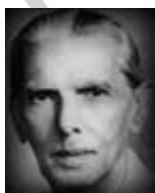
1. A declaration of Human Rights should be inserted
2. NWFP be given full provincial status.
3. Sind be separated from Bombay.
4. Separate electorates be immediately abolished.
5. No weightage be allowed.



The Report rejected a federation and supported a unitary government.

1929 Quaid-i-Azam's Fourteen Points

The Muslim League at the time was torn by internal dissension. The Quaid outlined a Programme on which Muslims could unite. This was the famous Fourteen Points.



1. The Muslim safeguards recommended included a federal form of constitution for India
2. A full-fledged province hood for Sind, Baluchistan and North-West Frontier.

1930 Simon Report

A constitutional report that rejected the unitary system and recommended a federal framework for India. It also recommended 1. doing away with diarchy and 2. setting up of a Council of Greater India.



1930-Allam Iqbal Address

In December 1930, Allama Muhammad Iqbal, while addressing the Muslim League annual session at Allahabad advocated partition of the subcontinent. He even demand and defined the frontiers of a proposed "Consolidated Muslim State", which he believed would be "in the best interests if".



1930-32 Round Table Conferences (RTCs)

Three Round Table Conferences were held to sort out Hindu – Muslim differences. The first met in **November 1930**. Hindus and Muslims could not agree on the communal problem. The **Muslims were adamant on the 'Muslim Charter' based on the Quaid's Fourteen Points**. At the second RTC, Gandhi claimed that **Congress alone represented India and rejected safeguards and separate electorates for Muslims**.

The third RTC ended inconclusively in November 1932.

1932-Communal Award (1932)

The Process of constitution making had gone through many stages from Government of India Act 1919 to Communal Awards in 1932. Communal rivalries were noticed during discussions with the Indian leadership. **The Simon commission and Round Table Conferences failed to evolve an agreeable formula**. The Indian leaders also failed to reach at an agreement to settle communal problem. In August 1932, a Communal Awards was announced in which separates electorates for the Muslims were allowed to continue.

1935-Government of India Act

This Act, strengthened parliamentary institutions yet kept ultimate power in the hands of the British. There were to be elected legislatures. The Governor General was the Chief Executive and absolute authority. Dyarchy was abolished

1937-Elections

Elections to the provincial legislative assemblies were held in 1937 under the Government of India Act 1935. Congress won majorities in eight provinces and formed ministries. It fared (managed) badly in Muslim majority provinces. Muslims, on their side, were divided among themselves.

1937-39 Congress Rule in the Provinces

The rule of the Congress ministries was dictatorial and nothing short of a nightmare (terrible). It popularized the idea of Pakistan and alienated (isolated) the Muslims from the ideal of a United India.

1938-Pirpur Report

A report on the working of the Congress ministries. It highlighted Muslim grievances. An excerpt from the Report says: "The Congress has failed to inspire confidence in the minorities. It is a Hindu Organization. The just and legitimate demands of the Muslims were ignored..."

1939-45 World War II

War between Germany, Italy and Japan (the Axis powers) on one side and Britain, France, U.S., the U.S.S.R and China (the allied powers) on the other. It was a struggle between the forces of democracy and dictatorship. 55 million lives were lost. Germany surrendered in May '45 and Japan in July '45 after the atomic attack on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.



1940-The Pakistan Resolution

A landmark in the history of the Indian Muslims. The Pakistan Resolution was passed in March 1940 at the Muslim League session at Lahore under the presidentship of Quaid-i-Azam Muhammad Ali Jinnah. The resolution demanded that the Muslim majority areas be grouped to constitute independent states. Pakistan was the direct outcome of this resolution.



1942-Cripps Mission

Sir Stafford Cripps arrived in New Delhi for talks with Indian Leaders on the future constitution of India. He discussed the draft proposals. The Muslim League rejected the proposals as there was no provision for amendments or for the formation of two constituent assemblies instead of one.



1944- Gandhi - Jinnah Talks

Gandhi - Jinnah talks were held at Bombay on the basis to resolve the differences between the Congress and the All India Muslim League on the issue of Pakistan. Gandhi was opposed to the Two Nations Theory and refused the Muslims the right of self-determination. These talks failed.



1945-The Simla Conference

A conference called by the Viceroy at Simla where the formation of an Executive Council was discussed. The Congress insisted that it represented all the communities in India and could nominate Muslims to the new Council. The All India Muslim League stated that only the League had the right to nominate Muslim members. The Conference failed on this issue.



1946-The Cabinet Mission

The Cabinet Mission proposals stipulated a weak Centre, supreme only in foreign affairs, defence and communication, **and three autonomous groups of provinces.**

Two of these were to have Muslim majorities while the third one was to have a Hindu majority. First of Bengal and Assam and second group of Muslim majority Areas, and third group of Hindus majority area. The Muslim League accepted the Plan but the Congress gave a qualified consent. Nehru's defiant posture and refusal to accept the groupings and a less powerful Centre angered the Quaid, who later rejected the Plan.

1946-Direct Action Day

Disgusted with the Congress stance vis-à-vis the Cabinet Mission Plan, the Quaid voted for observing Direct Action Day on August 16, to press for Pakistan. For the first time in its annals, the League said good-bye to constitutional struggle for achieving their goal

1946-Interim Government Installed in Office

The British Government proposed on 22 July that an Interim Government be formed at the Centre. Initially both the Congress and the Muslim League rejected the proposal. The Viceroy then asked only Nehru to form the government. The Muslim League regretted the installation of a one-party government and flew black flags. It later realised that its exclusion from the government was playing havoc with Muslim interests. Finally after long and complicated negotiations the League joined the government. Liaquat Ali Khan was given the Finance portfolio. Congress was to regret this decision... more



1946-June 3 Partition Plan

This plan for the partition of India was prepared by Lord Mountbatten, the last Viceroy of India, in consultation with the British government. It was based on the fundamental principle that transfer of power should take place according to the wishes of the people. A time-limit for British withdrawal from the subcontinent was fixed. The British decided to hand over power on 15 August 1947 to two successor states to be known as India and Pakistan... more



1947-Pakistan Achieved

14 August 1947 was Pakistan's date with destiny. On that day, Mountbatten formally transferred power to the Constituent Assembly of Pakistan on behalf of His Majesty's Government. On 15 August Quaid-i-Azam Muhammad Ali Jinnah was sworn in as the first Governor General of Pakistan. A seven-year old struggle came triumphantly to an end and a long cherished dream stood translated into reality... more

The Creation of Pakistan on 14th August, 1947

Quaid-e-Azam Muhammad Ali Jinnah took oath as the Governor General of Pakistan.



Ideology of Pakistan

Ideology is a set of beliefs, values and ideals of a group and a nation. It is deeply ingrained in the social consciousness of the people. It is a set of principles, a framework of action and guidance system that gives order and meaning to life and human action.

Took shape through an evolutionary process

The ideology of Pakistan took shape through an evolutionary process. Historical experience provided the base; Allama Iqbal gave it a philosophical explanation; Quaid-i-Azam translated it into a political reality; and the Constituent Assembly of Pakistan, by passing Objectives Resolution in March 1949, gave it legal sanction. It was due to the realization of the Muslims of South Asia that they are different from the Hindus that they demanded separate electorates. However when they realized that their future in a „Democratic India“ dominated by Hindu majority was not safe, they changed their demand to a separate state.

Stemmed from the instinct of the Muslim community

The ideology of Pakistan stemmed from the instinct of the Muslim community of South Asia to maintain their individuality in the Hindu society. The Muslims believed that Islam and Hinduism are not only two religions, but are two social orders that produced two distinct cultures. There is no compatibility between the two. A deep study of the history of this land proves that the differences between Hindus and Muslims are not confined to the struggle for political supremacy but are also manifested in the clash of two social orders. Despite living together for more than one thousand years, they continue to develop different cultures and traditions. Their eating habits, music, architecture and script, all are poles apart. The basis of the Muslim nationhood was neither territorial nor racial or linguistic or ethnic rather they were a nation because they belonged to the same faith, Islam. They demanded that the areas where they were in majority should be constituted into a sovereign state, wherein they could

order their lives in accordance with the teachings of Holy Quran and Sunnah of Holy Prophet (PBUH).

Evolution of Two Nation Theory

Concept of Muslims as a Nation developed before the establishment of Pakistan. Pakistan was the product of this concept of nationhood rather than Pakistan creating a concept of nationhood. Retrospectively the Muslim nationalism emerged with the advent of Islam that introduced new principles pertinent to every sphere of life. It pledged the redemption of the humankind establishing a benign society based on Qur'anic teachings. The beginning of the Muslim nationalism in the Sub-Continent may be attributed to the first Indian who accepted Islam. The Arab traders had introduced the new religion, Islam, in the Indian coastal areas. Muhammad bin Qasim was the first Muslim invader who conquered some part of India and after that, Mahmud of Ghazna launched 17 attacks and opened the gate to preach Islam. The Muslim sufi (saints) like Ali Hejveri, Miran Hussain Zanjani etc. entered Sub-Continent. They, rejecting the vices in the Indian society, presented the pure practical picture of the teachings of Islam and got huge conversions. Qutub-ud-Din Aibuk permanently established Muslim dynasty in India that followed Sultanate and Mughal dynasties. Thus a strong Muslim community had emerged in India who had its own way of life, traditions, heroes, history and culture. Islam could not be absorbed in Hinduism. Deen-e-Ilahi, Bakhti movements, etc. created reaction amongst the Muslim ulama to preserve the pure Islamic character and save it from external onslaught. Role of Sheikh Ahmad Sirhindi and others is noteworthy. Equality and social justice inspired conversions to Islam,

Hindi-Urdu Controversy

Hindu revivalist movements turned more against the Muslims. Hindu nationalism was rival to the Muslim nationalism. The Indian nationalism forced Muslims to organize themselves politically to defend their interests effectively. After 1857, Hindi-Urdu Controversy was the major assault by the Hindus on Muslim heritage and legacy of the great Muslim Empire. Hindus were biased against Urdu as it was the Muslims' language. They demanded Hindi as the official language replacing Urdu. There were demonstrations against Urdu by the Hindus in Banaras in 1867. It was the start of the Hindi-Urdu controversy. On the very issue, Sir Syed foretold about the unstable future of Hindu-Muslim unity. Hindus struggled vigorously to replace Urdu by Hindi in the offices. This enhanced the importance of the sense of Muslim separatism. The Muslim nationalism is manifested with the sublime principles to implement like;-

1. Rule of Law, socio-economic justice, equity and fair play.
2. Equality of opportunity to all citizens irrespective of caste, sect, religion or region.
3. Religious and Cultural tolerance.
4. Respect for human dignity and rights.
5. Protection of the rights and interests of non-Muslims and freedom to practice their beliefs and religions. These principles are enshrined in the constitutions. We ought to work towards realization of these goals in reality and create institutions and processes that reflect these principles and values.

Sir Syed Ahmad Khan's Movement and His Contributions

The Aligarh Movement

Sir Syed Ahmad Khan made modern education the way to progress. After the Muslim rule, the new rulers, the British, implemented a new educational policy with drastic changes. The policy restricted Arabic, Persian and religious education in schools and made English as the only medium of instruction as well as the official language in 1835. A wrong attitude of everything modern and Western, and disinclination to make use of the opportunities opening under the new regime was created among the Muslims. This tendency, had it continued long, would have proved disastrous for the Muslim community.

Sir Syed's first and foremost objective was to modernize the Muslims following the Western cultural values that could create a friendly atmosphere for the two communities. He motivated his community to learn the Western philosophy and English literature to get along with the ruling people. Therefore, in order to fulfill this desire he started the Aligarh movement. He had two immediate objectives in view:

- 1) To remove the state of tension between the Muslims and the British government, and
- 2) To induce them to get jobs and other facilities under the new government. To him, this was the only way for the Muslims to prosper.

The ideas of Sir Syed may be summed up as following:

1. To create an atmosphere of mutual understanding between the British government and the Muslims.
2. To motivate the Muslims to learn Western education
3. To persuade Muslims to abstain from agitational politics

Sir Syed published *Loyal Mohammedans of India* and *Risala Asbab-i-Baghawat-i-Hind* that helped both the nations to redress their grievances. In 1885 the Indian National Congress was founded but Sir Syed warned the Muslims from the sinister aspirations of the Hindus. Another factor was that he intended the Muslims to abstain from the politics that could result in friction with the ruling nation.

Urdu-Hindi Controversy

Urdu grew as a common language of all the Indians regardless of origin or religion but in 1867 the Benarsi Hindus started a campaign to replace Urdu by Hindi. To gain the objectives, they declared numerous organizations, which discouraged Sir Syed who said to Shakespeare that since now both the nations could not live together. Later the followers of Sir Syed tried their level best to save Urdu language. Mohsin ul Mulk was the outstanding person who organized the Muslims in defense of Urdu.

Muslims-as a Nation

Sir Syed used the word „nation“ for the Muslims. Some writers criticize that he declared Hindus and Muslims one nation. But as a matter of fact, he advocated the Hindu-Muslim unity that meant „the working relationship“ between the two nations as once he said: “Hindus and Muslims should try to be of one mind in matters which affected their progress.” He favored

separate electorate for the Muslims in 1883 saying that the majority would override the interests of the minority.

United Indian Patriotic Association

In 1888, he set up the Patriotic Association to meet the propaganda of the Congress. Muslims and Hindus joined the Association. It advocated the Muslims' emotions.

Mohammedan Defense Association

In December 1893, Sir Syed founded the Association. Its main purpose was to protect the political, religious and social rights of the Muslims. Sir Syed was great because he contributed greatly to the Muslim struggle for identity. Otto von Bismarck served the German nation with the help of all government sources but Sir Syed did the same without all this. To Khalid Bin Sayeed, "Many tributes have been paid to Sir Sayyid, particularly by modern educated Muslims for being daring enough to put forward such views in an age which was by no means liberal or tolerant."

Ideology of Pakistan in the Light of Statements of QUAID-I-AZAM and ALLAMA IQBAL

The social or political Programme of any movement that becomes a collective objective of any nation is called Ideology. OR

Ideology means such an aim according to which human beings planned about their future.

The Ideology of Pakistan

The Ideology of Pakistan was the consciousness of the Muslims in the historical perspective of the south Asian sub-continent that they were a separate nation on the basis of the Islamic ideology. No doubt Islamic ideology is the base of ideology of Pakistan so the basic fundamentals of Islam are also the bases of the Ideology of Pakistan.

Ideology of Pakistan & Different Scholars

Ideology of Pakistan is defined by the different scholars as: -

1. Syed Ali Abbas

Syed Ali Abbas former professor of history defined ideology of Pakistan as.

"Ideology of Pakistan and Ideology of Islam have same meaning. Actually ideology of Pakistan is the practical shape of teachings of Islam."

2. Dr. Aslam Syed

Dr. Aslam Syed defined the ideology of Pakistan as.

"Ideology of Pakistan is the name of molding of individual and collective lives according to Islam and also of saving form conflicting ideologies."

3. **Allama Allau-Din-Siddiqui**

A well known scholar Allama Allau-Din-Siddiqui defined ideology of Pakistan as.

"Ideology of Pakistan is the name of implementation of Islamic principles on persons. On groups & on government and Islam should be stronger than the strongest forces here"

Pakistan is the only state that came into being on the bases of strong ideology. Since its establishment it has been demanded to accomplish its basic aim.

QUAID-E-Azam AND IDEOLOGY OF PAKISTAN

Quaid-e-Azam was the liberator of the Muslim nation in Sub-Continent. He struggled for the separate state on the bases of Islamic Ideology. He himself explained this basic ideology. -

1. **Foundation of Muslim Nation**

Once Quaid-e-Azam said,

"Pakistan came into being the very day when the first Hindu became a Muslim."

2. **Pakistan and the Holy Quran:**

In the annual meeting of 1943 at Karachi Quaid-e-Azam said while clarifying the relation of Pakistan and Islam:

"What is that relation which has made Muslim a single body? What is that rock on which the structure of Muslim Nation is restored? What is that base which has secured the safety of the boat of this Muslim Nation? That relation, rock and base is the Holy Quran."

3. **Islam is a complete code of life:**

While addressing the students, in March, 1944 he said,

"Our guide is Islam and this, is the complete code of our life. We neither need any red or yellow flag nor do we need any Socialism. Communism, Nationalism or any other ism"

4. **Elimination of differences:**

On 21 March, 1948 while addressing the people in Dhaka and said,

"I want not to see you to talk as a Sindhi, Balochi, Punjabi and Bengali. What is the fun of saying that we are Punjabi, Sindhi or Pathan? We are only Muslims."

5. Need of division of India:

While addressing at Aligarh he clarified the ideology of Pakistan in these words:

"What was the motive of the demand for Pakistan and a separate electorate for Muslims? What was the cause of the division of India? Its cause is neither the narrow mindedness of Hindus nor the tactics of The British but is the basic demand of Islam?"

6. National Identity of the Muslims:

In the light of the history of the subcontinent Quaid-e-Azam argued that Muslims have never been a minority. They are a perfect nation and have the right to establish an independent state in those areas where they are in majority.

7. Pakistan, A practical laboratory for Islamic system:

While addressing the students of Islamia College, Peshawar on 13 January 1948 Quaid-e-Azam said,

"We did not demand Pakistan just to own a piece of land but we infact wanted to have a Laboratory for experimenting the true teachings of Islam."

8. Protection of Muslim culture:

Addressing the army officers, in October, 1947, Mr. Jinnah said,

"Our object was to create such a state where we can live freely, our culture and civilization get flourished, and where Islamic concept of social justice can flourish exactly."

9. Criticism of the Western Economic system:

On the eve of inaugurating the State Bank of Pakistan on 1 July 1948, the Quaid said,

"The Economic system of west is creating unsolvable problems for humanity. It has failed to provide justice to the people. We are to present an economic system based on original Islamic concept equality and social justice."

10. A Staunch supporter of the Two Nation Theory:

He was a great supporter of two-nation theory and he considered the Muslims a separate nation from every aspect. He said:

"The Muslims are a nation by every right to establish their separate homeland. They can adopt any mean to promote and protect their spiritual, moral, economic, social, political and cultural interests".

11. Origin of Pakistan

In his address at Ahmedabad on 29th December 1940 Quaid-e-Azam said,

"Pakistan existed from centuries. North West remained a homeland of Muslims. Independent states of Muslims should be established in these areas so that they might live according to the teachings of Islam".

12. Separate Status of The Muslims:

In his address at Lahore on 23rd March 1940 it was clearly mentioned,

"No Act or Law would be acceptable which deny the separate status of the Muslims."

13. Demand for the Separate Homeland:

Quaid-e-Azam said in his presidential address at Lahore on 23rd March about the demand of separate homeland for the Muslims as:

"Hindus and Muslims belong to two different religions based on totally different beliefs, and present the different ideologies. They have different epics, different heroes and different history. Therefore, the union of two nations is fatal for the sub-continent, because it is not based on equality but on numerical minority and other as a majority. It would be better for the British government to partition the sub-continent by keeping in view the interests of the two nations. It will be a correct decision religiously and historically".

14. Promotion of Islamic Ideology:

On 1st October 1947, while addressing the officers of the Government of Pakistan, he said,

"Their mission is the establishment of a state where they could live like free people in their own socio-cultural set up necessary for the promotion of social justice and Islamic ideology".

15. Muslim Unity:

Quaid-e-Azam once said while clarifying the root of Muslim unity.

"What is the relation which has made Muslims a single body? What is the rock on which the structure of Muslim Nation is standing? What is the base which has secured the safety of the boat of this Muslim Nation? That relation, rock and base is the Holy Quran."

16. The Constitution of Pakistan

The Quaid-e-Azam while talking to an American journalist said about the making of constitution of Pakistan.

"Pakistani constitution is yet to be made but I can say for sure that it would be of democratic type and would consist of the basic principles of Islam. These principles can be implemented on our practical life as they were 1300 years ago."

17. Destination of Muslims

During the Congress rule from 1937 to 1939, the treatment to the Muslims convinced them of their destination. Quaid-e-Azam in clear words said:

“The Britain wants to rule India, Mr. Gandhi and the Congress want to rule India and the Muslims. We say that we will not let either the Britain or Mr. Gandhi to rule Muslims, we want to be free”

18. Strong Belief of Muslims

Quaid-e-Azam had a strong belief in achieving his goal. He said:

“We cannot be moved or diverted from our purpose and objective by threats or intimidations. We must be prepared to face all difficulties and consequences, make all the sacrifices that may be required of us to achieve the goal we have set in front of us”

19. Pakistan & United Nations

With the will of Allah, the Muslims were able to establish Pakistan. ON that occasion, on 15th August, 1947 he said:

“Muslims of India have shown to the world that they are a united nation, their cause is just and righteous which cannot be denied. Let us, on this day, humbly thank God for His bounty and pray that we might be able to prove that we are worthy of it. This day marks the end of a painful phase in our national history and it should also be the beginning of a new and a noble era”.

20. National Solidarity

Quaid-e-Azam wanted to establish such a Pakistan which is strong & united from every respect. Once he said after the creation of Pakistan.

“The people who think that they will demolish Pakistan they are foolish & not in their senses. There is no any power in the world who demolishes Pakistan. The roots of Pakistan are very deep & strong”

In the light of above mentioned facts we can easily conclude that the Quaid-e-Azam was truly aware of the basic demands of an Islamic state and he struggled for it. According to his ideas Islam was the only base of The Ideology of Pakistan.

Allama Iqbal & Ideology of Pakistan

Allama Iqbal was the person who for the first time gave the concept of a separate state for the Muslims keeping in view the Two Nation Theory. He clearly explained the Ideology of Pakistan in his sayings and poetry.

Aflame Iqbal and Ideology of Pakistan:

1. Separate Recognition of Muslims:

Allama Iqbal made it clear that the Muslims have the separate recognition from the Hindus on the base of religion and culture. In this regard he said

“India is not a country, it is a Sub-continent of human beings belonging to different languages and practicing different religions. Muslim nation has its own religious and cultural identity.”

2. Condemnation of Western Democratic Concepts:

Allama Iqbal was strongly against the western concept of Democracy. Despite flourishing all over the world, this system cannot provide solution of the problem of Islamic world. Iqbal was of the view that all social and political problems can be solved with the help of Islamic system. He said, (Western democracy is devoid of depth, it has merely an attractive out look.)

3. Concept of separate Muslim State:

Dr. Muhammad Allama Iqbal was great supporter and preacher of separate Muslim state. He gave this idea of separate state for the Muslims in 1930 while addressing the annual meeting of All India Muslim league in Allah Abad,

“I want to see the Punjab, NWFP, Sindh and Balochistan in the form of one homogenous state. Whether India gets independences under the crown of England or out of it, I think independent state of western provinces is the destiny of the people living there.”

4. Commendation of Idea of Single Nation:

In March, 1909 when Iqbal was asked to address a meeting held by Minvra Raj Amritsar but he refused to address that meeting & said.

“I remained the supporter of this idea but now I am of the view that preservation of separate nationhood is useful for Hindus and Muslims birth. To have the concept of single nation in India is no doubt poetic and beautiful but impractical regarding present circumstances.”

5. Concept of Two Nation Theory:

Allama Iqbal explaining the two nation theory as:

“Despite living together for 1000 years, Hindus and Muslims have their own individual ideologies so the only solution of political conflict in India is to have a separate independent parliament for each nation.”

6. Eradication of Racial & Regional Prejudices:

Allama Iqbal rejected the Racial & Regional Prejudices. Once he said in this regard as:

"Concept of nation and homeland is confusing the Muslims. That is why Islamic humane objects are becoming dim. It is also possible that these concepts may destroy the real concepts of Islam."

7. Explanation of Relation of Islam & politics:

Allama Iqbal was in the favour of basic concept that politics is a part of religion (Islam) and Islam provides complete guidance about it,

"Islam does not consider matter and soul separate from each other. Allah, Universe and state all are the basic elements of single unit. Man is not so alien that he should leave worldly affairs for the sake of religion."

8. Islam is complete code of life

In the annual meeting of Muslim League on December 29, 1930 at Allahabad, he said,

"Islam is not the name of some beliefs and customs but it is a complete code of life. In Europe, religion is every one's personal matter which divides the human oneness into two opposite parts i.e. body and soul. In contrast to that in Islam, God, Universe, soul, matter, state and religions are bound to each other or in other words Muslims are one nation"

9. Islam is a lively power

In his Allahabad address he said:

"Islam is a lively power which frees human mind from thoughts country and race. If we understand this thing then we can be the leaders of prominent Indian civilization."

10. Islam is the way to success

Allama Iqbal said in relation to Islam:

"The lesson which I learnt from history is that Islam always helped the Muslims. Even today, Ideology of Islam can save your being from destruction by uniting your divided powers".

11. No other ideology of life than Islam

On the publication of his poem, "Khazr-e-Rah" people started to call Allama Iqbal as communist. He rejected this balance firstly in his essay and then in a letter to All-e-Ahmed Sarwur in 1937. He said:

"To me capitalism, communism and other isms of this world have no importance. Islam is the only reality which is the reason of salvation. To have a contract with any other ism is just like to be out of Islam."

12. Opposition of Nationalism

He described the reason of opposition of nationalism in the words:

"I am opposed to nationalism, not because if it is allowed to develop in India. It is likely to bring less material gain to Muslims. I am opposed to it because I see in it the germs of atheistic materialism which I look upon as the greatest danger to modern humanity"

13. Separate Existence of Muslims

The fact is that even the enemies acknowledge that it was Iqbal who made the idea of a distinct Muslim Nationhood crystal clear in the minds of the masses. A bigoted Hindu leader Madan Mohan Malwiya once remarked.

"Before Iqbal, we had not the slightest idea that the Muslims possessed a separate existence in India. We regarded them to be a part of a common nationalism"

14. Foundation of Pakistan

Allama Iqbal not only put forward the proposal of Pakistan's creation by uniting the Muslim majority provinces of north-western India, he also explicitly pointed out the foundations on which this state was to be established and was to function. He said:

"To address this session of All India Muslim League you have selected a man who is not despaired of Islam as a living force for freeing the outlook of man from its geographical limitations, who believes that religion is a power of utmost importance in the life of individual as well as states."

15. Unity of Muslim World

Allama Iqbal was a great supporter of Muslims Unity. He gave the message to the Nation of unity, equality, fraternity & tolerance. He also declared that there is no any concept of discrimination on the base of colour, cast and creed in Islam. The message of unity of the Muslim World can be seen in his poetry as.

ایک ہوں مسلم حرم کی پاسبانی کے لیے
نیل کے ساحل سے لے کے تا بخاک کاشغر

16. Geographical Limitations of Mankind

According to Allama Iqbal, Islam is a practical way to eliminate the artificial distinctions of race and nation and to transcend beyond the geographical limitations of mankind. He wanted to established Muslim nationality on ideological lines:

Allama Iqbal categorically stated that the Hindus and the Muslims can't live together in one state, and that the Muslims would succeed in making their own separate state sooner or later. He advocated the separate nationhood of Muslims. Declaring Islam a complete code of life

Allama Iqbal in the annual Session of All India Muslim League at Allahabad in 1930, demanded a Muslim state in the North West of the sub-continent.

Factors Leading to Creation of Pakistan

Aims & Objectives of the Creation of Pakistan

After the war of Independence the Muslims were greatly pressed by the Hindus as well as the British. Social, political and economical conditions of the Muslims were totally changed. That is why they demanded for a separate state of their own. Following were the Aims & Objectives that led to the creation of Pakistan.

1. Setting up of a Free Islamic Society:

The main objective of the creation of Pakistan was to establish a free Islamic Society having its own identity and government, practicing its own social principles and religion and inviting the Muslims of the world, particularly and others generally to adopt the Islamic way of life.

2. Protection from Communal Riots:

The communal Riots on every other day made it clear that the Hindus could monopolies the politics after the departure of The British. The lives of Muslims could never be safe in the united India. The Hindu organizations had again and again asserted that Hindu Raj would be imposed on India after the independence. So to get rid of these atrocities the Muslims demanded their separate state.

3. Social & Political Development of Muslims:

After the war of Independence 1857, the social environment was totally changed. The Muslims were scared of the caste system and other discriminations. They could enjoy neither political nor social liberties; therefore, they preferred to have a separate homeland in which they could live according to the teachings of Islam.

4. Protection of Muslim Language

The Hindus did the best to replace Urdu by Hindi. But they did not succeed during British period. If South Asia had got freedom without partition, the Hindu majority could very easily declare Hindi, the official and national language. The Hindu government could wipe out all signs of Muslim culture; therefore, the Muslims had no choice except putting a demand for Pakistan.

5. Protection of Two Nation Theory:

The Muslims claimed separate nationhood for themselves and they were determined to maintain a separate entity for all times to come. The Muslims believe in separate religion, practice different traditions, and have their own history and their cultural heritage. Their claim was absolutely true. It was their right to keep their separate entity alive and to enjoy all human

rights. This was not possible in undivided India.

6. Establishment of Islamic State:

Islam is a complete code of life. The Muslims wanted to implement the system practically. This could not be attained in United India therefore, they passed a resolution and demanded an Islamic state in the North East and North West of South Asia.

7. Setting up of True Islamic Society:

Islam upholds the golden principles of freedom, justice, brotherhood and equality but living for centuries with the Hindu community, the Muslims were gradually ignoring, consciously or unconsciously, these principles. Islam gives guidance for individual as well as collective life. It has its own principles such as ban on usuary, gambling, to refrain from all unlawful means of income and expenditure. Again extravagance is regarded devilish. The rights of the neighbours are stressed which results in social security to all. God-fearing and belief in the Hereafter are the basis for the social life of the Muslims.

8. Dream of Muslims to get freedom:

Due to the ill treatment of Hindus and British the Muslims also wanted to get freedom and established their own Govt. in the sub continent because the freedom is right of every nation and the country. For this reason they demanded Pakistan.

9. Narrow Mindedness of Hindus:

The Hindu community's narrow mindedness could be gauged from the fact that they do not feel ashamed of idol worship during the 20th century even. The women are considered slaves. They do not recognize the right of second marriage for the widow. They consider themselves much superior to the people of their own race. The Hindus declare a thing polluted if it has been touched by a Muslim. There was a concept of caste systems in the Hindus itself. There was only one way of Muslim's deliverance from such a narrow-minded and prejudiced community, and that was a separate state comprising the provinces of Muslim majority, and as such they demanded a separate homeland.

10. To get rid of the British:

After the war of independence (1857), the British maltreated the Muslims. Political rights of the Muslims were snatched. Doors of new jobs were closed and also the Muslims were deprived of their jobs and were deprived of their property (estates). There was no social status for the Muslims. So they demanded separate homeland.

11. Attainment of Peaceful Atmosphere:

After the formation of Mahasabha and its entrance into politics, prejudiced movements like Shuddhi and Sangthan were born. Riots occurred here and there. They extinguished the fire of revenge by dishonouring the mosques or attacking Moharram processions. The daily increase in riots had given a warning to the Muslims. It is rightly remarked that the last 25 years were

spent in Hindu-Muslim civil war. Its cure was no other than the creation of Pakistan in the Muslim majority provinces so that the daily occurrences of riots may come to an end. The Muslims may enjoy the peaceful conditions in a separate state of their own.

12. Islamic Culture and Civilization:

Success of congress in elections of 1937 and capturing the leadership was an enough proof that the Hindus wanted to demolish Muslim civilization and culture. Every now and then new intrigues were hatched to destroy the Muslim's religious values. The breeding of cows and to worship them was the reckoned culture of Hindustan. The Hindu community was planning to prevail upon Muslims in their customs and ceremonies. The Muslim ceremonies were interfered whereas the Hindu festivals of Diwali, Lohri, Dussehra were celebrated with great pomp and show. In short, if India were not divided, this country would have become a pure Hindu State and the next generation of Muslims would have been Muslim only by name, but it would have been impossible for the Muslims to follow Islam practically.

13. Deliverance from Economic Exploitation:

The Hindus community was not contented with the political rule; it was determined to worsen the condition of the minorities economically. But especially they wanted to take revenge from the Muslims for their past defeats. Under the patronage of the English, the Hindus were made the owners of the land. They were encouraged in trade and commerce also. Only the trade of Hydes and skins remained with the Muslims.

14. Muslim Unity:

Muslims were dispersed in the 20th century especially after the failure of Khilafat movement. The Muslims wanted to become united again because unity is also the basic teaching of Islam. But the unity of the Muslim world cannot be possible without the creation of Pakistan.

PEOPLE & LAND OF PAKISTAN

Importance of Location of Pakistan.

Pakistan is the Land of Pure, is strategically placed all the crossroads of Asia. The official name of the state is Islamic Republic of Pakistan. Capital of Pakistan is Islamabad but the first capital of Pakistan was Karachi from 1947 to 1959. Then President of Pakistan Ayub Khan shifted the capital from Karachi to Islamabad in 1959.

LOCATION OF PAKISTAN

Pakistan is located between 23½ degree North to 37 degree North and 61 degree East to 77 degree East as far as the latitudinal and longitudinal extents are concerned.

Geo-Strategic Position:

Pakistan is surrounded by various countries:

East.....India
West & North WestAfghanistan
South West IranIran
North.....China
South.....Arabian Sea

AREA OF PAKISTAN

Pakistan came into being on August 14, 1947. Its official name is Islamic Republic of Pakistan. It has an area of 7,96,096 square kilometers. Area of Pakistan is four times as larger as UK and one fourth of the size of India. 58% area of Pakistan consists of Mountains and plateaus, while 42% area of Pakistan consists of plains and deserts.

POPULATION

According to censuses of 1998 total population of Pakistan was 14 Crore 23 Lacs & Eighty Thousand and the current population is more than 15 Crore. 98% of the total population is Muslim while 2% Christians, Hindus, Parsis and Ahmadis also live in this country and density of population in Pakistan is 164 persons per sq. km.

STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE OF LOCATION OF PAKISTAN

1. Pakistan and China:

China is situated in the north of Pakistan. Length of common border between Pakistan and China is 600km. Silk route connects these two countries. These countries have warm relations, and their friendship is stronger than Himalayas. China has helped Pakistan in the development of many projects including the defence projects.

2. Pakistan and India:

In east of Pakistan is India, which is demographically second to China in the world. Length of common border between Pakistan and India is about 1600km, cease fire line between Pakistan and India of Kashmir is not including in it. India has emerged as an agricultural, industrial and military power in the region. Since independence, India and Pakistan have never felt themselves at ease with each other. Moreover, four wars have been fought between these two countries until now. As a result, no progress could be made in the region. Both countries have been spending the major part of their budget on their defence. These countries have gone too far away in the race of nuclear weapons and missile technology. The dispute of Kashmir between these two countries is still pending in the UNO. Now once again they are trying to resolve it peacefully. The earlier the peaceful solution is found the better it is for them.

3. Pakistan and Iran:

Iran is in the West of Pakistan. The common border between Pakistan and Iran is 900 KM long. Pakistan and Iran have very close brotherly relations. The two countries united together by the bonds of Islam for fourteen centuries and they have always been cooperating with each other in the fields of diplomacy, economy, culture and education.

4. Importance for Afghanistan and Central Asian States:

Afghanistan lies in West of Pakistan common border between Pakistan and Afghanistan is called Durand line which is 2552Km long which was marked in 1893. Afghanistan and Central Asian countries are too far away from coastal areas and they are land locked countries. These countries have to go through the land of Pakistan to reach the sea. They are famous for their oil and gas fields. They are included among the agriculturally high productive countries. Thus they are important in regard to our future needs.

5. Importance of Coastal Area of Pakistan:

The industrial progress of most of the Western countries depends on the oil of the Gulf countries. Geographically, Pakistan is located in the South Asia. Persian Gulf is located in the south-west of Pakistan. Persian Gulf has a geographic importance and countries like Iran, Kuwait, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Bahrain, Oman, United Arab Emirates etc are located along it. These Muslim countries possess the wealth of oil, which has enhanced their importance. Pakistan has cordial relations with these countries.

6. Religious Cultural and Trade Importance of Pakistan:

In the north west of Pakistan, there is a narrow strip of the Wakhan Valley (9 – 14 km wide) that separates Pakistan from Central Asian Islamic countries. These Central Asian countries are land locked but rich in natural resource. Pakistan has religious, cultural and economic relations with these countries.

7. Trade Rout between East and West:

On the southern side of Pakistan lies the Arabian Sea, which is the part of the Indian Ocean. Pakistan links the east with the west. Most of the trade between east and west is through Indian Ocean. So Pakistan lies on an important trade route of the world. Pakistan through Arabian Sea is linked with the Muslim countries of Persian Gulf. All of them are rich in oil. The Persian Gulf has always been the center of the big power's politics. Karachi, Bin-Qasim and Gawader are important sea ports of Pakistan.

8. Relations with Islamic Countries:

Pakistan has good relations through Indian Ocean with the Islamic countries. In this respect South-East Asian Muslim countries (Indonesia, Malaysia, Buruni-Daruslam) and South Asian Muslim countries (Bangladesh and Maldives) are important. So Pakistan has an important strategic position in the Islamic world.

9. Importance of Pakistan from Defence Point of View:

Pakistan is situated in the region of great political, economic and military importance. Among its neighbouring countries, People's Republic of China and Russia are recognized as super powers of the world's politics. India is another atomic power, which is also a neighbouring country of Pakistan.

10. Center of the Muslim World:

Pakistan is situated in the center of the Muslim World. To the west of Pakistan starting from Afghanistan and Iran, stretches a long chain of Muslim countries.

11. Position in the Third World:

Pakistan is a great supporter of the unit of the third world countries. The organization of non-aligned countries provides great importance for its useful role in the third world.

12. Economic Cooperation Organization (E.C.O)

In 1964 Regional Cooperation Development was signed among Pakistan, Iran and Turkey. While in 1984 it was renamed as E.C.O. Later on its number of members was also increased from 3 to 10. Now Pakistan, Iran, Turkey, Tajikistan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Azerbaijan, Kazakhstan and Kyrgyzstan are member of this organization. The main object of the ECO is to promote trade among Pakistan, Iran and Turkey and other member countries.

13. Fortress of Islam:

Pakistan is an ideological country which was obtained on the basis of Islamic ideology, where roots of Islam are very strong. Many Islamic countries follow Pakistan. Many Islamic leader call Pakistan the "Fortress of Islam".

14. Pakistan is an atomic power:

Pakistan became an atomic power in 1998 when Pakistan made atomic blasts at Chaghi. Pakistan is also the first Islamic Power in the region where the Pakistan is situated with India, China and Russia also other atomic powers.

Importance of Natural Resources for the National Development of the Country

Those resources which Allah has created for every type of life are called natural resources. These natural resources are Waters, Forests, Minerals, Soil and Mountains etc.

Important Natural Resources:

Important Natural Resources are as under:

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| i. Soil | ii. Mountains | iii. Forests |
| iv. Minerals | v. Water (Rivers & Oceans) | |

(i) Soil:

Fertile Plains and deserts are also important part of natural resources. How many fertile plain a country has, the agricultural department will be more developed. We cultivate different kind of crops to fulfill the food requirements of the human beings. Allah has gifted many fertile plains to Pakistan.

(ii) Mountains:

Mountains are the gift of the nature. They protect Pakistan from the cool winds from the South Asian states and the Indian Oceans. These mountains provide water to our rivers. These mountains are rich in minerals especially the Western Mountain Ranges.

(iii) Forests:

Forests are the important part of the natural resources. These are very helpful to moderate the climate as well as their wood is also used for energy purposes, furniture making and other purposes. Forests are also the gift of the nature. Forests are also very essential for the survival of the human and wild life too.

(iv) Minerals:

Minerals are also the important part of the natural resources. Minerals affect the economy of the country directly. How much the mineral, a county has, it means its economy will also be stronger. Human beings allocate the minerals and use them for the welfare of the human beings.

(v) Waters:

The underground water, rivers and oceans are natural resources because water is created by the nature (God) for the Human beings as well as the other living things. We use water for drinking purposes and store the water of the rivers and use it for different purposes like irrigation, for hydroelectricity etc. This water is also essential for water creatures. Pakistan is a lucky country because there is several rivers which Allah as gifted us.

IMPORTANCE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

Pakistan is a vast country and Allah has gifted all kinds of resources. The progress of a country or a nation totally depends upon the utilization of the available resources.

(1) Source of National Development:

Natural Resources are very important because they are the source of National Development and prosperity if a country has much resources, its economy will be stronger and due to strong government paid a lot attention to increase the literacy rate and improve the health, recreational, communication and transportation system.

(2) Positive effect of National Income:

Due to the Natural resources, National Income also increases. It means that National Income depends on the natural resources directly. If a country has fewer resources its national economy will not be much stronger.

(3) Reward from God:

Natural resources are the reward from God because we only allocate the Natural resources and use them for the welfare of the human life but can't be created.

(4) Increase in Individual Income:

Due to the natural (Revise this caption) resources, individual income of the people also increases because, more services or job opportunities are present in the country. Salary packages are also better so we can say due to the increase in natural resources individual income of the people also increases.

(5) Completion of Necessities of life:

Due to Natural resources necessities of life are also fulfilled. We utilize these resources for the welfare of the human life. Mineral oil, Gas, Copper, Gold etc are used to fulfill the necessities of life. Fertile plains and water are used for irrigation purposes and we obtained different kinds of crops to fulfill our food necessities.

(6) Balance of Payment:

Due to the increase in National Income through natural resources, the balance of payment also occurred, because natural resources increase the foreign exchange in the country.

CONCLUSION:

The population of Pakistan is increasing rapidly. It is very important that the people should work hard sincerely for its development. In recent years, some of the nations, with their hard work have got the status of developed countries. So we should have to exploit the natural and human resources to the maximum to develop our country.

IMPORTANCE OF FORESTS

Forests are very important natural resource. Forests play a dominant role in the development of a country. Let us see how much forests are important in the economy of any country.

(1) A Source of Water:

The climate of Pakistan is generally arid and semi-arid. Water is available for the irrigation of agriculture. The northern mountainous areas of Pakistan receive more rain and snow. These areas are the main source of water for rivers. The forests on the slopes of hills stop soil erosion. They also slow the speed of the flow and irrigate the plains regularly.

(2) A Source of Energy:

In Pakistan energy resources are limited. The forest wood is used as fuel and meets the deficiency of coal.

(3) A Source of Wood & Timber:

Forests provide timber, fire wood, gum and other useful articles which are very important for the trade of a country.

(4) A Source of Pleasant Climate:

Forests make the climate of an area very pleasant. They lessen the intensity of heat.

(5) A Source of Rain Fall:

Forests cause, to a great extent, rainfall in a region. The presence of forests measures the amount of water vapours that cause rainfall.

(6) Protection from soil erosion:

The roots of the trees keep the soil intact. It stops the soil erosion and the layer of fertile soil does not wash away and soil fertility remains unaffected.

(7) Advantages of Forests:

Due to lack of forests the rivers carry huge amount of sand and silt that fill our dams and artificial lakes and destroy hydroelectric power projects.

(8) Protection from Water Logging and salinity:

Forests are very useful in water logged and salinity affected areas. Trees absorb water from the soil and lower water level of underground reserves.

(9) Attainment of Herbs:

Forests, herbs are used for the preparation of medicines.

(10) Promotion to Tourism:

Forests promote tourism. There are many places in the northern and northwestern mountainous area of Pakistan, which are covered with forests and known for recreations.

(11) Importance for wild life:

Forests are very important for wild life (animals and birds).

(12) Source of Employment:

Forests provide employment to a large number of populations in Pakistan.

(13) Sour of Fruits and fodder:

Forests provide different kinds of fruits and fodder to animals.

(14) Importance in National Economy:

Forests have an important role in the economy of Pakistan. About 5 million people have been directly or indirectly engaged in this sector.

Important minerals of Pakistan.

In Pakistan there is wide scale availability of mineral resources, but these resources remained unexploited for years. It is due to lack of technical skill, finance and technology.

Types of Minerals:

There are three types of Minerals:

- **Metallic Minerals**

The minerals in which electricity can pass through easily are called metallic minerals. These are good conductor of heat & electricity. For example iron ore, chromate, copper, gold, silver etc.

- **Non-Metallic Minerals**

The minerals in which electricity cannot pass through easily are called non-metallic minerals. These are not good conductor of heat & electricity. For example mineral salt, gypsum, marble, china clay, fire clay, limestone etc.

- **Power Resource Minerals**

Power resource minerals are those minerals which are used to generate electricity or power. These minerals include coal, mineral oil and natural gas.

IMPORTANT MINERALS OF PAKISTAN

Important minerals of Pakistan as under:-

(1) COAL:

The annual coal production of Pakistan is 3.2 million tones.

Uses of Coal:

The coal produced in Pakistan is used in brick kilns, for producing thermal electricity house hold purposes.

Areas of Coal:

- The biggest coal reserve was discovered at Lakhra (Sindh). The following areas are important for coal production in Pakistan. In Salt range, the main coal mines are at Dandot, Padh and Makarwal. The NWFP has only Hungo coal mine.
- In North-east of Balochistan Khost, Sharing, Harmai are important coal mines. Others are Sor range and Daigari, Shirin-ab areas and Mach Bolan coal mines.
- The Sindh coal mines are at Thar, Jhimpir, Sarang and Lakhra.

(2) MINERAL OIL:

Mineral oil is an important source of energy in Pakistan.

Areas of Mineral Oil:

The main oil producing areas are mostly located in the Patwar Plateau. The Khaur, Dhulian, Jayamair, Balkassar, Karsal, Tut, Sarang and Mial, Dakhni, Adhi, Qazian (District Attock and Rawalpindi), Dodkhak (Dera Ghazi Khan) Khaskhali, Aghari (Badin) and Tando Allah Yar (Hydrabad). These oil fields play an important role in meeting the oil needs of the country.

Refineries:

Four oil refineries are working in Pakistan, the Attock Refinery, Pakistan Refinery, National Refinery and Pakistan-Arab Refinery.

(3) NATURAL GAS:

Natural gas is the cheapest good means of getting the energy. The natural gas was discovered in 1952 at Sui (district Sibbi in Balochistan). This gas field is considered the biggest reserve not only of Pakistan but of the world.

Uses:

This gas is being used for domestic use, power generation and industrial purposes.

Areas:

In Pakistan, a number of gas-fields are also located in Patwar Plateau and Salt range. Production has been started in Dodkhak, Pirkoh, Dhulian and Mial (Punjab), Uch, Zin (Balochistan) Khairpur, Mazarani, Marri, Kandhot and Sarang (Sindh).

(4) IRON ORE:

In Pakistan, the production of iron ore was started in 1957. Total reserves of iron ore in Pakistan is 500 million tons.

Areas:

The iron ore deposits were discovered in many areas of the country. Among them Kalabagh (District Mianwali) has the biggest deposits of iron ore, but the quality is not good. The Dammel-Nissar (Chitral) deposits have good iron ore content. Other important iron ore producing areas are Langrial (District Haripur), Chilghazi (District Chagai), Mazari Jang, Marri Bela etc.

(5) COPPER:

Pakistan has rich deposits of copper.

Uses:

Copper is used in the production of electric goods especially wire networks.

Areas:

The deposits of copper have been discovered in Balochistan and NWFP. In Balochistan copper reserves are in District Ghagai, Sandak and other areas.

(6) CHROMITE:

Pakistan has rich deposits of Chromite.

Uses:

Chromium obtained from chromite is used in making high speed machines, stainless steel, aeroplanes and tools of photography.

Areas:

Chromite was discovered in Muslim Bagh District Zhobe, Chagai, Khraran (Balochistan), Mala-Kand and Mehmend agencies of NWFP.

(7) ROCK SALT:

Pakistan has a vast reserve of food salt (rock salt) in the Salt range. The annual production is 1275 thousand tones. The total estimated reserves are 4 million tones.

Areas:

- Khewra (District Jhelum) has thick deposits of rock salt.
- Other important areas of production are Warchha (District Khushab).
- Kalabagh (District Mianwali)
- Bahadar Khail and Khark.
- Salt is also available in Maripur (Karachi) and near the Lasbela and Makran coast.
- The salt is also obtained from lakes.

Uses:

It is used for food and in chemical industries.

(8) LIME STONE:

Limestone is a useful raw material of cement industry. The annual production of limestone is 9.9 thousand tones.

Areas:

Limestone is found mostly in the northern and western mountain areas of Pakistan. The thick deposits are located in Daudkhel, Wah, Rohri, Hyderabad and Karachi.

(9) GYPSUM:

The annual production of Gypsum is 358.5 thousand tones.

Areas:

Gypsum is mostly available in the Salt range and western mountainous areas of Pakistan. The important mines are in Khewra, Dandot, Daudkhail, Rohri and Kohat.

Uses:

Gypsum is used in cement industry, Plaster of Paris, Sulphuric Acid and Ammonium Sulphate.

(10) MARBLE:

Marble is available in different colors and varieties in Pakistan. The annual marble production is 586.6 thousand tones.

Areas:

Marble found in Pakistan in Mulla Ghorri (Khyber Agency), Mardan, Swat, Noshara, Hazara, Ghagai (Balochistan and Gilgit). Black and white marble is available in large quantity in Kala-Chitta hills (District Attock). Other important areas of marble are District Muzaffargarh and Mirpur of Azad Kashmir.

(11) CHINA CLAY:

China clay is available in Mangora (District Swat) and Nagar Parkar (Sindh).

Uses:

China clay is used in chemical industries, ceramics, pots of china clay and decorations tiles.

(12) FIRE CLAY:

Fire clay deposits are available in Salt range and Kala-Chitta hills. Fire clay is used for making bricks for use in steel melting furnaces.

Uses:

Fire clay is used for making bricks which are used in fire kilns.

(13) SULPHUR:

Sulphur is found in Province of Balochistan from District Chaghi (Koh-e-Sultan) and District Khichi.

Importance of agriculture in Pakistan

Agriculture plays an important role in the economy of Pakistan. Agriculture contributes 23 percent to GNP of the country. Over the last one decade, agriculture grew at an annual average rate of 4.5 percent. Pakistan is among those few developing countries, where the growth rate in agricultural production is high.

CROPPING SEASONS OF PAKISTAN

Pakistan is an agricultural country. It has four seasons that are suitable for agriculture. There are two cropping seasons in Pakistan. 50 percent of the total cultivated area lies in Punjab while one third of the total cultivated area in Sindh:

(i) Rabi Season:

Rabi season starts from the month of October and ends in the month of March. This season is also known as winter season. Wheat, Barley, Oil seeds and Tobacco etc. are the Rabi Crops.

(ii) Kharif Season:

Kharif season starts from the month of April and ends in the month of September. This season is also known as summer season. Rice, Maize, Cotton, Sugarcane, Jawar, Bajra are Kharif Crops.

FOOD CROPS & CASH CROPS:

In Pakistan, both food and cash crops are very important.

Food Crops:

Food crops are those crops which are cultivated to fulfill the food necessities of the people. Food crops like wheat, rice, maize, bajra, jawar etc. are important for the food requirements of the increasing population in the country.

Cash Crops:

Cash crops are those crops which are not used as food items and we export to other countries to earn the foreign exchange. These are cotton, rice, tobacco etc.

VEGETABLES & FRUIT:

Pakistan is also an important producer of different types of cereals and fruits. Pakistan is famous in producing good quality of fruit. All the provinces of Pakistan are important for fruit production. Important fruits are mango, orange, grapes, apple, date, apricot, peaches etc. NWFP also produces dry fruit. Pakistan exports a large quantity of fruits to other countries.

IMPORTANCE OF AGRICULTURE

To meet the requirements of the growing population of Pakistan a lot of attention has been paid to develop the agriculture sector. The production of food grain has increased to save the foreign exchange for its imports. Cultivated areas have increased. About 25% of the total area is under cultivation in Pakistan. Agriculture is the most important sector of the economy of Pakistan. The detail of the utility and development of this sector is given below:

1. Availability of Food Grain

Pakistan is an agriculture country. The important crops are wheat, rice, maize, barley and oats etc. They fulfill the needs of growing population of the country. Pakistan is self-sufficient in the production of food grain.

2. Availability of Cash Crops

The cash crops are cotton, sugarcane, rice and tobacco etc. They are valuable for our country. Major portion of foreign exchange is earned from their export. They are also an important source of industrial raw material. The industry of textile, sugar and cigarette depends upon these crops.

3. Availability of Fruits

Our country is famous for fruits. Major portion of fruit is produced in the provinces of Punjab, Serhad and Balochistan. Mango, orange grapes, apple, plum and peaches etc. are the important fruits. Dry fruits are mostly produced in Serhad. Pakistan earns a lot of foreign exchange from the export of fruits.

4. Source of Employment

Agriculture is both a profession and an obligation. About 55% of population is attached with agriculture directly or indirectly. 37% of the national production is provided by agriculture.

5. Source of Increase in National Income

In agriculture sector the government provides loans to farmers on easy terms so that the maximum number of people may get employment, and the migration from villages to cities may remain low. It increases, the national income, and the country becomes prosperous.

6. Source of Economic Development

The industrial and commercial development of Pakistan depends upon agriculture. In these days agriculture is being mechanized according to the modern needs.

7. Promotion of international Trade

Agriculture Promotes International Trade which earn foreign exchange for the country.

8. Availability of Live Stock and Dairy Products

Live stock or dairy farming is included in agriculture. We obtain meat, Milk, Ghee, Cheese, Butter and other Dairy Products from live stock.

9. Promotion of Agricultural industries

Agriculture also promotes industries related to agriculture, like Sugar Mills, Rice factories, leather industries, Dairy Product Producing industries, which erects industrial revolution in the country.

10. Availability of Raw Material

We also obtain raw material for industries from agriculture. Cotton is a raw material for Textile industry, Leather is a raw Material for Leather industries, Rice and Wheat is also raw Material for Rice factories and flour Mills .

11. Control on Economic Crises

If we increase the production of agricultural crops, we increase the National income. In this way we can control the economic crises.

12. Better Living standards

If we increase the production agricultural crops, so income of farmers also increases, that why living standard of the farmers and the people attached with agriculture will also become better.

PROBLEMS OF AGRICULTURE SECTOR IN PAKISTAN

There are a lot of problems which are facing by our agricultural sector. Some of them are as under:-

i. Water logging & Salinity

Pakistan has an extensive and comprehensive canal system. The canal system of Pakistan and rivers are the source of water logging and salinity. Due to an estimation one lac acre area is facing this problem every year.

ii. Lack of Mechanism

In Pakistan in this modern age the farmers of Pakistan are using old and outdated methods of the cultivation. Due to the poor economy and illiteracy, the farmers are unable to use latest agricultural machines in the agriculture sector.

iii. Floods & Strong winds

Heavy rains, strong winds and floods damage the crops on a very large area every year. Due to this reason a lot of crops destroy every year.

iv. Soil Erosion

Due to heavy rainfalls and floods the transportation of the soil is started. Due to this reason a lot of cultivated area is unable to cultivate for the different type of crops.

v. Limited Cultivable Land

Pakistan is an agriculture country but only 25% area is under cultivation. Due to increase in population this area is reducing day by day.

vi. Less use of Fertilizers, Better Seed, Pesticides & Insecticides

In Pakistan mostly the farmers have small piece of land for agriculture. Their economy is very limited. They are unable to use fertilizer better seeds, pesticides & insecticides to overcome the diseases of the crops and increase the every yield per hector.

vii. Lack of Agriculture Research

In Pakistan agricultural department is established for agricultural research on different crops for the discovery of high yielding variety of different crops. Unfortunately the trend of agriculture is very limited.

viii. Illiteracy

Education of the farmer plays a vital role in the agricultural process but in Pakistan mostly the people which are attached to the agriculture sector are not educated properly so they can not plan and try to increase the average yield per hector.

ix. Non-Availability of Agricultural Loans

Due to the poor economy of the country the availability of agricultural loans is very limited. Due to this reason farmers cannot purchase latest machines & tools which are used in agriculture and they cannot increase the production of their crops by using pesticides and fertilizer.

x. Feudalism

Another problem of the agriculture department in the Pakistan is feudalism. Only the few families in Pakistan have owned large cultivated area.

SUGGESTIONS OR GOVERNMENT STEPS FOR THE IMPROVEMENT AGRICULTURAL SECTOR IN PAKISTAN

(1) Use of Fertilizers:

The use of fertilizer also contributes to the growth of per acre yield, and overall increases the agricultural production.

(2) Control over Diseases of Crops:

The climate of Pakistan is helpful for the growth of pests and insects that attack the crops and reduce the yield. The government has to import the insecticides and pesticides to save the crops from them and to increase the production.

(3) Use of Improved Seed:

Seeds play an important role in boosting agricultural production. Some improved seeds are imported from other countries. So the improved seeds increase the per acre yield of the crops.

(4) Mechanization:

Mechanization has played an important role in increasing agricultural production. This reduces pre and post harvest losses and helps in achieving self-sufficiency in agricultural production.

(5) Agriculture Reforms:

Agriculture reforms have also played an important role in increasing agricultural production in Pakistan. The agriculture reforms of 1959, 1972 and 1977 are important in this sector. The scattered lands of the farmer were consolidated to enable them to manage them well. This increased the per capita agricultural income of the farmers and facilitated the farm holdings. It improves the relationship both between the landowner and the tenant.

(6) Control over Water-logging and Salinity:

The canal irrigation has created the twin problems of water logging and salinity. The government has taken the steps to tackle them in the province of Punjab and Sindh. It increased the area of cultivated land. Tube wells and drains played the key role in reclamation. About 60 reclamation schemes have been completed. The 18 million acres of land have been reclaimed. It increased not only the cultivable land but increased the agricultural production. But the reclamation schemes still have a long way to go.

(7) Improvement of Roads:

Means of transportation especially roads have an important role in carrying the production from field to the market, the raw material to the industries and their products to the markets. The government of Pakistan has done a lot to improve the network of roads especially in linking the far flung areas of the country.

(8) The Education of Farmer:

The education of a farmer is essential. The education in all respects is the key to success in life. Most of the farmers are uneducated and face lot of problems due to their ignorance. The government has taken practical steps to improve the educational standard of the rural areas and taught them the improved methods of cultivation to increase the production in agriculture.

(9) Planning:

The pressure of population on agriculture is great. The population is increasing day by day but resources especially food production is not going up according to the demand. We have to decrease the growth rate of population, and increase the production. The government should encourage the cottage and small scale industries in the rural areas so that the farmers may remain engaged in their spare time.

Canal System of Pakistan

In Pakistan mostly canals are used to fetch the river water to the agricultural fields. Pakistan has a very extensive developed canal network in the world. It is about 150 years old. This canal system consists of small and large dams, barrages and link canals. About 43 small and large canals are used for irrigation. Pakistan depends upon the water of rivers Indus, Jhelum and Chenab. These rivers have maximum quantity of water during summer but minimum in winter season, about 84 percent of the total water flows in these rivers.

TYPES OF CANALS

Different types of canals are present in Pakistan depending upon the supply of water from rivers.

1. Perennial (Permanent) Canals

Those canals in which water flows throughout the year are called Perennial or Permanent Canal. These canals supply the water to the areas where the underground water is salty like District of Jhang, Toba Tek Singh and Faisalabad etc.

2. Non-Perennial (Non-Permanent) Canals

Those canals in which water cannot flows throughout the year are called Non-Perennial or Non-Permanent Canals. In these canals the water flows for almost six months. These canals supply the water to the mostly Districts of Punjab and Sindh.

3. Flood Canal

Those canals in which, the water flows only in the rainy season.

4. Link Canal

Link canal are those canals which use to connect the water of rivers. These canals are dug in Pakistan according to the Indus Water Treaty in 1960. These canals putted the water of three main rivers of Pakistan (Indus Jhelum & Chenab) into the two rivers (Ravi & Sutluj).

IMPORTANT CANALS OF PAKISTAN

(1) The Canals of River Ravi:

Important canals of River Ravi are:

- i) Baloki-Sulmanki link Canals 1
- ii) Baloki-Sulmanki link Canals 2
- iii) Upper Bari Doab Canal
- iv) Lower Bari Doab Canal

The Upper Bari Doab is an old canal which was constructed in 1861, these canals provides the water to Lahore, Dipalpur, Qasoor, Shaiwal, Pakpattan Vihari and Khaniwal.

(2) The Canals of River Chenab:

Important canals of River Chenab are:

- i) The Upper Chenab Canal
- ii) Lower Chenab Canal
- iii) Ringpur Canal

These canals irrigate the area of Rachna doab. The Haveli system of canals if also located in this doab that comes from Trimmu Head Works, these canals irrigates the area of Sialkot, Narowal, Gujranwala, Shaikhupura, Faisalabad Muzafargargh, Jhang, Toba Tek Singh and Multan.

(3) The Canals of River Jhelum:

Important canals of River Jhelum are:

- i) The Upper Jhelum Canal
- ii) Lower Jhelum canal

These canals are important canals of Chaj Doab. The Upper Jhelum, Upper Chenab and Lower Bari Doab are a part of the Triple Canal Project. Rasool Qadarabad, Qadarabad Baloki and Baloki Sulemanki link canals link the western rivers with eastern rivers. These canals irrigate the areas of Mandi Bahawaladin, Jhelum, Gujrat, Sargodha and Khoshab.

(4) The Canals of River Sutlaj:

In this area Sutlej Valley Project has been started. Four headworks have been built, three on river Sutlaj at Ferozpur, Sulemanki and Islam. Whereas fourth on the Punjnad. These canals irrigate the areas of Nili Bar and Bahawalpur. Important canals of River Sutlaj are as under:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| i) Canal Depalpur | ii) Canal East Sadiqia |
| iii) Canal Bahawal | iv) Canal Melsi |
| v) Canal Pakpattan | vi) Canal Abbasi |
| vii) Canal Qaimpur | viii) Canal Punjnad |
| ix) Canal Forawdeh | |

(5) The Canals of River Indus:

Important Barrages and canals of River Indus are as under:

i. Jinnah Barrage:

Jinnah Barrage was constructed in 1947 near Kalabagh. The canals from this barrage irrigate the desert areas of Thal.

ii. Chashma Barrage:

A barrage has been constructed at Chashma, from where a link canal irrigated the districts of D.G. Khan and D.I. Khan.

iii. Taunsa Barrage:

The Taunsa Barrage was constructed in 1958. It irrigates the area of D.G.Khan, Rajanpur & Muzafargarh.

iv. Guddu Barrage:

The Guddu Barrage was constructed in 1962, which is 150 miles north of Sukkar. Three canals from this barrage, irrigate cultivated areas of this region that increases the agricultural production.

vi. Sukkar Barrage:

Sukkar Barrage was constructed in 1932 at river Indus. It is largest Barrage of Pakistan. Seven Canals are dug from this Barrage which irrigates the areas Sindh.

vii. Kottri Barrage:

Another Barrage of Pakistan is Kottry Barrage. Four canals are dug from Kottri Barrage. It irrigates the area of Hyderabad, Sanghar, Nawab Shah, Badin, Mir Pur Khas & Thatta.

(6) Canals of River Sawat:

The canals from Swat river irrigates the Peshawar, Mardan and Charsada area. The upper Swat canal starts from Malakand and lower Swat canal starts at Abazai.

(7) Warsak Project OR Canal of River Kabul:

In 1961 a project was started in the north 20km west of Peshwar at Warsak. It is important for the local requirements of vale of Peshawar. Two Canals are dug from here. This project also produces electricity.

(8) Canal of River Kurrum:

The Kurrum-Garhi project on Kurrum river was started near Bannu. The canals from this project irrigate the adjoining areas of Bannu. It also produces electricity.

(9) Canal of River Bollan:

At Narri one Cannal is dug from River Bollan in Balochistan, which irrigates the area of Quetta.

(10) Canal of River Gomal:

A canal is dug from River Gomal and River Zhob at Kjhore Kuch near D.I.Khan. It irrigates the area of D.I.Khan.

(11) Canals of Tanda Dam:

In NWFP at Tanda Banda a canal is dug to irrigate the area of district Kohat.

(12) Canals of River Hub:

In Balochistan a canal is dug from River Hub 35Km away from Karachi. It provides the water to the industrial area of Karachi and Hub.

(13) Rawal Dam:

Rawal Dam is constructed near Rawalpindi on River Korang. It provides water to Rawalpindi and Islamabad Districts.

(14) Construction of Link Canals:

Seven link canals have been constructed, which are as follow:

- (i) Rasul – Qadirabad Link Canal

- (ii) Qadirabd – Balloki Link Canal
- (iii) Balloke – Sulaimanki Link Canal
- (iv) Chashma – Jhelum Link Canal
- (v) Trimmu – Sidhnai Link Canal
- (vi) Sidhnai Mailsi – Bahawal Link Canal
- (vii) Taunsa – Panjnad Link Canal

The total length of these link canals is 590 km. These canals shift the water of three western rivers (Indus, Jhelum and Chenab) to eastern rivers (Ravi and Sutlaj), to meet the shortage of water.

(15) Extension and Construction of Barrages:

The extension of the barrages has been made and new projects are started in which Ghazi Bharotha project has been completed and Kalabagh dam is planned. Present government has started a number of new projects to increase reservoir which include Gommal zam Dam, Greater Thal Canal, Rainy Canal, Merani Dam, Subakzi Dam, Satpara Dam and extension of Mangla Dam.

The Government of Pakistan has taken steps for the development of agriculture, especially to increase the production. In this regard, the ground water and surface water are being used for agriculture. So, it has increased not only food crops but also cash crops which are necessary to earn foreign exchange.

Industry in Pakistan

The industry of country is essential for the economic development. In this modern age Pakistan can't totally depend on agriculture. Agriculture provides food grain and raw material. Industry provides more jobs in a small area. It fulfills our needs by producing various industrial goods and industrial raw material, and supply new products for marketing.

DEFINITION OF INDUSTRY

Industry is such a place where the entrepreneur (Capitalist) and labour through the machines and tools convert the shape of capital, raw material and natural resources in a way that their utility may increase to fulfill the needs of the people to a large extent; and may fetch maximum price in the market and maximum profit for the entrepreneur.

Types of Industries

There are four types of Industries of Pakistan which are as under:-

1. Handicrafts or cottage industry

It means that industry or productive work which is done at the home of the workers. Manual workers purchase the raw material by themselves, use their own tools and utilize the efforts of their family to produce things which are a part of our culture and tradition. They sell their products in the market to fulfill the needs of their family. Tools are very common and simple whereas the work is very technical. It is usually done at home. The cost is low and it helps the poor to enhance their income.

Industries included in Handicrafts industry

In handicraft industry woodwork, ironwork, hand made carpets and rugs, goods made of leaves and cane for daily use, stone work, clay pots, embroidery and toys etc. are included.

2. Small-scale Industry

Small-scale industry has always been praised in different ways in various countries. In Pakistan this industry is that one which after employing 2 to 9 workers, produces different goods for the market on small scale. Every industry is included, whether it produces goods at home, or by setting up few machines on a rented place and employing few workers to produce various goods.

Industries included in Small Scale Industries:

Majority of the workers are attached with small scale industry. In our small industry poultry farms, dairy farms, honey making industry, carpet industry, pottery, sports, goods, fans and electric motors and iron goods of daily use are included.

3. Heavy Industry

Usually heavy industry is that industry which not only produces goods on large scale but also produces machines and raw material for other industries, for example Pakistan Steel Mill and Shipyard in Karachi. In Pakistan the large scale industries are those which produce major parts of industrial products for the consumers.

Industries included in Heavy Industry:

The percentage of industrial progress is 13.1% in 2003-04. In large scale industry 11 types of industries have progressed rapidly including

- (1) The petroleum and petroleum products industry,
- (2) Automobile industry,
- (3) Cement and chemical fertilizers producing industry,
- (4) Vehicle manufacturing Industries,
- (5) Electrical Appliances Manufacturing Industries,
- (6) Sugar industry,
- (7) Food products, i.e., ghee, cooking oil, etc, tobacco and cigarette,
- (8) Textile and textile related industries,
- (9) Leather and leather goods industry,
- (10) Paper and paper products industry, Cosmetics and chemical materials,
- (11) Rubber and plastic goods industry,
- (12) Tires and tubes

4. Defence Industry

Ordinance and allied products producing industry is called defence industry. Texila Engineering Works manufacture missiles whereas Khota Laboratories promote our nuclear program. Some other industries have been set up by Fauji Foundation in which retired army personnel work to produces uniforms of army and various other goods.

Factors of Industrial Development

The factors of industrial development are as follow:

1. Survey of the local and foreign markets for the sale of local products.
2. Adequate exploitation of labour and capital e.g. there are more workers and less capital in Pakistan.
3. The capacity of industrial units.
4. The analysis of the factors effects the industrial development in the country e.g. the study of the employment opportunities.
5. Availability of type of labour, skilled or unskilled in respective fields.
6. Analysis of the productivity of national income.
7. Quantum of the balance of payments in international trade.
8. Nature of exports of the country.

Hurdles in the way of industrial development in Pakistan

Pakistan is basically an agricultural country. It is mostly depending upon agriculture crops. Govt. is not taking much interest in the development of Industries in Pakistan.

1. Foreign Loans

Te major portion of national income is consumed for making the payments of foreign loans.

2. Deficit in Budget

Pakistan is basically a developing country. It faces deficit in Budget of payments in Pakistan.

3. Deficit in balance of payments.

There is a negative balance of payments in Pakistan, due to increase in imports and less export.

4. Shortage of capital.

Pakistan has low economy and huge population govt. can not issue loans on easy conditions to the people.

5. Preface of agricultures

Pakistan has less dependence on the industrial development and more on agriculture.

6. Rapid growth of population

Rate of increase of population is very high in Pakistan. But resources of Pakistan are limited.

7. Huge Military Expense

Pakistan has to consume a lot of money on defense and maintenance of active army on borders that requires huge military expenditure.

8. Political instability

Although Pakistan is a democratic country but from the last 60 year mostly under control of dictatorship that is way there is political instability in Pakistan. Due to the change of Governments with in short period of time there industrial policies also change that is a great problem for industry.

9. Lack of Technology

There is a lack of latest Technology in Pakistan. By using Technology in industries we can increase the production of the goods and produce standard good that is way Pakistan is facing a lot of problems in indusial sector.

10. Mis-Management and corruption

Another hurdle in the way of industrial progress in Pakistan is Miss Management and corruption.

11. Black marketing and Tax aversion

Industrial sector facing another great problem that is Black Marketing and Tax aversion Industrialists are not paying their full Taxes to the Govt. So Govt. is not facilitating to the industrialists.

12. Slack ness in international Markets

Pakistan goods are not better in Standard on to international level. So the demand of Pakistan goods is decreases day by day.

13. Problem of power Recourse

In Pakistan a lot of areas having no facility of electricity, other areas are facing problem of load shedding and power facility. And electricity is very expensive in Pakistan. So Pakistan is Backward in Industrial Sector.

14. Illiteracy

Mostly people of Pakistan are uneducated and Standard of education in Pakistan is very low. So we are not producing personally and Technically better workers, Manger, Machine operators and betters skilled people.

15. Lack of Speedy means of Transportations

Means of Transportation play a vital role in progress of industry. Unfortunately Means of Transportations in Pakistan are not up to the Mark. So industries are backward in Pakistan.

STEPS TO PROMOTE INDUSTRIAL PROGRESS IN PAKISTAN

If we want to promote industrial progress in Pakistan, we have to take following steps in this regard.

1. Improvement of means of transportation & Communication:

If we want to promote the industrial progress in Pakistan, we have to constructed better roadways, railways and motorway in the country. We have to supply better air and water transportation facilities and communication facilities to the industrialist.

2. Access to the International markets:

If we want to increase the ratio of industrial development in the country, we have to supply the better facilities to the people to access the international markets, and held industrial exhibitions inside & outside the country for the Pakistani goods.

3. Availability of banking Facilities:

Industry is a sector in which a large capital and better banking facilities are required. Without provide the easy loan facilities to the people we cannot increase the ratio of industrial progress in Pakistan.

4. Availability of cheap energy resources:

In Pakistan electricity and other energy resources are very expensive. Due to power failure & load shading industry suffers a lot, so if we want to increase the industrial progress ratio in the country. We have to provide cheap electricity to the industries.

5. Political Stability:

Unfortunately, there is no political stability in Pakistan. That why the local investors as well as the foreign investor are not invested their money in Pakistan. So if we want to increase the industrial progress in Pakistan we have to adopt the permanent industrial policies that can be happen only if the Pakistan will be political stable.

6. Availability of skilled labour:

Educated, trained, experienced and hard-worker people are required for the industrial progress in country. Because in Pakistan there is lack of skilled and train labour.

7. Centers of Industrial Research:

For the promotion of the industries we have to established different industrial research center in the country. In 1953 the government established industrial research center in Pakistan but this council is not working efficiently. So there is a need of establishment of proper and effective industrial research center in the country.

8. Establishment of Industrial Zone:

The government already declared industrial zone and industrial states in the different parts of the country where all the facilities of electricity, water, natural gas and better means of transportations, but there is the need of establishment of more industrial zones and industrial states in the country.

9. Exemption in Taxes:

Exemption in taxes for a particular period for the new industries is very helpful. In this way we can maximize the industrial progress ratio in the country. We should lower the tax ratio on the raw materials and industrial machinery.

10. Industrial Development Corporation

The government established different organization like Pakistan industrial corporation, Pakistan Development Corporation and small industries corporation in the country for the promotion of industries. There is a need of make these corporations efficient and effective.

Education Sector in Pakistan

Importance of Education in Pakistan

Education is very important for the industrial, social, economic, agricultural and mineral development of the country. Education is an obligation of the Muslims. Pakistan is the country in which only the 54% of the people are educated. This ratio is very low as compared to the develop countries as well as the neighbouring countries so we have to the increase the literacy rate in Pakistan. Then we can increase the national economy and provide the better living standard to the people.

Types of Education in Pakistan

There are two types of education in Pakistan:

- i. Formal education.
- ii Informal education.

PROBLEMS OF EDUCATION IN PAKISTAN

There are a lot of problems of education in Pakistan but some of them are as under:

(1) Low Literacy Rate:

The problem is that a major part of population of Pakistan is not formally educated. The literacy rate is very low in 1951 literacy rate was only 16% but in 1998 only the 45% people of Pakistan were literate. According to the economy survey of Pakistan 2003 the literacy rate was 54%.

(2) Low Standard of Education:

The second problem is low standard of education. There are many reasons for it, for example:

- The appointment of teachers with average abilities.
- Appointments of teachers on the basis of political quota.
- Shortage of training institutes to develop the better teaching skills.

- Use of unfair means to pass an examination.

(3) Lack of Quality Textbooks:

Third problem is the non-availability of quality books and necessary reference material. The curriculum is changed to make necessary changes in the courses to meet the challenges of changing times but the books are either unavailable or so much expensive.

(4) Limited Extra Curricular Activities:

Another problem is the limited facilities of healthy extra curricular and social activities. This unavailability gives birth to student politics and other destructive activities.

(5) Lack of Guidance in the Selection of Subjects:

There is a lack of student counseling facility. There is no guidance for the students to make selection of suitable subjects to acquire professional skills to meet their future need.

(6) Poor Economy of the People:

Pakistan is a developing country where the economical resources are very limited. Due to the lack of resources, education department faces a lot of problems and people are unable to afford the huge expenses of the education of their children.

(7) Lack of Educational Institutions:

Lack of educational institutions especially in the rural areas is another problem that results in low literacy rate. In Pakistan there is the shortage of institutions of professional and technical education.

(8) Un-Employment:

After getting education, a lot of people fail to achieve job. This lack of job opportunities in the country motivates the people to send their children to some jobs in their school going age.

(9) Insufficient Educational facilities:

In the major parts of the country there are insufficient education facilities like libraries, laboratories and other facilities.

(10) Defective Examination System:

Examination system is defective there is a lot of problems in this system like cheating, use of unfair means, selection of studies and corruption.

(11) Aimless Education:

The objects of education are not fixed to meet national needs rather the 'international obligation' is kept in view. Most of the schemes are imported from USA which does not suit Pakistan and her people. Already existing system was devised to provide workers for foreign rulers. The necessary changes to meet the needs the free nation have not been made.

(12) Repugnant to the ideology of the Country:

Our system of education, specially the modern reforms, is devised to spread the secularist ideas in the name of modernism. Its hard fact that existence of Muslim ummah lies in the force of convection and readiness to sacrifice live for it.

(13) Insufficient Education of Science and Modern Knowledge:

The education in Pakistan has failed to grow creative spirit in the field of science even. The Systems of Objective Type Questions develop cramming tendencies and discourages deep understanding and innovation.

(14) Weak Educational Base:

The education standard at primary level is not kept constant in Pakistan. So the educational base of students remains weak.

(15) Character Building Ignored:

Pakistanis are talented people with good health and enormous working capacity. What we lack is character, honesty and firm will. Unfortunately our educationists do not impart any importance to character building. This is highly injurious to our future.

(16) Political Trends in the Educational Institutions:

Politics in the educational institutions has done a great harm to the education system of Pakistan. The college and universities have become centers to demonstrations and protests. The students are divided in opposite's camps. The political parties, in this way, are directly damaging the future of the next generation.

SUGGESTIONS:

If we want to promote our education sector so we have to keep in mind the following suggestions:

1) Standard Educational Syllabus:

The institutions of text book board should be improved and made functional for making a standard educational syllabus for all classes.

2) Improvement in Examination System:

The examination method should be formulated once again and the mental level of students should be improved. The students should be discouraged morally from use of dishonest means and memorization. Besides the examination method should be molded on scientific and modern bases and then the intelligence of students should be tested.

3) Improvement of Primary Education:

The primary education should be made compulsory and of standard so that students become interested in gaining education.

4) Increase in Educational Budget:

An increase in the national budget for education department should be made and the salaries and allowances of teachers should be increased so that they can devote all their attention on building of students, besides arrangements should be made to give scholarships to intelligent and hardworking students. Resources should be increased and new education institution should be formed so more and more students can get education.

5) Better Education Policy:

The educational policy should be improved for ending the educational backwardness and solution of problems. Education should be made compulsory up to matriculation level and later according to the trends of the students they should be given education in concerned fields.

6) Religion and Moral Training:

An organized arrangement for religious and moral training should be made in all educational institutions. Students should be made aware of their real aim of life students should be often lectured on religious and moral subjects.

7) Political Stability:

The political instability should be ended and the government machinery should be put to work for educational improvement. The administrative machinery should keep a vigilant eye on performance of educational institutions and the annual promotion of teachers should be attached to their performance.

8) Increase in Literacy rate:

Government should take steps to increase the literacy rate in the country and government should provide facilities in this regard. Government should also motivate the private sector too.

9) Availability Standardized Books:

Government should provide the standard books to the students. Government should also take suitable steps for the error free printing of the books. Government should encourage the people who write standard books.

10) Student Counseling:

Government should arrange for student counseling in the institutions. They should be a close coordination teachers, parents and students. Government should open new educational institutions especially in rural areas. Government should make the policies to enhance the education in the country on the permanent basis.

Indus Valley civilization

Overview

- The Indus River Valley Civilization, 3300-1300 BCE, also known as the Harappan Civilization, extended from modern-day northeast Afghanistan to Pakistan and northwest India.
- Important innovations of this civilization include standardized weights and measures, seal carving, and metallurgy with copper, bronze, lead, and tin.
- Little is understood about the Indus script, and as a result, little is known about the Indus River Valley Civilization's institutions and systems of governance.
- The civilization likely ended due to climate change and migration.

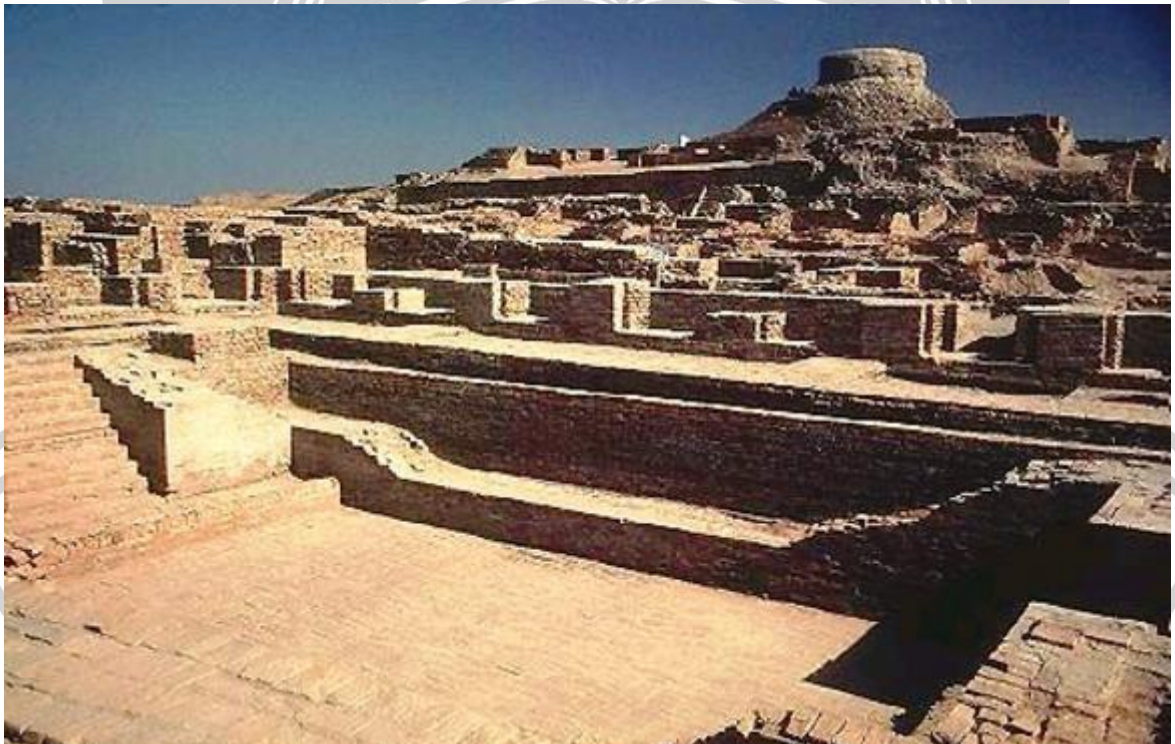
Geography and time-frame

Empire, a large empire which dominated ancient India between c. 322 and 185 BCE.

Before the excavation of this Harappan In 1856, British colonial officials in India were busy monitoring the construction of a railway connecting the cities of Lahore and Karachi in modern-day Pakistan along the Indus River valley.

Harappan Civilization

Though they did not know it then, and though the first major excavations did not take place until the 1920s, these railway workers had happened upon the remnants of the Indus Valley Civilization, also known as the **Harappan Civilization**, after Harappa, the first of its sites to be excavated, in what was then the Punjab province of British India and is now in Pakistan. Initially, many archaeologists thought they had found ruins of the ancient Maurya cities, scholars thought that Indian civilization had begun in the Ganges valley as Aryan immigrants from Persia and central Asia populated the region around 1250 BCE. The discovery of ancient Harappan cities unsettled that conception and moved the timeline back another 1500 years, situating the Indus Valley Civilization in an entirely different environmental context.

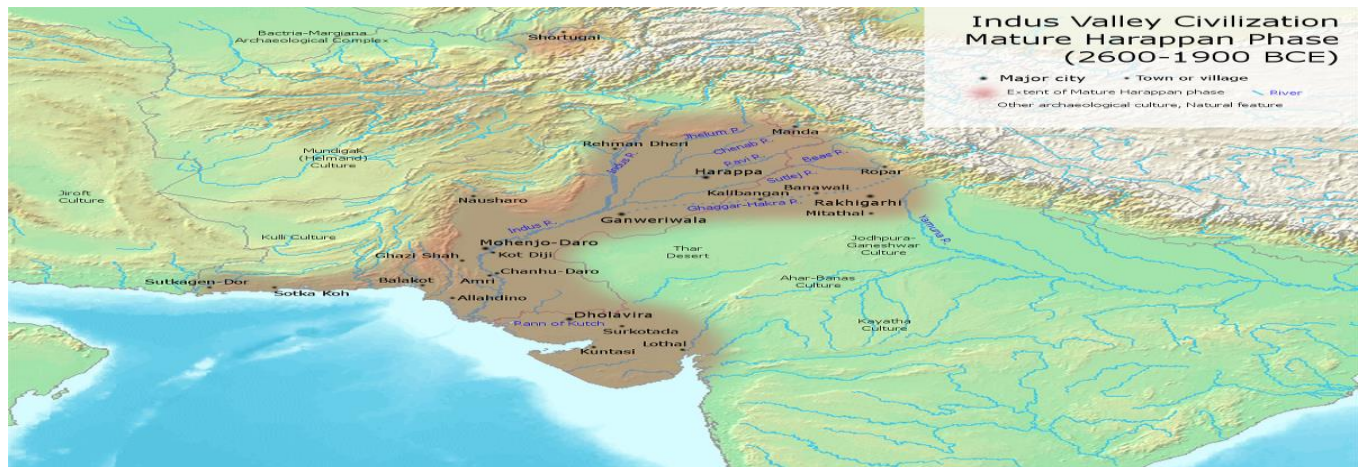




Map of Pakistan including the origins of the Indus Valley empire, Mehrgarh, in the foothills of a mountain pass. Map shows Pakistan, Afghanistan, the northwest part of India and Punjab, and part of the Arabian Sea.

Scholars are still piecing together information about this mysterious civilization, but they have learned a great deal about it since its rediscovery. Its origins seem to lie in a settlement named **Mehrgarh** in the foothills of a mountain pass in modern-day Balochistan in western Pakistan. There is evidence of settlement in this area as early as 7000 BCE.

The Indus Valley Civilization is often separated into three phases: the **Early Harappan Phase** from 3300 to 2600 BCE, the **Mature Harappan Phase** from 2600 to 1900 BCE, and the **Late Harappan Phase** from 1900 to 1300 BCE.



This map shows the extent of the Indus Valley Civilization during the Mature Harappan Phase. Civilization is highlighted in brown in the area of modern-day Pakistan and northern India. The rest of the map is green and is a partial map of India and the area northwest of Pakistan.

Indus Valley Civilization in the Mature Harappan Phase (2600-1900 BCE). Image courtesy Wikimedia Commons.

At its peak, the Indus Valley Civilization may have had a population of over five million people. The Indus cities are noted for their **urban planning**, a technical and political process concerned with the use of land and design of the urban environment. They are also noted for their baked brick houses, elaborate drainage systems, water supply systems, and clusters of large, nonresidential buildings.

The Indus Valley Civilization began to decline around 1800 BCE. Archaeological evidence indicates that trade with Mesopotamia, located largely in modern Iraq, seemed to have ended. The advanced drainage systems and baths of the great cities were built over or blocked. Writing began to disappear, and the standardized weights and measures used for trade and taxation fell out of use.

Urban infrastructure and architecture

By 2600 BCE, small Early Harappan communities had developed into large urban centers. These cities include Harappa, Ganeriwala, and Mohenjo-daro in modern-day Pakistan and Dholavira, Kalibangan, Rakhigarhi, Rupar, and Lothal in modern-day India. In total, more than 1,052 cities and settlements have been found, mainly in the general region of the Indus River and its tributaries.

Mohenjo-daro

Mohenjo-daro is thought to have been built in the twenty-sixth century BCE; it became not only the largest city of the Indus Valley Civilization but one of the world's earliest major urban centers. Located west of the Indus River in the Larkana District, Mohenjo-daro was one of the most sophisticated cities of the period, with advanced engineering and urban planning.

Harappa

Harappa was a fortified city in modern-day Pakistan that is believed to have been home to as many as 23,500 residents living in sculpted houses with flat roofs made of red sand and clay. The city spread over 150 hectares—370 acres—and had fortified administrative and religious centers of the same type used in Mohenjo-daro.

Indicate remarkable organization

The remains of the Indus Valley Civilization cities indicate remarkable organization; there were well-ordered wastewater drainage and trash collection systems and possibly even public baths and **granaries**, which are storehouses for grain. Most city-dwellers were artisans and merchants grouped together in distinct neighborhoods. The quality of urban planning suggests efficient municipal governments that placed a high priority on hygiene or religious ritual.

Harappans demonstrated advanced architecture

Harappans demonstrated advanced architecture with dockyards, granaries, warehouses, brick platforms, and protective walls. These massive walls likely protected the Harappans from floods and may have deterred military conflicts. Unlike Mesopotamia and Ancient Egypt, the inhabitants of the Indus Valley Civilization did not build large, monumental structures. There is no conclusive evidence of palaces or temples—or even of kings, armies, or priests—and the largest structures may be granaries. The city of Mohenjo-daro contains the Great Bath, which may have been a large, public bathing and social area.

The Great Bath at Mohenjo-daro: Amid the brick ruins of a 3rd-millennium BCE city, stairs descend on two sides into a large, rectangular brick-lined pit. Wooden stakes and wire encircle the perimeter, preventing entry by modern-day tourists.

Innovation and exchange

The people of the Indus River Valley Civilization achieved many notable advances in technology, including great accuracy in their systems and tools for measuring length and mass. Fire-baked bricks—which were uniform in size and moisture-resistant—were important in building baths and sewage structures and are evidence that Harappans were among the first to develop a system of **standardized weights and measures**. The consistency of brick size across cities also suggests unity across the various urban areas, which is evidence of a broader civilization.



Archaeological dig. A brick-lined empty pit, formerly a water reservoir, with a set of steps leading down to the bottom.

Recently partially-excavated Rakhigarhi

Harappa, Mohenjo-daro, and the recently partially-excavated Rakhigarhi demonstrate the world's first known urban sanitation systems. The ancient Indus systems of sewage and drainage developed and used in cities throughout the Indus region were far more advanced than any found in contemporary urban sites in the Middle East and even more efficient than those in many areas of Pakistan and India today. Individual homes drew water from wells, while wastewater was directed to covered drains on the main streets. Houses opened only to inner courtyards and smaller lanes, and even the smallest homes on the city outskirts were believed to have been connected to the system, further supporting the conclusion that cleanliness was a matter of great importance.

Harappans are known for seal carving

Harappans are known for **seal carving**— the cutting of patterns into the bottom face of a **seal**, a small, carved object used for stamping. They used these distinctive seals for the identification of property and to stamp clay on trade goods. Seals—decorated with animal figures, such as elephants, tigers, and water buffalos—have been one of the most commonly discovered artifacts in Indus Valley cities.



Seal from the Indus Valley civilization. Male figure in a cross-legged position, surrounded with animals and wearing a hat with two curved horns on either side.

Mold of a seal from the Indus Valley civilization.

The Indus River Valley Civilization is considered a Bronze Age society; inhabitants of the ancient Indus River Valley developed new techniques in **metallurgy**—the science of working with copper, bronze, lead, and tin. Harappans also performed intricate handicraft using products made of the semi-precious gemstone Carnelian.

Trade focused on importing raw materials to be used in Harappan city workshops, including minerals from Iran and Afghanistan, lead and copper from other parts of India, jade from China, and cedar wood floated down rivers from the Himalayas and Kashmir. Other trade goods included terracotta pots, gold, silver, metals, beads, flints for making tools, seashells, pearls, and colored gemstones, such as lapis lazuli and turquoise.

Religion, language, and culture

The Harappan religion also remains a topic of speculation. It has been widely suggested that the Harappans worshipped a mother goddess who symbolized fertility. In contrast to Egyptian and Mesopotamian civilizations, the Indus Valley Civilization seems to have lacked any temples or palaces that would give clear evidence of religious rites or specific deities.



Square tiles with symbols and animals carved into them.

Indus Valley seals

Many Indus Valley seals include the forms of animals; some depict the animals being carried in processions, while others show mythological creations like unicorns, leading scholars to speculate about the role of animals in Indus Valley religions. Interpretations of these animal motifs include signification of membership in a clan, elite class, or kin structure. One seal from Mohenjo-daro shows a half-human, half-buffalo monster attacking a tiger. This may be a reference to the Sumerian myth of a monster created by Aruru—the Sumerian earth and fertility goddess—to fight Gilgamesh, the hero of an ancient Mesopotamian epic poem. This is a further suggestion of international trade in Harappan culture.

Indus Valley excavation sites have revealed a number of distinct examples of the culture's art, including sculptures, seals, pottery, gold jewelry, and anatomically detailed figurines in terracotta, bronze, and steatite.



A steatite statue against a blue background. The statue depicts a man with a beard and a headpiece wearing decorative dress across one shoulder.

Indus Priest/King Statue. The statue is 17.5 cm high and carved from steatite. It was found in Mohenjo-daro in 1927.

Among the various gold, terracotta, and stone figurines found was a figure of a priest-king displaying a beard and patterned robe. Another figurine in bronze, known as the *Dancing Girl*, is only 11 centimeters high and shows a female figure in a pose that suggests the presence of some choreographed dance form enjoyed by members of the civilization. Terracotta works also included cows, bears, monkeys, and dogs. In addition to figurines, the Indus River Valley people are believed to have created necklaces, bangles, and other ornaments.

Institutions and hierarchies

Harappan society organized

How was Harappan society organized, and what institutions functioned as centers of authority? Archaeological records provide no immediate answers regarding a center of authority or depictions of people in power in Harappan society, and there are few written records to consult. However, Harappan artifacts display an extraordinary uniformity. Pottery, seals, weights, and bricks with standardized sizes and weights, suggest some form of authority and governance, though it is not clear what that form was exactly.

Harappan civilization was a peaceful one

It is widely believed that the Harappan civilization was a peaceful one that did not engage in any warfare, but there is not conclusive evidence to support this belief, and some archaeologists consider it a pervasive myth. Some scholars argue that Harappans were peaceful primarily because there were no natural enemies due to the geographic location of the major cities. Weapons have been found at sites, but there is debate as to whether they were used in conflict with other groups or as defense against wild animals.

Decline

Indus Valley Civilization declined around 1800 BCE

The Indus Valley Civilization declined around 1800 BCE, and scholars debate which factors resulted in the civilization's demise. One theory suggested that a nomadic, Indo-European tribe called the Aryans invaded and conquered the Indus Valley Civilization, though more recent evidence tends to contradict this claim. Many scholars believe that the collapse of the Indus Valley Civilization was caused by climate change. Some experts believe the drying of the Saraswati River, which began around 1900 BCE, was the main cause for climate change, while others conclude that a great flood struck the area.

1800 BCE, the Indus Valley climate grew cooler and drier

By 1800 BCE, the Indus Valley climate grew cooler and drier, and a tectonic event may have diverted or disrupted river systems, which were the lifelines of the Indus Valley Civilization. The Harappans may have migrated toward the Ganges basin in the east, where they could have established villages and isolated farms. These small communities would not have been able to produce the same agricultural surpluses to support large cities. With the reduced production

of goods, there would have been a decline in trade with Egypt and Mesopotamia. By around 1700 BCE, most of the Indus Valley Civilization cities had been abandoned.

Government and Politics in Pakistan

The 1973 Constitution declared Pakistan as a Federal Republic to be known as the Islamic Republic of Pakistan, recognizing Islam as the religion of the state. Pakistan was to be a Federation of four federating Units, Punjab, Sindh, the NWFP and Balochistan. The Constitution was parliamentary in nature, with a bicameral legislature at the Center consisting of two Houses, the National Assembly and the Senate. Although the 1973 Constitution has been held in abeyance during military rule in the late 1970s/early 1980s, and has to date, been amended 19 times, it is currently the constitution governing the state. The 18th Amendment to the Constitution, which was passed in April 2010, removed most of the constitutional changes introduced during military regimes, as well as formally changing the name of the North West Frontier Province to Khyber Pakhtunkhwa, and has granted provinces greater autonomy.

Executive

The 1973 Constitution lay down that the President was to be the Head of the State. The President was to act on the advice of the Prime Minister of Pakistan, and could be removed on the grounds of physical or mental incapacity or impeached on charges of violating the Constitution or gross misconduct by a two-thirds vote of the members of the parliament.

The President

The President of Pakistan is chosen by a secret ballot through an Electoral College comprising the Members of the Senate, National Assembly and the Provincial Assemblies. A person who is a Muslim and not less than 45 years of age and is qualified to be elected as a Member of the National Assembly can contest the Presidential election. The President is elected for a term of 5 years and is authorized to appoint the Attorney General, Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts, and the Chief Election Commissioners. In the Provincial Government, each province was to have a Governor appointed by the President. He could be re-elected but could not hold office for more than two terms.

The Prime Minister

The Prime Minister is appointed by the President from among the members of the National Assembly, and has to demonstrate majority support in the House. The Prime Minister is assisted by the Federal Cabinet, a council of ministers whose members are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Federal Cabinet comprises the ministers, ministers of state, and advisers

The Senate

The Senate is a permanent legislative body with equal representation from each of the four provinces, elected by the members of their respective provincial assemblies. The chairman of the Senate, under the constitution, is next in line to act as President should the office become vacant and until such time as a new President can be formally elected. The Federally Administered Tribal Areas (FATA) and Islamabad Capital Territory also have representatives

presenting the Senate,² which has a total of 100 members, of whom 14 members are elected by each Provincial Assembly, 8 members are elected from Federally Administered Tribal Areas (FATAs) by the Members of National Assembly from these areas, 2 members, 1 woman and 1 Technocrat is elected from the Federal Capital by the Members of National Assembly, 4 women and 4 Technocrats are elected by the members of each Provincial Assembly. The term of the members of the Senate is 6 years. However, the term of the first group of the Senators, who shall retire after completion of first 3 years of the Senate, is determined by drawing of lots by the Chief Election Commissioner.

Judiciary

The 1973 Constitution provided for a free and independent Judiciary. The Constitution guarantees a right to the citizens to be protected by law, and imposed two duties on them, loyalty to the Republic and obedience to the law. Any person who was found to abrogate or attempt or conspire to abrogate or subvert the Constitution was to be treated guilty of high treason. The Constitution conferred several kinds of fundamental rights to the people such as the right to life, liberty, equality and freedom of speech, trade and association. The Constitution also declared any laws inconsistent with or derogatory to fundamental rights as null and void. The judiciary includes the Supreme Court, provincial high courts, and other lesser courts exercising civil and criminal jurisdiction. The Supreme Court is the apex court in Pakistan's judicial hierarchy, the final arbiter of legal and constitutional disputes. The Supreme Court of Pakistan consists of a Chief Justice and not more than 16 other Judges appointed by the President.

Federal Shariat Court

The Federal Shariat Court constitutes another key pillar of the judiciary and consists of eight Muslim judges, including a chief justice appointed by the President. Three of the judges are ulema, that is, Islamic Scholars, and are supposed to be well versed in Islamic law. The Federal Shariat Court has original and appellate jurisdiction. This court decides whether any law is repugnant to the injunctions of Islam. When a law is deemed repugnant to Islam, the President, in the case of a federal law, or the governor, in the case of a provincial law, is charged with taking steps to bring the law into conformity with the injunctions of Islam.

Military

The military in Pakistan has played an influential role in mainstream politics, having taken over from civilian governments on four occasions. Military governments were led by (in the 1960s) General Ayub Khan and General Yahya Khan, (in the late 1970s and 1980s) General Zia-ul-Haq, and (from 1999 to 2008), General Pervez Musharraf. In total, military or military backed civilian regimes have been in power for half of the years of the country's existence. The influence of the military extends far beyond its constitutional role even in times of civilian rule. The military high command has on occasion acted as a mediator between the government and other state actors, and between political leaders. In addition it has exerted strong influence on foreign policy, particularly with regard to relations with India and Afghanistan. The military also has economic interests in Pakistan which it seeks to protect. According to one analyst, the growth of the military's business interests encourages the top echelons of the armed forces to support "policy making environments" that will "multiply their

economic opportunities” and such actions are “both the cause and effect of a feudal, authoritarian, non-democratic political system”

Local government

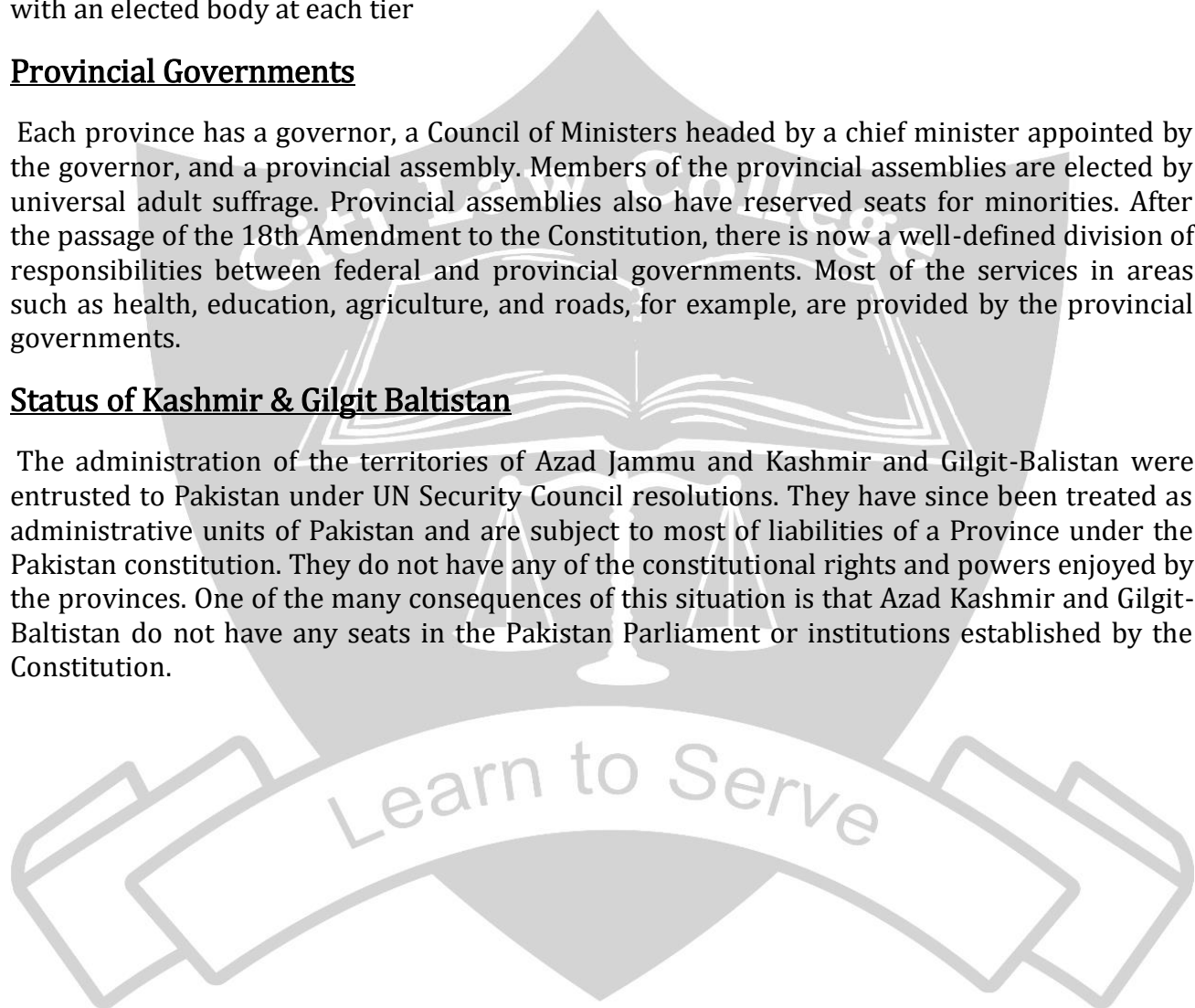
Prior to 2001, the sub-provincial tier of government was composed of 26 divisions, with two further tiers (districts and tehsils) administered directly from the provincial level. Under the 2001 Local Government Ordinance (LGO), the divisions were abolished and a new three-tiered system of local government came into effect, comprising districts, tehsils and union councils, with an elected body at each tier

Provincial Governments

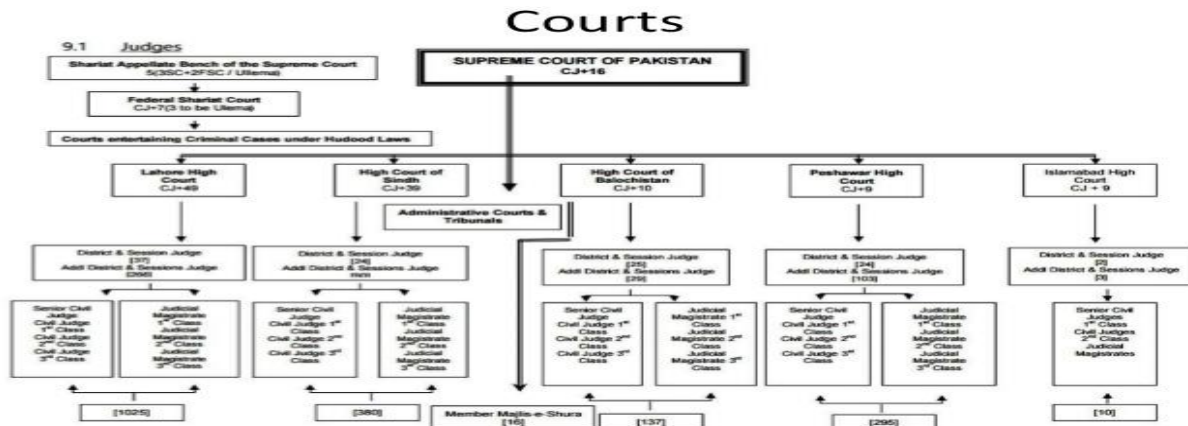
Each province has a governor, a Council of Ministers headed by a chief minister appointed by the governor, and a provincial assembly. Members of the provincial assemblies are elected by universal adult suffrage. Provincial assemblies also have reserved seats for minorities. After the passage of the 18th Amendment to the Constitution, there is now a well-defined division of responsibilities between federal and provincial governments. Most of the services in areas such as health, education, agriculture, and roads, for example, are provided by the provincial governments.

Status of Kashmir & Gilgit Baltistan

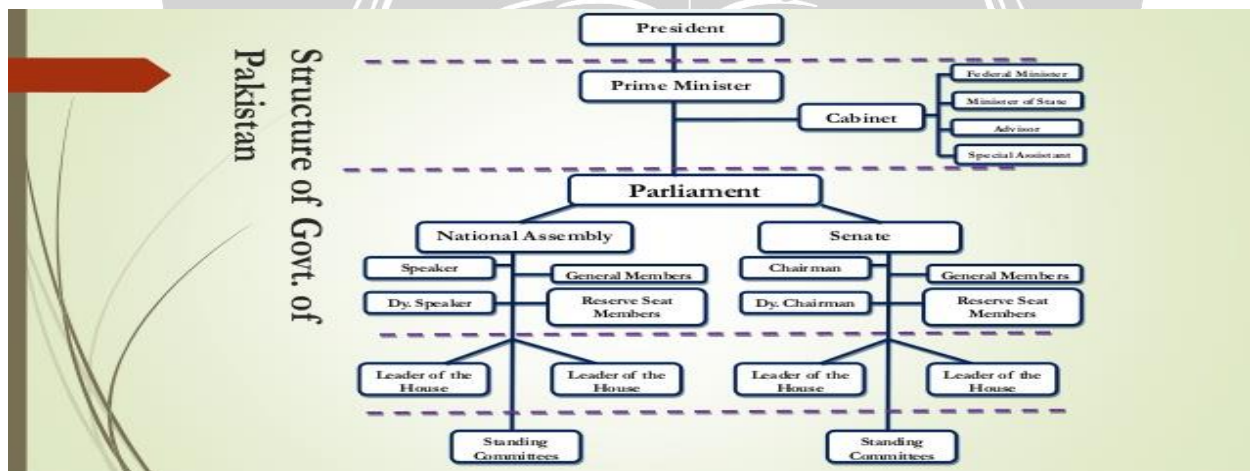
The administration of the territories of Azad Jammu and Kashmir and Gilgit-Balistan were entrusted to Pakistan under UN Security Council resolutions. They have since been treated as administrative units of Pakistan and are subject to most of liabilities of a Province under the Pakistan constitution. They do not have any of the constitutional rights and powers enjoyed by the provinces. One of the many consequences of this situation is that Azad Kashmir and Gilgit-Balistan do not have any seats in the Pakistan Parliament or institutions established by the Constitution.



Structure of Judiciary in Pakistan



Structure of Government in Pakistan



Political & Constitutional Phases

1947 to 1958 the First Democratic Era

In 1947, the founding fathers of Pakistan agreed to appoint Liaquat Ali Khan as the country's first prime minister, with Muhammad Ali Jinnah as both first governor-general and speaker of the State Parliament. Mountbatten had offered to serve as Governor-general of both India and Pakistan but Jinnah refused this offer. When Jinnah died of tuberculosis in 1948, Islamic scholar Maulana Shabbir Ahmad Usmani described Jinnah as the greatest Muslim after the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb and also compared Jinnah's death to the Prophet's passing. Usmani asked Pakistanis to remember Jinnah's message of "Unity, Faith and Discipline" and work to fulfil his dream: to create a solid bloc of all Muslim

states from Karachi to Ankara, from Pakistan to Morocco. He [Jinnah] wanted to see the Muslims of the world united under the banner of Islam as an effective check against the aggressive designs of their enemies. The first formal step to transform Pakistan into an ideological Islamic state was taken in March 1949 when Liaquat Ali Khan introduced the Objectives Resolution in the Constituent Assembly. The Objectives Resolution declared that sovereignty over the entire universe belongs to Allah Almighty. Support for the Objectives Resolution and the transformation of Pakistan into an Islamic state was led by Maulana Shabbir Ahmad Usmani.

Later on the Internal Political Parties situation of East Pakistan led to the growth of Personal problems between the two Bengali leaders, further damaging the unity of the country and causing Suhrawardy to lose his authority in his own party to the growing influence of cleric Maulana Bhashani. Resigning under a threat of dismissal by Mirza, Suhrawardy was succeeded by I. I. Chundrigar in 1957 within two months Chundrigar was dismissed. He was followed by Sir Feroz Khan Noon, who proved to be an incapable prime minister. Public support for the Muslim League led by Nurul Amin began to threaten President Mirza who was becoming unpopular, especially in West Pakistan.^[82] In less than two years, Mirza dismissed four elected prime ministers, and was increasingly under pressure to call new elections in 1958.

1958 to 1971 the First Military Era

1958 First Martial Law

In October 1958 President Iskandar Mirza issued orders for a massive mobilisation of the Pakistan Armed Forces and appointed Chief of Army Staff General Ayub Khan as Commander-in-chief. President Mirza declared a state of emergency, imposed martial law, suspended the constitution, and dissolved both the governments in East Pakistan and West Pakistan

General Ayub Khan was Chief Martial Law Administrator, with authority throughout the country. Within two weeks President Mirza attempted to dismiss Khan, but the move backfired and President Mirza was relieved of the presidency and exiled to London. General Khan promoted himself to the rank of a five-star field marshal and assumed the presidency. He was succeeded as chief of army staff by General Muhammad Musa. Khan named a new civil-military government under him.[[]

1962–1969 Presidential Republic

The parliamentary system came to an end in 1958, following the imposition of martial law.^[91] Tales of corruption in the civil bureaucracy and public administration had maligned the democratic process in the country and the public were supportive of the actions taken by General Khan. Major land reforms were carried out by the military government and it enforced the controversial Elective Bodies Disqualification Order which ultimately disqualified H. S. Suhrawardy from holding public office. Khan introduced a new presidential system called "Basic Democracy", by which an electoral college of 80,000 would select the President. He also promulgated the 1962 constitution. In a national referendum held in 1960 Ayub Khan secured nationwide popular support for his bid as second president of Pakistan and replaced his military regime with a constitutional civilian government. In a major development all of the infrastructure and bureaucracy of the capital was relocated from Karachi to Islamabad

Great Decade

The presidency of Ayub Khan is often celebrated as the "Great Decade", highlighting the economic development plans and reforms executed. Under Ayub's presidency the country underwent a cultural shift when the pop music industry, the film industry and Pakistani drama became extremely popular during the 1960s. Rather than preferring neutrality, Ayub Khan worked closely to form an alliance with the United States and the western world. Pakistan joined two formal military alliances opposed to the Soviet bloc: the Central Treaty Organization (CENTO) in 1955; and the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO) in 1962. During this period the private sector gained more power and educational reforms, human development and scientific achievements gained international recognition. In 1961 the Pakistani space program was launched and the nuclear power program was continued. Military aid from the US grew, but the country's national security was severely compromised following the exposure of U2 secret spy operations launching from Peshawar to overfly the Soviet Union in 1960. The same year Pakistan signed the Indus Waters Treaty with India in an attempt to normalise relations. Relations with China strengthened after the Sino-Indian War, with a boundary agreement being signed in 1963; this shifted the balance of the Cold War by bringing Pakistan and China closer together while loosening ties between Pakistan and the United States. In 1964 the Pakistani Armed Forces quelled a suspected pro-communist revolt in Khyber Pakhtunkhwa, West Pakistan, allegedly supported by communist Afghanistan during the controversial 1965 presidential elections, Ayub Khan almost lost to Fatima Jinnah.

Operation Gibraltar

In 1965, after Pakistan went ahead with its strategic infiltration mission in Kashmir codenamed Operation Gibraltar, India declared full-scale war against Pakistan.^[98] The war, which ended militarily in a stalemate, was mostly fought in the west.^[99] Controversially, the East Pakistani Army did not interfere in the conflict and this caused anger in West Pakistan against East Pakistan. The war with India was met with disfavor by the United States, which dismayed Pakistan by adopting a policy of denying military aid to both India and Pakistan.^[101] Positive gains were several treaties strengthening Pakistan's historical bonds with its western neighbours in Asia. A successful intervention by the USSR led to the signing of the Tashkent Agreement between India and Pakistan in 1965.¹ Witnessing the American disapproval and the USSR's mediation, Ayub Khan made tremendous efforts to normalise relations with the USSR; Bhutto's negotiating expertise led to the Soviet Premier, Alexei Kosygin, visiting Islamabad. Delivering a blistering speech at the UN General Assembly in 1965, Foreign Minister Zulfikar Ali Bhutto, with the atomic scientist Aziz Ahmed present, made Pakistan's intentions clear and announced that: "If India builds the [nuclear] bomb, we will eat grass, even go hungry, but we will get one of our own... We have no other choice". Abdus Salam and Munir Khan jointly collaborated to expand the nuclear power infrastructure, receiving tremendous support from Bhutto. Following the announcement, the nuclear power expansion was accelerated with the signing of a commercial nuclear power plant agreement with General Electric Canada, and several other agreements with the United Kingdom and France.

Post Tashkent Political situation

Disagreeing with the signing of Tashkent agreement, Bhutto was ousted from the ministry on the personal directive of President Khan in 1966. The dismissal of Bhutto caused spontaneous mass demonstrations and public anger against Khan, leading to major industrial and labour strikes in the country. Within weeks Ayub Khan lost the momentum in West Pakistan and his image was damaged in public circles. In 1968, Ayub Khan decided to celebrate his "Decade of Development," it was strongly condemned by leftist students and they decided to celebrate, instead, a "Decade of Decadence. Leftists accused him of encouraging crony capitalism, the exploitation of workers and the suppression of the rights and ethnic-nationalism of the Bengalis (in East Pakistan), Sindhis, the Baloch and the Pakhtun. Amidst further allegations that economic development and hiring for government jobs favoured West Pakistan, Bengali nationalism began to increase and an independence movement gained ground in East Pakistan. In 1966 the Awami League led by Sheikh Mujibur Rahman demanded provisional autonomy at the Round Table Conference held by Ayub Khan; this was forcefully rejected by Bhutto. The influence of socialism increased after the country's notable economist, Mahbub ul Haq, publishing a report on the private-sector's evasion of taxation and the control of the national economy by a few oligarchs.^[108] In 1967 a Socialist convention, attended by the country's leftist philosophers and notable thinkers, took place in Lahore. The Pakistan People's Party (PPP) was founded with Zulfikar Ali Bhutto as its first elected chairman. The Peoples Party's leaders, JA Rahim and Mubashir Hassan, notably announced their intention to "defeat the great dictator with the power of the people."

1969–1971 Second Martial Law

Imposed after Resignation of Ayub Khan

President General Yahya Khan was aware of the explosive political situation in the country. Support for progressive and socialist groups was rising, and calls for a change of regime were gaining momentum. In a television address to the nation, President Khan announced his intention to hold nationwide elections the following year and to transfer power to the elected representatives. Virtually suspending the 1962 Constitution, President Khan instead issued the Legal Framework Order No. 1970 (LFO No. 1970) which caused radical changes in West Pakistan. Tightening the grip of martial law, the One Unit program was dissolved in West Pakistan, removing the "West" prefix from Pakistan, and a direct ballot replaced the principle of parity. Territorial changes were carried out in four of the country's provinces, allowing them to retain their geographical structures as they were in 1947. The state parliament, Supreme Court and major government and authoritarian institutions also regained their statuses. This decree was limited to West Pakistan; it had no effect on East Pakistan. Civilians in Ayub Khan's administration were dismissed by the military government which replaced them with military officers.

Process of Election and Cyclone in Pakistan

The Election Commission registered 24 political parties, and public meetings attracted many large crowds. On the eve of the elections, a cyclone struck East Pakistan killing approximately 500,000 people, though this event did not deter people from participating in the first ever general election. Mobilizing support for their Six Points manifesto the Awami League secured electoral support in East Pakistan. Zulfikar Ali Bhutto's Pakistan Peoples Party asserted itself

even more. Its socialist rationale, *roti kapra aur makaan* (food, cloth, and shelter) and the party's socialist manifesto quickly popularised the party. The conservative PML, led by Nurul Amin, raised religious and nationalist slogans all over the country.

Result of General Election 1970

Out of a total of 313 seats in the National Assembly, the Awami League won 167 seats but none from West Pakistan and the PPP won 88 seats but none from East Pakistan. While the Awami League had won enough seats to form a government without the need for any coalition, West Pakistani elites refused to hand over power to the East Pakistani party. Efforts were made to start a constitutional dialogue. Bhutto asked for a share in government saying *Udhar tum, idhar hum*, meaning "You in the east, I in the west". The PPP's intellectuals maintained that the Awami League had no mandate in West Pakistan.

Although President Khan invited the Awami League to a National Assembly session in Islamabad he did not ask them to form a government, due to opposition from the PPP. When no agreement was reached, President Khan appointed Bengali anti-war activist Nurul Amin as Prime Minister with the additional office of the country's first and only Vice-president.

War of 1971 and fall of East Pakistan

Pakistan launched pre-emptive air strikes on 11 Indian airbases on 3 December 1971, leading to India's entry into the war on the side of Bangladeshi nationalist forces. Untrained in guerrilla warfare, the Pakistani high command in the east collapsed under commanders General Amir Niazi and Admiral Muhammad Sharif. Exhausted, outflanked and overwhelmed, they could no longer continue the fight against the intense guerrilla insurgency, and finally surrendered to the Allied Forces of Bangladesh and India in Dhaka on 16 December 1971. Nearly 90,000 Pakistani soldiers were taken prisoners of war and the result was the emergence of the new nation of Bangladesh, thus ending 24 years of turbulent union between the two wings.

1971-1977 Second Democratic Era

Separation of East Pakistan & PPP first Govt

The 1971 war and the separation of East Pakistan demoralized the nation. With the PPP's assumption of power, democratic socialists and visionaries had authority for the first time in the country's history. Bhutto dismissed the chiefs of the army, navy and the air force and ordered house arrest for General Yahya Khan and several of his collaborators. He adopted the Hamoodur Rahman Commission's recommendations and authorised large-scale courts-martial of army officers tainted by their role in East Pakistan. To keep the country united Bhutto launched a series of internal intelligence operations to crack down on fissiparous nationalist sentiments and movements in the provinces.

Democracy, Growth, Industrialization and Atomic Program

1971 to 1977 was a period of left-wing democracy and the growth of economic nationalization, covert atomic bomb projects, promotion of science, literature, cultural activities and Pakistani nationalism. In 1972 the country's top intelligence services provided an assessment on the Indian nuclear program, concluding that: "India was close to developing a nuclear weapon

under its nuclear programme". Chairing a secret seminar in January 1972, which came to be known as "Multan meeting", Bhutto rallied Pakistani scientists to build an atomic bomb for national survival. The atomic bomb project brought together a team of prominent academic scientists and engineers, headed by theoretical physicist Abdus Salam. Salam later won the Nobel Prize in Physics for developing the theory for the unification of the weak nuclear and electromagnetic forces.

The Constitution of 1973

The PPP created the 1973 Constitution with the support of Islamic Political Parties. The Constitution declared Pakistan an Islamic Republic and Islam the state religion. It also stated that all laws would have to be brought into accordance with the injunctions of Islam as laid down in the Quran and Sunnah and that no law repugnant to such injunctions could be enacted. The 1973 Constitution also created institutions such as the Shariat Court and the Council of Islamic Ideology to channel and interpret the application of Islam to the law.

Insurgency in Balochistan

In 1973 a serious nationalist rebellion took place in Balochistan province, which was harshly suppressed; the Shah of Iran purportedly assisted with air support in order to prevent the conflict from spilling over into Iranian Balochistan. Bhutto's government carried out major reforms such as the re-designing of the country's infrastructure, the establishment of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Committee and the reorganisation of the military. Steps were taken to encourage the expansion of the country's economic and human infrastructure, starting with the agriculture, land reforms, industrialisation and the expansion of the higher education system throughout the country. Bhutto's efforts undermined and dismantled the private-sector and conservative approach to political power in the country's political setup. In 1974 Bhutto succumbed to increasing pressure from religious parties and encouraged Parliament to declare adherents of Ahmadiyya to be non-Muslims.

Deterioration of Relations with US

Relations with the United States deteriorated as Pakistan normalised relations with the Soviet Union, the Eastern Bloc, North Korea, China, and the Arab world. With Soviet technical assistance the country's first steel mill was established in Karachi, which proved to be a crucial step in industrialising the economy. Alarmed by India's surprise nuclear test in 1974, Bhutto accelerated Pakistan's atomic bomb project. This crash project led to a secret sub-critical testings, Kirana-I and Test Kahuta, in 1983. Relations with India soured and Bhutto sponsored aggressive measures against India at the United Nations. These openly targeted the Indian nuclear programme.

From 1976 to 1977, Bhutto was in diplomatic conflict with the United States, which worked covertly to damage the credibility of Bhutto in Pakistan. Bhutto, with his scientist colleague Aziz Ahmed, thwarted US attempts to infiltrate the atomic bomb programme. In 1976, during a secret mission, Henry Kissinger threatened Bhutto and his colleagues. In response Bhutto aggressively campaigned for efforts to speed up the atomic project.

1977 to 1988 Third Martial Law

Martial Law with Enforcement of Islamic Law

This period of military rule, lasting from 1977 to 1988, is often regarded as a period of persecution and the growth of state-sponsored religious conservatism. Zia-ul-Haq committed himself to establishing an Islamic state and enforcing *sharia* law. He established separate *shariat* judicial courts and court benches to judge legal cases using Islamic doctrine. New criminal offences of adultery, fornication and types of blasphemy, and new punishments of whipping, amputation, and stoning to death, were added to Pakistani law. Interest payments for bank accounts were replaced by "profit and loss" payments. *Zakat* charitable donations became a 2.5% annual tax. School textbooks and libraries were overhauled to remove un-Islamic material. Offices, schools and factories were required to offer prayer space. Zia bolstered the influence of the Islamic clergy and the Islamic parties, whilst conservative scholars became fixtures on television. Thousands of activists from the Jamaat-e-Islami party were appointed to government posts to ensure the continuation of his agenda after his death. Conservative Islamic scholars were appointed to the Council of Islamic Ideology. Separate electorates for Hindus and Christians were established.

A Period of Successful Technocracy

President Zia's long eleven-year rule featured the country's first successful technocracy. It also featured the tug of war between far-leftist forces in direct competition with populist far-right circles. President Zia installed many high-profile military officers in civilian posts, ranging from central to provisional governments. Gradually the influence of socialism in public policies was dismantled. Instead a new system of capitalism was revived with the introduction of corporatisation and the Islamization of the economy. The populist movement against Bhutto scattered, with far right-wing conservatives allying with General Zia's government and encouraging the military government to crack down on pro-Soviet left-wing elements. The left-wing alliance, led by Benazir Bhutto, was brutalised by Zia who took aggressive measures against the movement. Further secessionist uprisings in Balochistan were put down successfully by the provincial governor, General Rahimuddin Khan. In 1984, Zia held a referendum asking for support for his religious programme; he received overwhelming support.

Deterioration of Relations with Soviet Union

After Zia assumed power, Pakistan's relations with the Soviet Union deteriorated and Zia strove for strong relations with the United States. After the Soviet Union's intervention in Afghanistan President Ronald Reagan immediately moved to help Zia supply and finance an anti-Soviet insurgency. Zia's military administration effectively handled national security matters and managed multibillion-dollars of aid from the United States. Millions of Afghan refugees poured into the country, fleeing the Soviet occupation and atrocities. Some estimate that the Soviet troops killed up to 2 million Afghans and raped many Afghan women. It was the largest refugee population in the world at the time, which had a heavy impact on Pakistan. Pakistan's North-West Frontier Province became a base for the anti-Soviet Afghan fighters, with the province's influential Deobandi *ulama* playing a significant role in encouraging and organising the *jihad* against the Soviet forces. In retaliation the Afghan secret police carried out

a large number of terrorist operations against Pakistan, which also suffered from an influx of illegal weapons and drugs from Afghanistan. Responding to the terrorism, Zia used "counter-terrorism" tactics and allowed the religiously far-right parties to send thousands of young students from clerical schools to participate in the Afghan *jihād* against the Soviet Union.

Strategic Problems with India

Problems with India arose when India attacked and took the Siachen glacier, prompting Pakistan to strike back. This led the Indian Army to carry out a military exercise which mustered up to 400,000 troops near southern Pakistan. Facing an indirect war with the Soviet Union in the west, General Zia used cricket diplomacy to lessen the tensions with India. He also reportedly threatened India by saying to Rajiv Gandhi "If your forces cross our border an inch... We are going to annihilate your (cities)."

Lift of Martial Law & Resignation of Junejo

Under pressure from President Reagan, General Zia finally lifted martial law in 1985, holding non-partisan elections and handpicking Muhammad Khan Junejo to be the new prime minister. Junejo in turn extended Zia's term as Chief of Army Staff until 1990. Junejo gradually fell out with Zia as his administrative independence grew; for instance, Junejo signed the Geneva Accord, which Zia disapproved of. A controversy loomed after a large-scale blast at a munitions dump, with Prime Minister Junejo vowing to bring to justice those responsible for the significant damage caused and implicating several senior generals. In return General Zia dismissed the Junejo government on several charges in May 1988 and called for elections in November 1988. Before the elections could take place General Zia died in a mysterious plane crash on 17 August 1988. According to Shajeel Zaidi a million people attended Zia ul Haq's funeral because he had given them what they wanted: more religion. A PEW opinion poll found that 84% of Pakistanis favoured making *sharia* the law of the land.¹ Conversely, towards the end of Zia's regime, there was a popular wave of cultural change in the country. Despite Zia's tough rhetoric against the Western culture and music, underground rock music jolted the country and revived the cultural counter-attack on the Indian film industry.

1988 to 1999 Third Democratic Era

The Revival of Democracy

Democracy returned again in 1988 with general elections which were held after President Zia-ul-Haq's death. The elections marked the return of the Peoples Party to power. Their leader, Benazir Bhutto, became the first female prime minister of Pakistan as well as the first female head of government in a Muslim-majority country. This period, lasting until 1999, introduced competitive two-party democracy to the country. It featured a fierce competition between centre-right conservatives led by Nawaz Sharif and centre-left socialists led by Benazir Bhutto. The far-left and the far-right disappeared from the political arena with the fall of global communism and the United States lessening its interests in Pakistan.

Benazir Role as PM in Cold War

Prime Minister Bhutto presided over the country during the penultimate period of the Cold war, and cemented pro-Western policies due to a common distrust of communism. Her government observed the troop evacuation of the Soviet Union from neighbouring Afghanistan. Soon after the evacuation the alliance with the US came to an end when Pakistan's atomic bomb project was revealed to the world, leading to the imposition of economic sanctions by the United States. In 1989, Bhutto ordered a military intervention in Afghanistan, which failed, leading her to dismiss the directors of the intelligence services. With US aid she imposed the Seventh Five-Year Plan to restore and centralise the national economy. Nonetheless the economic situation worsened when the state currency lost a currency war with India. The country entered a period of stagflation, and her government was dismissed by the conservative president, Ghulam Ishaq Khan.

General Elections of 1990 and Rise of IJI (Islami Jumhuri Ithad)

The 1990 general election results allowed the right-wing conservative alliance the Islamic Democratic Alliance (IDA) led by Nawaz Sharif to form a government under a democratic system for the first time. Attempting to end stagflation Sharif launched a program of privatisation and economic liberalisation. His government adopted a policy of ambiguity regarding atomic bomb programs. Sharif intervened in the Gulf War in 1991, and ordered an operation against the liberal forces in Karachi in 1992. Institutional problems arose with president Ghulam Khan, who attempted to dismiss Sharif on the same charges he had used against Benazir Bhutto. Through a Supreme Court Judgement Sharif was restored and together with Bhutto ousted Khan from the presidency. Weeks later Sharif was forced to relinquish office by the military leadership.

General Elections in 1993 and PPP again in Power

As a result of the 1993 general elections Benazir Bhutto secured a plurality and formed a government after hand-picking a president. She approved the appointments of all four four-star chiefs of staff: Mansurul Haq of the navy; Abbas Khattak of the air force; Abdul Waheed of the army; and Farooq Feroze Khan chairman of the joint chiefs. She oversaw a tough stance to bring political stability, which with her fiery rhetoric earned her the nickname "Iron Lady" from her rivals. Proponents of social democracy and national pride were supported, while the nationalisation and centralisation of the economy continued after the Eighth Five-Year Plan was enacted to end stagflation. Her foreign policy made an effort to balance relations with Iran, the United States, the European Union and the socialist states.

Flourish of Different Cultures in the country

Focusing on cultural development, her policies resulted in growth in the rock and pop music industry, and the film industry made a comeback after introducing new talent. She exercised tough policies to ban Indian media in the country, while promoting the television industry to produce dramas, films, artistic programs and music. Public anxiety about the weakness of Pakistani education led to large-scale federal support for science education and research by both Bhutto and Sharif. Despite her tough policies, the popularity of Benazir Bhutto waned after her husband allegedly became involved in the controversial death of Murtaza Bhutto.

Many public figures and officials suspected Benazir Bhutto's involvement in the murder, although there was no proof. In 1996, seven weeks after this incident, Benazir Bhutto's government was dismissed by her own hand-picked president on charges of Murtaza Bhutto's death.

General Elections of 1997 and PML (N) again in Power

The 1997 election resulted in conservatives receiving a large majority of the vote and winning enough seats in parliament to change the constitution to eliminate the checks and balances that restrained the prime minister's power. Institutional challenges to authority of the new prime minister, Nawaz Sharif, were led by the civilian President Farooq Leghari, Chairman Joint Chiefs of Staff Committee General Jehangir Karamat, Chief of Naval Staff Admiral Fasih Bokharie, and Chief Justice Sajjad Ali Shah. These were countered and all four were forced to resign, Chief Justice Shah doing so after the Supreme Court was stormed by Sharif partisans.

Scenario of Nuclear Testing in Pakistan

Problems with India further escalated in 1998, when television reported Indian nuclear explosions, codenamed Operation Shakti. When this news reached Pakistan, a shocked Sharif called a Defence Committee of the Cabinet meeting in Islamabad and vowed that "she [Pakistan] would give a suitable reply to the Indians...". After reviewing the effects of the tests for roughly two weeks Sharif ordered the Pakistan Atomic Energy Commission to perform a series of nuclear tests in the remote area of the Chagai Hills. The military forces in the country were mobilised at war-readiness on the Indian border.

Dismissal by General Pervez Musharraf and Military Coup

On 12 October 1999 Prime Minister Sharif's attempt to dismiss General Pervez Musharraf from the posts of Chairman of the Joint Chiefs and Chief of Army Staff failed after the military leadership refused to accept the appointment of ISI Director Lieutenant-General Ziauddin Butt his replacement. Sharif ordered Jinnah International Airport to be sealed to prevent the landing of a PIA flight carrying General Musharraf, which then circled the skies over Karachi for several hours. A counter coup was initiated and the senior commanders of the military leadership ousted Sharif's government and took over the airport.

1999 to 2007 Fourth Military Era

Presidency of Musharraf

The presidency of Musharraf featured the arrival of liberal forces in national power for the first time in the history of Pakistan. Early initiatives were taken towards the continuation of economic liberalisation, privatisation and freedom of the media in 1999. The Citibank executive, Shaukat Aziz, returned to the country to take control of the economy.¹ In 2000 the government issued a nationwide amnesty to the political workers of liberal parties, sidelining the conservatives and leftists in the country. Intending the policy to create a counter-cultural attack on India, Musharraf personally signed and issued hundreds of licenses to the private sector to open new media outlets, free from government influence. On 12 May 2000 the Supreme Court ordered the Government to hold general elections by 12 October 2002. Ties with the United States were renewed by Musharraf who endorsed

the American invasion of Afghanistan in 2001 Confrontation with India continued over Kashmir, which led to a serious military standoff in 2002 after India alleged Pakistan-backed Kashmiri insurgents carried out the 2001 Indian Parliament attack.

Legal Framework order of 2002

Attempting to legitimise his presidency Musharraf held a controversial referendum in 2002, which allowed the extension of his presidential term to five years. The LFO Order No. 2002 was issued by Musharraf in August 2001, which established the constitutional basis for his continuance in office. The 2002 general elections resulted in the liberals, the Muttahida Qaumi Movement (MQM), the Third Way centrists and the Pakistan Muslim League (Q), winning the majority in parliament and forming a government. Disagreement over Musharraf's attempt to extend his term effectively paralysed parliament for over a year. The Musharraf-backed liberals eventually mustered the two-thirds majority required to pass the 17th Amendment to the Constitution of Pakistan. This retroactively legitimised Musharraf's 1999 actions and many of his subsequent decrees as well as extending his term as president. In a vote of confidence in January 2004, Musharraf won 658 out of 1,170 votes in the Electoral College, and was elected President Soon after Musharraf increased the role of Shaukat Aziz in parliament and helped him to secure nomination for the office of Prime Minister.

Shoukat Aziz as Prime Minister

Shaukat Aziz became prime minister in 2004. His government achieved positive results on the economic front, but his proposed social reforms were met with resistance. The far-right Muttahida Majlis-e-Amal mobilised in fierce opposition to Musharraf and Aziz and their support for the US intervention in Afghanistan. Over two years Musharraf and Aziz survived several assassination attempts by al-Qaeda, including at least two where they had inside information from a member of the military. On foreign front's allegations of nuclear proliferation damaged Musharraf and Aziz's credibility. Repression and subjugation in tribal areas of Pakistan led to heavy fighting in Wask with 400 al-Qaeda operatives in March 2004. This new conflict caused the government to sign a truce with the Taliban on 5 September 2006 but sectarian violence continued.

Emergency of 3rd November 2007

With Aziz completing his term, the liberal alliance now led by Musharraf was further weakened after General Musharraf proclaimed a state of emergency and sacked the Chief Justice Iftikhar Chaudhry along with the other 14 judges of the Supreme Court, on 3 November 2007 The political situation became more chaotic when lawyers launched a protest against this action and were arrested. All private media channels including foreign channels were banned. Domestic crime and violence increased while Musharraf attempted to contain the political pressure. Stepping down from the military, he was sworn in for a second presidential term on 28 November 2007.

Campaign of Benazir Bhutto and Her Assassination

Popular support for Musharraf declined when Nawaz Sharif successfully made a second attempt to return from exile, this time accompanied by his younger brother and his daughter. Hundreds of their supporters were detained before the pair arrived at Iqbal Terminal on 25 November 2007. Nawaz Sharif filed his nomination papers for two seats in the forthcoming

elections whilst Benazir Bhutto filed for three seats including one of the reserved seats for women. Departing an election rally in Rawalpindi on 27 December 2007, Benazir Bhutto was assassinated by a gunman who shot her in the neck and set off a bomb. The exact sequence of the events and cause of death became points of political debate and controversy. Early reports indicated that Bhutto was hit by shrapnel or gunshots, but the Pakistani Interior ministry maintained that her death was due from a skull fracture sustained when the explosive waves threw her against the sunroof of her vehicle. The issue remains controversial and further investigations were conducted by the UK police. The Election Commission announced that due to the assassination the elections, which had been scheduled for 8 January 2008, would take place on 18 February

General Election of 2008 and victory of PPP

The 2008 general elections marked the return of the leftists. The left oriented PPP and conservative PML, won a majority of the seats and formed a coalition government; the liberal alliance had faded. Yousaf Raza Gillani of the PPP became Prime Minister and consolidated his power after ending a policy deadlock in order to lead the movement to impeach the president on 7 August 2008. Before restoring the deposed judiciary, Gillani and his leftist alliance leveled accusations against Musharraf of weakening Pakistan's unity, violating its constitution and creating an economic impasse. Gillani's strategy succeeded when Pervez Musharraf announced his resignation in an address to the nation, ending his nine-year-long reign on 18 August 2008.

2008 to Present Fourth Democratic Era

Gillani as a Prime Minister and his policies

Prime Minister Gillani headed a collective government with the winning parties from each of the four provinces. Pakistan's political structure was changed to replace the semi-presidential system into a parliamentary democracy. Parliament unanimously passed the 18th amendment to the Constitution of Pakistan, which implemented this. It turns the President of Pakistan into a ceremonial head of state and transfers the authoritarian and executive powers to the Prime Minister. In 2009–11, Gillani, under pressure from the public and co-operating with the United States, ordered the armed forces to launch military campaigns against Taliban forces in the north-west of Pakistan. These quelled the Taliban militias in the north-west, but terrorist attacks continued elsewhere. The country's media was further liberalised, and with the banning of Indian media channels Pakistani music, art and cultural activities were promoted at the national level.

Pakistan Us Relation after Raymond Davis Incident

In 2010 and 2011 Pakistani-American relations worsened after a CIA contractor killed two civilians in Lahore and the United States killed Osama bin Laden at his home less than a mile from the Pakistan Military Academy. Strong US criticism was made against Pakistan for allegedly supporting bin Laden while Gillani called on his government to review its foreign policy. In 2011 steps were taken by Gillani to block all major NATO supply lines after a border skirmish between NATO and Pakistan. Relations with Russia improved in 2012, following a secret trip by the foreign minister Hina Khar, following repeated delays by Gillani in following

Supreme Court orders to probe corruption allegations he was charged with contempt of court and ousted on 26 April 2012. He was succeeded by Pervez Ashraf.

Completion of Term of Parliament

After the parliament completed its term, a first for Pakistan, elections held on 11 May 2013 changed the country's political landscape when the conservative Pakistan Muslim League (N) achieved a near supermajority in parliament. Nawaz Shareef became prime minister on May 28. As of August 2013 national debates continue over the ongoing national isolation, the country's foreign policy, gun control, taxation, immigration, and anti-terrorism reforms.

On July 28, 2017 Supreme Court of Pakistan disqualified Mr Muhammad Nawaz Sharif under Article (62) (1) f for concealing his Uqama in Panama Offshore Companies Case. Later on Mr Shahid Khaqan Abbasi took oath as Prime Minister of Pakistan on August 2, 2017.

On 25th July 2018 General Elections held for National Assemblies as well as Provincial Assemblies. Pakistan Takreek E Insaaf (Movement for Justice) got majority in Center, Punjab and KPK. Imran Khan took oath as 22nd Prime Minister of Pakistan on August 18, 2018. PTI Also established Provincial Governments in KPK and Punjab, and with collation in Baluchistan. While Pakistan Peoples Party established Government in Sindh.

CONSTITUTIONS OF ISLAMIC REPUBLIC OF PAKISTAN

Objective Resolution (1949)

Ans. Pakistan came into being on 14th August 1947. At the time of creation of Pakistan There was no any constitution in Pakistan. So Quaid-e-Azam enforced All India Act 1935 with certain amendments in the country for the smooth functioning of the state.

Objective Resolution (1949)

The first prime Minister of Pakistan, Liaquat Ali Khan presented the Objective Resolution in the First Constituent Assembly, which was passed on March 12th 1949.

Salient Features of the Objective Resolution

The salient features of Objectives Resolution are as follows:

1. Sovereignty of Allah

Sovereignty belongs to Allah Almighty alone, but He has delegated it to the state of Pakistan, and through its people to be exercised as sacred trust within the limits imposed by Him.

2. Islamic Democracy

State will exercise its power and authority through the elected representatives of the people and Islamic democracy will be exercised in the century.

3. **Islamic Principles**

The Islamic principles of democracy, freedom, equality, tolerance and social justice shall fully be followed.

4. **Islamic ways of living**

The Muslims shall be enabled to live individually and collectively in accordance with the teaching of Quran and Sunah.

5. **Protection to Minorities**

Adequate provisions shall be made for the minorities to profess, propagate and practice their religions and develop their cultures and traditions.

6. **Federal from of Government**

Pakistan shall be a federation, in which provinces will enjoy autonomy within the constitutional limits.

7. **Fundamental Rights**

Fundamental rights of freedom, equality, and property, expression of thought, belief, worship and association shall be guaranteed to all the citizens of Pakistan.

8. **Free Judiciary**

Judiciary shall be independent and will work without any political and economic pressure.

9. **National language**

Urdu will be the national language of the country.

10. **Protection of Boundaries of Pakistan**

Protection of water, land and Air boundaries will be protected. It will be the responsibility of the Government the take suitable steps for this purpose.

11. **Source of law**

It was mentioned in the Objective Resolution that source of law in Pakistan is Holy Quran and Sunnah. No Law can be formed in Pakistan which is against Holy Quran and Sunnah.

12. **Development of Backward Areas**

It was mentioned in the Objective Resolution in 1949 that remote or backward area should be developed equally to other developed areas of the country.

13. Answerable Government

It was mentioned in the Objective Resolution in that Pakistan would be free & independent state. Government of the Pakistan would be bound to make the decisions according to the public opinion and answerable to the people.

14. Democratic System of Government

In 1949, it was declared that democratic system of Government would be established in Pakistan according to the Islamic concepts.

15. National Development

It was also declared in 1949 that the people of Pakistan would be completely independent. Government should provide equal opportunities to the people, for economic and social development of the people. Government will take all possible steps in this regard.

Importance

- i) The Objective Resolution is one of the greatest steps after independence. The objective of establishment of Pakistan has been achieved by the Muslims of South Asia through this resolution.
- (ii) The Objective Resolution has attained the status of Magna Carta in the constitutional history of Pakistan. It was included as preamble in all the three constitutions, and its Islamic principles were incorporated in all the constitutions of Pakistan.
- (iii) The approval of Objective Resolution led the representatives of Muslims to adopt the golden principles of democracy instead of theocracy. They built up an Islamic state above all the geographical, racial and national limitations.
- (iv) In 1985, President General Zia-ul-Haq made it permanent part of constitution by an amendment in Constitution.
- (v) Objective Resolution rejected the different concepts of secularism in the country which were present at that time and clarified that Pakistan will be an Islamic State.
- (vi) In Objective Resolution it was declared that minorities should be protected.

Conclusion

Objective Resolution was the first step towards Islamization in Pakistan. No-doubt Objective Resolution has a great importance in the constitutional history of Pakistan because all the questions related to the rights of the minorities; basic rights of the people and nature of constitution were described in it.

Islamic Provisions of constitution of 1956.

After the approval of Objective Resolution in 1949, the “Constituent Assembly formed many committees including Basic Principles Committee headed by the Prime Minister. The Committee, under the chairmanship of Liaquat Ali Khan presented the interim report on September 28, 1950, which was criticized due to its incompleteness, and was asked to be revised. Second report of basic principle committee presented to Khawaja Nazim-ud-Din in 1952 but this report was also rejected. Later on Ch. Muhammad Ali started the constitutional process in Pakistan, when he became Prime Minister.

Constitution of 1956

After taking the charge, Ch. Muhammad Ali started the working on constitution-making. The draft of a federal parliamentary Constitution was passed by the Constituent Assembly in 1956 which was enforced on March 23, 1956 in the country. This constitution contained of 234 articles.

The Islamic provisions of the Constitution (1956)

Islamic provisions of constitution of 1956 are as under:

1. **Country's name**
In the constitution of 1956, the name of country was declared an Islamic Republic of Pakistan.
2. **Sovereignty of Allah**
In the constitution of 1956, Objective Resolution was included in the preamble of the Constitution, and Sovereignty over the whole world belongs to Allah Almighty.
3. **Islamic ways of living**
It is mentioned in the constitution of 1956, that Islamic ways of living will be introduced in the country. Full opportunities will be given to Muslim to spend their lives according to Islam.
4. **Muslim President**
According to the Constitution of 1956, the president of the country will be a Muslim.
5. **Protection of Islamic Values**
System of Islamic values will be implemented in the country. Non-Islamic values will be banned in Pakistan.
6. **Islamic laws**
No law will be enforced, which is repugnant to the teachings of Quran and Sunnah and the existing laws will be brought into conformity with Islam.
7. **System of Zakat and Aqaf**
System of Zakat and Aqaf will be introduced in Pakistan.

8. Organization of Islamic Research

According to the Constitution of 1956, it was declared organization of Islamic Research will be established, which will do research for the legislation and enforcement of Islamic principles.

9. Protection to Minorities

Rights of Minorities will be protected in the country. They can spend their lives according to their own religion and culture.

10. Elimination of Riba (Usury)

Riba will be eliminated from the country as soon as possible.

11. Relation with Muslim Countries

Pakistan will establish good relations with other Islamic countries for the Unity of Muslim World.

12. Unity of Muslim World

Pakistan will establish good relations with other Islamic countries for the Unity of Muslim World.

13. Welfare State

Pakistan will be a welfare state and the government will try its best to eliminate the poverty & illiteracy from the country. And basic facilities like food, shelter & cloth shall be provided to the people.

14. End of Racial & Provincial Discriminations

The government will try to eliminate Racial, Provincial, Communal and other discriminations from the country.

15. End of Illiteracy

The Government will take certain steps to eliminate the illiteracy from the country & education will be declared free & compulsory in Pakistan. Government will also take suitable steps for the adult education in the country.

16. Compulsory Teachings of Holy Quran

In the constitution of 1956, it was declared that the government should take steps for the compulsory education of Holy Quran in Pakistan.

17. Separate Electorate

It was declared in the constitution of 1956 that separate electorate would be provided to the minorities.

18. Free Judiciary

Judiciary shall be independent and will work without any political and economic pressure.

19. National language

Urdu & Bengali will be the national languages of the country.

Cancellation of Constitution of 1956

Constitution of 1956 was constituted after the hard struggle of the 9 years from 1947 to 1956 but Chief of Army Staff General Ayub Khan dismissed the constitution of 1956 on 7th October 1958. Constitution of 1956 was implemented in Pakistan only for 2 years & 7 months. General Ayub Khan dismissed the government and later on the President of Pakistan Sikandar Mirza. He imposed First Martial Law in Country on 7th October 1958.

Islamic provisions of constitution of 1962.

General Ayub Khan abrogated the Constitution of 1956 and proclaimed Martial Law on October 7, 1958 in the country due to the political disaster. Later on he became President of Pakistan.

Constitution of 1962

President Ayub Khan constituted a Commission for constituting the constitution in February 1960. This commission was headed by Justice Shahb-ud-Din. The Commission prepared a draft and presented to Mr. President on 6th May 1961 in which all powers were given to President. After certain amendments from the President Ayub Khan, the new Constitution was enforced on June 8, 1962 in the country. This constitution contained 250 clauses and Federal Presidential in nature.

Islamic Provisions of Constitution of 1962

Islamic Provisions of the constitution of 1962 are as under: -

1. Sovereignty of Allah

Objective Resolution was also included in the preamble of the Constitution, according to which sovereignty belongs to Allah and He delegates the authority to the Muslims, who exercise it as a sacred trust.

2. Formation of Islamic Society

It is mentioned in the constitution of 1962 that Islamic Society will be established in the country.

3. **Country's name**

The name of the country was proposed as "Republic of Pakistan", which was later on amended as "Islamic Republic of Pakistan".

4. **Islamic ways of livings**

Such an environment will be provided to the people that they live freely according to Islam.

3. **Source of law**

No law will be enforced, which is against to the Islamic teachings. All the existing laws will be brought into conformity with Islamic teachings.

6. **Islamic Principles**

Pakistan will be a welfare state. Principles of Democracy, Freedom, Equality, Tolerance and Social justice will be implemented in the country.

7. **Muslim President**

It was declared in the constitution of 1962 that the president of Pakistan would be a Muslim.

8. **Unity of Muslim World**

It was mentioned in the constitution that Government would be given special intention towards the unity of Islamic World.

9. **Protection to Minorities**

Rights of Minorities will be fully protected in the country.

10. **Teachings of Holy Quran**

The Quranic and Islamic teachings will be made compulsory for the Muslims.

11. **Islamic Organizations**

The Government will establish the organizations for proper maintenance of Zakat, Auqaf and Masjids.

12. **Islamic Ideology Council**

The Islamic Ideology Council will be established to recommend to both central and provincial governments to take measures to encourage the Muslims to live in accordance with the principles of Islam.

13. **Islamic Research Institute**

The government will establish the Islamic Research Institute to give its opinion regarding the Islamic principles.

14. Elimination of Riba (Usury)

Riba will eliminate from the country as soon as possible.

15. Free Judiciary

Judiciary shall be independent and will work without any political and economic pressure.

16. End of Racial & Provincial Discriminations

The government will try to eliminate the Racial, Provincial, Communal and other discriminations from the country.

17. End of Illiteracy

The Government will take certain steps to eliminate the illiteracy from the country & education will be declared free & compulsory in Pakistan. Government will also take suitable steps for the adult education in the country.

18. System of Zakat and Aquaf

System of Zakat and Aquaf will be introduced in Pakistan.

19. Welfare State

Pakistan will be a welfare state and the government will try its best to eliminate the poverty & illiteracy from the country. Basic facilities like food, shelter & cloth shall be provided to the people.

20. National language

Urdu & Bengali will be the national language of the country.

Cancellation of Constitution of 1962

President Ayub Khan resigned on 25th March 1969 in the regard of Public Movement against his government. Commander in Chief General Yah Khan imposed Martial Law in the country and took over the government. That was the 2nd Martial Law which was imposed in the country. All the provincial and federal governments were dismissed and announced elections in the country.

Islamic Provisions of Constitution of 1973.

General Yah Khan took over the country on 25th March 1969 and General Elections were held in the country in 1970. After the General Elections the situation became violent. East Pakistan separated from the federation and became Bangladesh on 16th December 1971.

Constitution of 1973

After the separation of East Pakistan in 1971, the Military Regime transferred the power to Zulfikar Ali Bhutto on December 20, 1971, who imposed interim Constitution in the country on April 12, 1972. Then a draft of permanent Constitution was presented before the Assembly and it was approved in April 1973. The constitution was enforced on August 14, 1973. This constitution was consisted of 280 clauses, which was Federal Parliamentary in nature.

Islamic Provisions of Constitution of 1973

All the Islamic provisions of the previous constitutions were included in the Constitution of 1973. Some more Islamic provisions were also added, which are as under:

1. Sovereignty of Allah

The Objective Resolution was included in the preamble of the Constitution of 1973. According to which sovereignty- over the whole world belongs to Allah. The people of Pakistan will exercise the sovereignty within the limits as a sacred trust of Allah.

2. Country's Name

The country's name will be Islamic Republic of Pakistan.

3. Official Religion of the State

The official religion of the country will be Islam.

4. Muslim President and Prime Minister:

The President and Prime Minister of Pakistan will be Muslims, who believe in oneness of Allah and the finality of the Prophet Hood of Muhammad (SAW).

5. Definition of a Muslim

For the first time, the definition of a Muslim was included in the Constitution of 1973. A person who does believe in oneness of Allah, the absolute finality of Prophet Hood of Muhammad (PBUH), the Day of Judgment and divine Books of Allah, is a Muslim'.

6. Protection of Islamic Laws

All the existing laws will be brought into conformity with Islamic principles and no law will be enforced, which is repugnant to the teachings of Islam.

7. Compulsory Islamic Teachings & Quran

The teaching of Quran and Islamic studies will be made compulsory in schools and colleges.

8. Teaching of Arabic and printing of Quran

The teaching of Arabic will be compulsory from 6 to 8 classes in schools and printing of Quran will be made error free.

9. **Islamic Values**

Islamic values for example, democracy, equity, liberty and equality will be the main objectives of the Constitution.

10. **Islamic Society**

The Muslims will be allowed to lead individually or collectively in accordance principles of Islam to form an Islamic society.

11. **Zakat and Usher**

According to the Constitution of 1973, the government will establish the system of Zakat and Usher by establishing the Zakat & Usher Councils.

12. **Elimination of Riba (Usury or Interest)**

The government will eliminate Riba and make the economy of the country free from Riba.

13. **Islamic Ideology Council**

The Islamic Ideology Council will be established, which will guide the legislature to make the laws in accordance with Islamic teachings and bring the existing.

14. **Unity of Islamic World:**

Government will give full intension towards the unity of Muslim world.

15. **Protection to Minorities**

Government will provide full right to the Minorities they spend their lives according to their own religion and culture.

16. **End of Racial & Provincial Discriminations**

The government will try to eliminate Racial, Provincial, Communal and other discriminations from the country.

17. **End of Illiteracy**

The Government will take certain steps to eliminate the illiteracy from the country. Education will be declared free & compulsory in Pakistan. Government will also take suitable steps for the adult education in the country.

18. **Welfare State**

Pakistan will be a welfare state. Government tried its best to eliminate the poverty & illiteracy in the country. And basic facilities like food, shelter & cloth shall be provided to the people.

19. **National language**

Urdu will be the national language of the country.

20. Free Judiciary

Judiciary shall be independent and will work without any political and economic pressure.

21. Protection of Ideology of Pakistan

It is mentioned in the constitution of 1973 that President, Prime Minister, Federal Minister, Speaker, Deputy Speaker, Chairman Senate, Deputy Chairman Senate, Provincial Governors, Chief Minister, Provincial Speakers, Provincial Deputy Speakers & Provincial Minister will take Oath to be loyal with the ideology of Pakistan and the Islamic Ideology.

22. Objective Resolution as the Permanent Part of the Constitution

In 1985, General Zia-ul-Haq made an amendment in the constitution and Objective Resolution declared the permanent part of the constitution.

Importance of Constitution of 1973

Constitution of 1973 has a great importance in the constitutional history of Pakistan because a lot of Islamic Clauses are added in the constitution as compared to the previous constitutions. This constitution cannot be dismissed (Cancelled or abrogated), any persons who will dissolve it will be hanged till death.

Suspension of Constitution of 1973

Constitution of 1973 was suspended by General Zia-ul-Haq in 1977 and he imposed the 3rd Martial Law in the country. General Zia-ul-Haq re-activated this constitution in 1985. Later on this constitution again suspended by Pervaiz Musharaf in his regime twice partially in 1999 and 2007.

Process of Islamization in Pakistan in detail.

Pakistan is the Single State which was obtained on the base of Islam in the world.

Steps towards Islamization before the Martial Law Government 1977

The process towards the enforcement of Islam in Pakistan is as under: -

1. Objective Resolution (1949)

The Objective Resolution was passed on 12th March, 1949; it laid down the basis for future constitution. A lot of Islamic clauses like supremacy of Allah, National Language Urdu, and Protection to Minorities, Free Judiciary and Islamic Laws etc were included in it.

2. Constitution of 1956

In 1956 Ch. Muhammad Ali Prime Minister enforced first constitution in Pakistan that constitution was also Islamic because a lot of Islamic Clauses were included in it like Supremacy of Allah, End of Usury & in-Islamic Values, Protection to Minorities, Free Judiciary and Islamic Laws etc.

3. Constitution of 1962

In 1962 President General Ayub Khan enforced 2nd constitution in Pakistan that constitution was also Islamic because a lot of Islamic Clauses were included in it like Supremacy of Allah, End of Usury & in-Islamic Values, Protection to Minorities & Judiciary, Islamic Laws etc.

4. Constitution of 1973

The Islamic reflection in the Constitution of 1973 is prominent and many Islamic provisions are added in it. The complete sovereignty of Allah over the world, Islam as official religion and definition of a Muslim are the specific examples. The efforts for Islamization also continued in the country in forth coming periods:

Steps towards Islamization by the Martial law Government From 1977 to till

General Zia-ul-Haq took over the country in 1977. He took some steps towards Islamization in Pakistan which are as follows:

1. Enforcement of Hadood

The Hadood Ordinance was issued on February 10, 1979, under which the offences against property, the rape, the Zina and Qazf were considered grievous crimes and their punishments were imposed.

2. System of Zakat and Usher

On June 20, 1980, the system of Zakat and Usher was imposed under which the Government was empowered to deduct 2.5 percent from the bank deposits in saving accounts on 1st Ramadan. The Zakat collection will be distributed by the Zakat Councils among the deserved. The collection of Usher started in 1983 under which ten percent at the specific amount of agricultural yield is liable to be realized.

3. Elimination of Interest

For the elimination of interest, on 1 January 1981, the profit and loss sharing accounts were opened. All the saving accounts were converted into PLS accounts with effect from 1 July, 1984. Moreover, all the financial institutions under the control of government started giving loans on sharing basis.

4. Shariat Courts

Shariat Benches in all High Courts were established on 10 February 1979 through an ordinance, in which Ulama were included as Judges. In May 1980 through an ordinance Shariat Benches were converted into Shariat Courts, which hear appeals from the

subordinate courts and interpret Islam. The Shariat Bench of Supreme Court hears the appeals against the decisions of the Federal Shariat Court, and can declare void any law and step, which is repugnant to Islam.

5. Compulsory Education of Islamiat

Islamic Studies was made compulsory for all classes for bringing educational system in conformity with Islam.

6. Ehtram-e-Ramadan Ordinance

An Ehtram-e-Ramadan Ordinance was issued which provided the complete sanctity for Ramadan and any contravention to this Ordinance was liable to three months imprisonment or a fine of Rs. 500 or both.

7. Observation of Salat (Namaz)

Arrangements for observing salat of Zuhar in the government and se in semi-government offices, schools and colleges were made. Salat committees were constituted to motivate people for salat.

8. Compulsory Arabic Teaching

Arabic teaching was made compulsory from class 6th to 8th.

9. Establishment of International Islamic University

An Islamic University at Islamabad started functioning from 2 January 1981, which makes research in every field of Islamic law.

10. Patronage of Madarus

Deni Madarus were patronized and annual financial assistance was given to them, and the Sanad (Degree) of Dars-e-Nazami was made equivalent to degree of M.A.

11. Reforms in Electronic Media

In 1979, Government also introduced reforms in the Electronic media following steps were being taken in this regard:

- i) **Ban on in-Islamic programmes**
- ii) **Introduction of Izan on T.V.**
- iii) **Teaching of Holly Quran and Islamic teachings started on T.V.**
- iv) **Live coverage of Hajj and Mahafil-e-Shabina**
- v) **Doputa Policy was introduced on T.V for Female anchors and actress.**

12. Laws of Qisas and Diyat

In 1979 according to the Presidential Ordinance Laws of Qisas and Diyat were enforced in the country according to Islamic concepts.

13. Revolution in Judiciary

According to ordinance of 1979 some revolutions also introduced in Judiciary, dress code of the Judges was changed and Shalwar & Sherwani was introduced in place of dress of the judiciary of the British period. Words like My Lord and your Lordship were replaced by Sir and Madam.

14. Reorganization of Islamic Ideology Council

Islamic Ideology Council was reorganized in the regime of General Zia-ul-Haq. More powers were given to Judges and Members of the Islamic Ideology Council also increased up to 20.

15. Masjid Maqtib Schemes

In 1984, government introduced Masjid Maqtib Schemes in the country. According to this scheme 4182 Masjid Maqtib were opened in the country the main objective of this scheme was to provide the basic educational facilities in the areas where there was no primary institutions. According to this scheme the education provided to the students up to class three.

16. Objective Resolution as the Permanent Part of the Constitution

In 1985, General Zia-ul-Haq made an amendment in the constitution and Objective Resolution declared the permanent part of the constitution.

17. Respect of Ulmas (Religious Scholars)

For the formation of Islamic Society in Pakistan the government issued an ordinance in the country in which the government declared the Ulmas will be given due respect.

18. Respect of Companion of Holy Prophet (PBUH)

According to the ordinance of 1979, it was declared that the four caliph of Islam and other companions of Holy Prophet (PBUH) will be respected. The person who will not give due respect to the companions of Holy Prophet (PBUH) he will be punished for three years imprisonment and fine.

19. Facilities of Hajj

According to the Presidential ordinance of 1979, it was declared that the government should provide suitable and compulsory facilities to the Hajaj-ul-Ikram. Department of Khadam-ul-Hajaj established for the solution of the problems of Hajjis and provides them suitable facilities.

20. Re-organization of Society

According to the ordinance of 1979, illegal and in-Islamic literature was declared completely ban from the country. Provincialism, racialism and other discrimination on basis of colour caste religion and creed etc. were totally banned. Transportation and

Production of illegal goods like Wine, Visky and others were banned. In 1984 Qadiani's or Ahmedies were declared Non-Muslim in Pakistan.

21. Shariat Bill

In 1991 Shariat Act was passed. According to that it was declared that Shariat ordinance would be enforced in the country step by step.

Conclusion

Pakistan is an ideological state; it is only a single state which was created in the name of Islam. But there are a lot of problems in the way of Islamization in Pakistan. We know that the Muslims can make progress only by implementing Islamic Rules & Regulations. So there will be a need of planning for the enforcement of Islamic Rules and Regulations in the country. This is the only way to make our image better in the world in this modern age.

Foreign Policy of Pakistan and Its Challenges

Pakistan emerged on the map of the world on 14th August 1947 and it inherited the foreign policy from British India. After independence, Pakistan made some changes in British policy according to the ideology and the objectives of Pakistan Movement.

Definition of Foreign Policy

The foreign policy is to establish and develop relations with other countries to watch the national interests by taking appropriate steps at international level.

PRINCIPLES OF FOREIGN POLICY

Every country established its foreign policy according to own ideological, historical, political and geographical circumstances. Foreign Policy of Pakistan was established by Quaid-e-Azam itself. Foreign policy of Pakistan is based on the following basic principles:

1. Peaceful Co-existence

Pakistan believes in peaceful co-existence and respects the liberty, freedom and sovereignty of other countries, and expects the same from others. Pakistan is always disinterested in the internal affairs of others, and opposes imperialism and aggression of every type.

2. Non-Alignment

Pakistan has adopted the policy of non-alignment by making changes in its foreign policy. Pakistan has not shown alignment with any bloc, and has established good relationship with all the countries. Therefore, now Pakistan is trying to establish good relationship with Russia, United State, China, United Kingdom France and other countries and expects the same from others of significant importance. At present Pakistan is also a regular member of Non-aligned Movement (NAM).

3. Unite Nations Charter

Pakistan wants to develop its relations with all countries on the basis of bilateralism. Pakistan also wants to solve its conflicts with neighbouring countries on the basis of bilateralism. Therefore, Pakistan has invited India many times to solve the Kashmir dispute by negotiation.

4. United Nations Charter

Pakistan is a member of United Nations and follows its charter strictly. Therefore, Pakistan has supported every action of the United Nations and provided military assistance to implement its decisions.

5. Support to Right of Self-Determination

Pakistan supports the right of self-determination of all the suppressed nations. Pakistan believes that every nation must have the right of self-determination. Therefore, Pakistan has supported the demand of abolishing the colonialism and every movement for the exercise of the right of self-determination in Europe, Africa and Asia. Pakistan has played very important role in the struggle of independence of Kashmir, Palestine, Bosnia, Namibia and Vietnam. It has also opposed the occupation of Afghanistan by Russia, and helped the Afghanis to get the liberation from foreign rule.

6. Unity of Islamic World

Pakistan is the supporter of the unity of Islamic world, and is following the policy to establish good relations with Muslim countries. Pakistan has always tried to solve the conflicts of Islamic world and played very important role in Iran – Iraq war, Palestine's and Afghanistan's liberation. Pakistan is an active member of the Organization of Islamic Conference (OIC). Pakistan has provided a platform for Muslim countries of Central Asia to solve their economic problems by establishing Economic Cooperation Organization (ECO).

7. De-weaponisation

Pakistan is the main supporter of de-weaponisation and supported all international efforts to de-weaponise the world. Therefore, Pakistan is not in the race of weaponisation. Pakistan uses atomic energy for peaceful purposes. Pakistan tries to avoid the danger of nuclear war. In the world Pakistan has repeatedly suggested for the de-weaponisation of South Asia, but India has not responded it accordingly.

8. Elimination of Racial Discrimination

Pakistan wants to eliminate the racial discrimination throughout the world. Pakistan has protested over racial discrimination in South Africa, Namibia and Rodeshia. There is no racial discrimination in Pakistan and all the minorities in Pakistan have equal rights.

9. Establishment of Peace

Pakistan wants establishment of peace throughout the world. Pakistan has also protested against aggressive powers desires, and supported the oppressed nations for

getting the peace. Pakistan has repeatedly invited India to negotiate peace in South Asia but it has rejected every move.

10. Good Relations with Neighbours

Pakistan wants good relationship with all neighbours including India. Pakistan also wants to solve all the issues with neighbouring countries including Kashmir issue with India peacefully. Therefore, Pakistan has invited India for talks at any time, at every level and at every place.

11. International and Regional Cooperation

Pakistan is an active member of international and regional organization i.e. United Nations, Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), Organization of Islamic Conference (OIC), Economic Cooperation Organization (ECO) and SAARC. Pakistan always cooperates with all these organizations for the security of world peace.

OBJECTIVES AND DETERMINANTS OF FOREIGN POLICY OF PAKISTAN

According to Lord Parmesan:

“In the International Relations, There is no any permanent friend and enemy but the preference is given only to the national interest any state form its foreign policy on the base of National Security & Interest.”

The main objectives of the foreign policy of Pakistan are as under:-

1. National Security

The main objective of foreign policy of Pakistan is its national security or independence. Pakistan was a new born state, and there was a need to make arrangements for its security. So Pakistan formulated its foreign policy on the basis of national security. It gave due importance to the national security, while establishing external relationships with other countries. Pakistan respects the national integrity and the political independence of other countries, and expect from others the same.

2. Economic Development

Pakistan is a developing country and inspires for its economic development. It needs to establish and maintain cordial relations with those states with whom it can maximize its trade relations or from whom it can obtain maximum economic benefits. Pakistan has made changes in its foreign policy keeping in view the new economic trends. It has adopted particularly free trade, free economic policy, and policy of privatization.

3. Protection of Ideology of Pakistan

Pakistan is an ideological state and its foreign policy is based upon the ideology of Pakistan or Islam. The foreign policy is meant to protect the ideology. The stability of Pakistan is also dependent upon ideology.

4. Better Relations with Islamic Countries

Pakistan can protect its ideology by developing good relationship with Muslim

countries. All the constitutions of Pakistan emphasized on establishing good relations with Muslim countries.

5. Non-Alignment

Pakistan has adopted the policy of non-alignment by making changes in its foreign policy. Pakistan has not shown alignment with any bloc, and has established good relationship with all the countries. Therefore, now Pakistan is trying to establish good relationship with Russia, United State, China, United Kingdom, France and other countries and expects the same from others of significant importance. At present Pakistan is also a regular member of Non-aligned Movement (NAM).

6. Support to Right of Self-Determination

Pakistan supports the right of self-determination of all the suppressed nations. Pakistan believes that every nation must have the right of self-determination. Therefore, Pakistan has supported the demand of abolishing the colonialism and every movement for the exercise of the right of self-determination in Europe, Africa and Asia. Pakistan has played very important role in the struggle of independence of Kashmir, Palestine, Bosnia, Namibia and Vietnam. It has also opposed the occupation of Afghanistan by Russia, and helped the Afghanis to get the liberation from foreign rule.

7. Elimination of Racial Discrimination

Pakistan wants to eliminate the racial discrimination throughout the world. Pakistan has protested over racial discrimination in South Africa Namibia and Rodeshia. There is no racial discrimination in Pakistan and all the minorities in Pakistan have equal rights.

8. Establishment of Peace

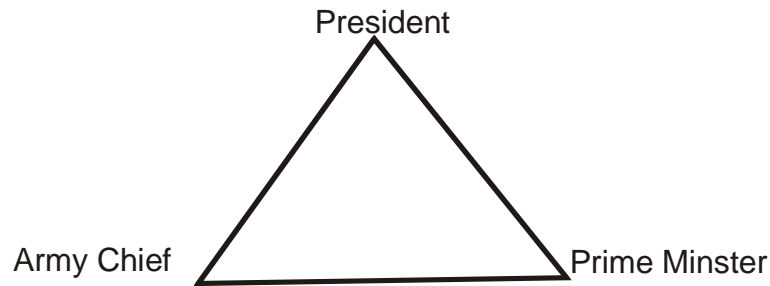
Pakistan wants establishment of peace throughout the world. Pakistan has also protested against aggressive powers desires, and supported the oppressed nations for getting the peace. Pakistan has repeatedly invited India to negotiate peace in South Asia but it has rejected every move.

DETERMINANTS OF THE FOREIGN POLICY OF PAKISTAN

The following are the determinants of the foreign policy of Pakistan: -

1. Administrative Troika

Administrative Troika comprises the President of Pakistan, the Prime Minister and Chief of Army Staff. It plays very important role in formulating foreign policy. It can approve or disapprove the foreign policy of Pakistan or can make any change in it. However, it is very difficult to deviate from the previous foreign commitments made by Troika.



2. **Ministry of Foreign Affairs**

The ministry can play very important role in formulating the foreign policy. It comprises the specialists and experts of foreign policy and the bureaucrats of high level. They prepare foreign policy, keeping in view the basic objectives and principles of the policy. They formulate the policy, plans and programmes regarding the priorities of foreign policy, and fully cooperate with Troika for its preparation. In accordance with new constitutional amendment, the Troika has been replaced by the National Security Council.

3. **Intelligence Agencies**

Pakistan's intelligence agencies also play very effective role in the formulation of foreign policy by providing full information about the objectives of other countries foreign policies. Keeping in view these information's, Pakistan formulates its foreign policy.

4. **Political Parties and Pressure Groups**

The political parties and pressure groups have deep impacts on the formulation of foreign policy. The political parties include the priorities of foreign policy in their manifestoes, and after their success in the election, they force the government to change the priorities of foreign policy according to the changing scenario in the light of their view points. Likewise, the pressure groups can also influence the foreign policy.

5. **Parliament**

The Ministry of Foreign Affairs usually prepares the foreign policy according to the directions of executive and puts it before the Parliament for approval. After discussion and debate the parliament gives approval to it or suggests some change in it.

Pakistan & China Relations

Pakistan and China are neighboring countries. They have common boundary of about 600 km long. Their bilateral relations depend upon the glorious traditions and close friendship. Pakistan recognized China on its birth in October 1949 and developed good relationship with it.

1. **Start of Pak China Friendship**

The Prime Minister of the both countries met in Bandung Conference in 1955, and after that the series of visits continued up till now. The heads of governments and states of both countries have made many visits.

2. Settlement of Boundaries

In 1961, the efforts to resolve the boundary issue were started and it was completed in 1963. Which strengthened the good relationship, and trade pact was signed by them. Pakistan Air Line started its flights to Beijing in early sixties.

3. Support at Indo-Pak Wars

The President of Pakistan visited China in February 1964, and China supported the claim of Pakistan to solve Kashmir issue peacefully. In the Indo-Pak war of 1965 China supported Pakistan and provided arms.

4. Economic & Technical Aid

China gave economic and technical aid to Pakistan in establishing industries, which included Texila Industrial Complex and its affiliated plans, setting up the heavy tools factory at Landhi and Sports Complex at Islamabad.

5. Construction of Silk Route

The Silk-route of Karakoram was completed in 1969 that connected Pakistan with China by road. It helped in frequent exchange of delegations and establishment of close relationship. The air contact was also established between both the countries.

6. Defense Pacts

Many defense pacts were concluded between Pakistan and China in 1985, according to which China provided economic and technical assistance in building the Kamra Complex and Ordnance Factory at Wah. Likewise China provided the assistance of Rs. 273 million for setting up Heavy Electric Complex in NWFP.

7. Support to China

Pakistan also sided, China and supported it for its permanent membership of Security Council of United Nations. Pakistan played an important role in establishing the close relations of United States with China. Pakistan supported China on the issue of the presence of foreign troops in Kampochia, and China supported Pakistan on the issue of the Russian intervention in Afghanistan.

8. Bilateral Relation between Two Countries

The bilateral relations between Pakistan and China were established and Chinese Prime Minister, Defense Minister and Chairman Peoples Congress visited Pakistan in 1987, February 1999 and April 1999 respectively. Again the Chinese Prime Minister visited Pakistan in 2001 and President of Pakistan visited China in 2001 and 2002. The mutual strong relationship of both countries has helped them to come closer.

Pakistan and India Relations

India is a neighbouring country of Pakistan. Its 84% population is consisted of Hindus and 10% of Muslims and 6% are other minorities. Its total area is twelve lac twenty nine thousand seven hundred and thirty seven sq. mile. Common border between Pakistan and India is 1600km and cease fire line on Kashmir is not included in it.

The relation between Pakistan and India could not be developed on better lines from the inception of Pakistan.

1. Kashmir Dispute

Kashmir is a dispute between both the countries and three wars i.e. 1948, 1965 and 1971 have been fought on the dispute of Kashmir. From the emergence of Pakistan India created many problems for Pakistan.

2. Indus Water Treaty and India

Pakistan and India signed Indus-Water-Treaty in 1960 to solve the water dispute between them. The project was completed with the help of World Bank and other countries but India refused to give its due share.

3. Separation of East Pakistan and India

India helped the separatist elements in East Pakistan in 1971 and created Bangladesh. After it Simla Agreement was signed between Pakistan and India, by which both the countries agreed differences through negotiations.

SAARC AND INDIA

By signing the Simla Agreement, the relationship between Pakistan and India improved to some extent and trade and travel of passengers started on limited scale. Moreover, both the countries began to increase cooperation within the jurisdiction of South Asia Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) from the year 1980, which gave positive result. Pakistan has invited India for talks to resolve all the issues but India remained reluctant to give positive response.

The Prime Ministers of Pakistan and India met on the occasion of SAARC Conference in 1988 and signed a pact. Both the countries agreed not to attack the nuclear centers of each other.

FREEDOM MOVEMENT IN KASHMIR

In 1989, the Kashmiri's freedom fighters started struggle against India in the decade of 1990. Mutual trade and travel of passengers increased but it remained limited because India was reluctant to solve the Kashmir dispute peacefully. Pakistan is determined to solve the Kashmir issue in accordance with the UN resolutions through the right of self-determination of Kashmiri's. Now there is hope for the improvement of relations between both the countries.

AGRA CONFERENCE AND INDIA

The Agra Conference from July 14 – 17, 2001 between the President of Pakistan, General Pervaiz Musharaf and India Prime Minister Atal Behari Vajpai was the first important meeting of its type between the two leaders, and the world felt a sigh of relief. The President of Pakistan presented his view-point boldly and nicely, and it was appreciated by the whole world but the meeting ended fruitless after three days.

MEETINGS OF OFFICERS OF BOTH COUNTRIES

During the SAARC Conference of January 2004 (Islamabad) the President of Pakistan and the Prime Minister of India held meetings and agreed upon many pacts, and resolved upon the continuation of dialogue. On the occasion of session of UN, General Assembly, held in September 2004, the President of Pakistan and New Prime Minister of India met, and resolved upon the continuation of negotiation, which resulted in the series of meetings of foreign ministers and secretaries of both the countries.

PAKISTAN & IRAN

In West of Pakistan is Iran. Iran is an Islamic country. Pakistan shares 900 Km border with Iran. Pakistan has close relation with Iran till his creation.

1. Background

We have close religious, cultural and trade relations with Iran since long. Iran was the first country that recognized Pakistan on its emergence, and ambassadors were exchanged.

2. Mutual Visit of Leaders

The Prime Minister of Pakistan visited Iran in 1949 and in response to this visit the Shah of Iran also visited Pakistan in 1950, and trade relations were established.

3. R.C.D

Pakistan and Iran along with Turkey established Regional Cooperation for Development (RCD) in 1964 for the development and close cooperation with one another in the fields of economic, industry, trade, culture and tourism, which was later on, annulled in 1979.

4. Indo-Pak Wars and Iran

Iran supported Pakistan, during the Indo-Pak war of 1965. It provided economic and military assistance to Pakistan. Likewise Iran supported Pakistan during the war of 1971. Pakistan paid due regard to Iran for this help.

5. Iranian Revolution and Pakistan

Pakistan extended recognition to new region, which was established after Iranian revolution in 1979. the Islamic Republic of Iran also improved relations with Pakistan in every field. Delegations of both countries were exchanged to improve the trade.

6. E.C.O

In 1985, a new organization for the close cooperation among Pakistan, Iran and Turkey was established by replacing RCD, named as Economic Cooperation Organization (ECO). It is working to achieve the objectives of RCD and is taking steps to boost up the cooperation in the fields of economic, industry, trade, education and cultural promotion among the member countries. Presently all the Muslim countries of Central Asia have also become the members of it.

7. Industrial and Technical Cooperation

The Chambers of Commerce of Pakistan and Iran exchanged visits of both countries and

offered mutual cooperation for economic development. The President of Pakistan Gen. Pervez Musharraf paid a visit to Iran in 2000 and offered his cooperation for the programme of setting up of gas pipeline from Iran to India.

PAKISTAN AND AFGHANISTAN

Durand Line divides the borders of Pakistan and Afghanistan, which is about 2252 km long. Both countries are connected through Hilly-passes. Darra-e-Khyber is very famous among them.

1. Improvement in Relations

In the early decade of 1970, the relations between both the countries began to improve. The Prime Minister of Pakistan and President of Afghanistan visited each other's country, and signed a pact of regional security and non-intervention.

2. War of USSR and Afghanistan

But their relations began to strain by the Military revolution in April 1978 and entering of Russian army in Afghanistan in December 1979. The new government of Afghanistan began to persecute its opponents, which resulted in emigration of 3 million Afghan refugees into Pakistan. Pakistan provided protection to refugees on the humanitarian ground and Islamic feelings.

3. Geneva Pact and Pakistan

When the Afghan people started their Jihad to oust the Russian army, Pakistan supported them. On the other hand, Pakistan also tried to solve the problem diplomatically. In 1988 Geneva Pact between Russia Pakistan and Afghanistan was signed also the Russian Army was withdrawn in 1989 under the auspices of United Nations.

4. Government of Mujahideen and Pakistan

In April, 1992 government of Mujahideen was formed in Afghanistan and Pakistan recognized the new government. Unfortunately the differences among Mujahideen emerged and a group of Mujahideen i.e. Taliban occupied a major part of Afghanistan and established an Islamic government. The Government of Pakistan again recognized the Taliban government.

5. Permanent Joint Commission

In May 2000 a permanent Joint Commission between Pakistan and Afghanistan was set up to regulate cross border movement of refugees and to check the production and smuggling of narcotics.

6. Attack of USA on Afghanistan

After the incident of 11th September, 2001 United States attacked Afghanistan and Government of Pakistan favoured America. The Taliban government came to an end, and a pro-American government was installed in Afghanistan. The Government of Pakistan again recognized the new government. It provided promised to give more aid.

7. Now Democratic Government in Afghanistan and Pakistan

After the installation of new democratic government in Pakistan a pact of Gas-pipeline between the Prime Minister of Pakistan and the President of Afghanistan was signed in early 2003 and the promised to help each other to complete the project, in 2004 after the election of Hamid Karzai as democratic President of Afghanistan. There is hope of starting of new era of relationship between Pakistan and Afghanistan.

PAKISTAN AND SAUDI ARABIA

Pakistan and Saudi Arabia have special relationship because there are Holy places of Muslims in Saudi Arabia, and lacs of Pakistani Muslims visit Saudi Arabia for performing Hajj every year. Moreover, the principle of Muslim world unity is the common factor in foreign policies of both the countries.

1. Emergence of Pakistan and Saudi Arabia

Before the emergence of Pakistan, Saudi Arabia supported the Pakistan Movement. After independence Saudi Arabia also recognized Pakistan. The first pact was signed between Pakistan and Saudi Arabia in 1951, which strengthened the friendly relationship of both the countries.

2. Shah Faisal visit of Pakistan

In 1954 Shah Abdul Aziz of Saudi Arabia visited Pakistan and provided sufficient aid for the rehabilitation of agencies. In 1966, Shah Faisal visited Pakistan on official tour and declared Pakistan his second home, and announced, economic aid for Pakistan. Saudi Arabia established a Bank in Pakistan for economic support.

3. Economic Aid

Saudi Arabia provided one billion rupees in aid to install cement and other factories in Pakistan. Pakistan provided technical assistance to Saudi Arabia in defense and re-organized Saudi Army on modern lines. Shah Faisal also provided economic aid to construct Faisal Masjid in Islamabad.

4. Indo-Pak Wars and Saudi Arabia

Saudi Arabia supported Pakistan during the Indo-Pak-wars of 1965 and 1971 and provided economic aid. Saudi Government supported Pakistan on Kashmir issue. Shah Faisal helped Pakistan in convening of Second Islamic Conference in 1974 in Lahore.

5. Support on Issues

Saudi Government supported Pakistan's policy of Afghanistan, and Pakistan supported Saudi Arabia during the Middle East crisis of 1991 and sent its army for the protection Holy lands of Saudi Arabia.

6. Pak-Saudi Economic Commission

Pak-Saudi Economic Commission was established in Riyadh in 1998, which initiated 155 projects in Pakistan and provided economic assistance for their completion.

7. Visit of Government Officials

Chief Executive of Pakistan Gen. Pervaiz Musharaf visited Saudi Arabia on official tour

and signed many pacts for mutual cooperation. The new Prime Minister of Pakistan also visited Saudi Arabia in 2003 and strengthened the relations of both the countries by signing many pacts.

Pakistan and Saudi Arabia have special bilateral relationship through which they trusted upon each other. The time also proved the close friendship of Pakistan and Saudi Arabia.

PAKISTAN & TURKEY

The relations between Turkey and Pakistan, the two brotherly, countries, are deep rooted and based on the similarity of Islamic culture. The people of the two countries are closely associated with each other. Both countries maintain their relations at all levels and regularly exchange views on matters concerning the mutual and bilateral relations between the two Muslim States.

Recognition to the new State of Pakistan

After independence Turkey extended its recognition to the new State of Pakistan as a sovereign and independent country. Both countries concluded trade, economic and cultural agreements to link together on stable grounds. The first agreement between Turkey and Pakistan was concluded in 1951 by which both countries gave scholarships to the students of each other's countries for pursuing studies. Another agreement was reached between the two countries which emphasized the defense matters between Turkey and Pakistan. Turkey and Pakistan were the members of CENTO. Pakistan and Turkey are linked together by agreement of R.C.D. which has now been converted into E.C.O. R.C.D. is an agreement aimed at promoting regional development in various aspects of social life of the three member States of Pakistan, Turkey and Iran.

Exchanging goodwill visits

The leaders and Heads of States of the two countries have been exchanging goodwill visits to each other country. Former Turkish President Jalal Bayar and the late Prime Minister Adnan Mandres paid visits to Pakistan during early days of Friendship between Pakistan and Turkey. Prime Minister Sulaiman Daimeral also paid visit to Pakistan.

Supported the view point of Pakistan

Turkey had always supported the view point of Pakistan of several political issues like Kashmir and Afghanistan. It has extended its support to the right of self determination of the people of Kashmir. Turkey came with material and moral support to Pakistan during the Wars of 1965 and 1971. Pakistan reciprocated by lending support to Turkey on the Cyprus issue. Pakistan expressed great concern in 1974 on the efforts of unification between Cyprus and Greece. Pakistan openly supported Turkish decision to send its troops in Cyprus. It sent medical supplies to Turkey and offered to send volunteers for providing all sorts of help and assistance to the Turkish Govt.

Cultural & Economic Exchange

Pakistan participated regularly in the Izmir Trade-fair and organized the exhibition of its goods in Islamabad in 1984. Turkey agreed to invite Pakistani teachers for teaching English in Turkish schools. Pakistan and Turkey decided to expand trade and economic co-operation. Later a few more fields like tractor manufacturing and solar energy were also included. An agreement for co-operation in tourism was signed during President Kennan Everne's visit to Pakistan in February 1989.

Turkey and Pakistan had identical views on Afghanistan problem and called for its political settlement. Turkey highly appreciated Pakistan's view on Afghan Crisis and landed its humanitarian assistance to the displaced Afghan refugees. An agreement on defense production and technical services was signed between Pakistan and Turkey on 11th March, 1987. The Turkish Defense Minister represented his country for signing this accord in Islamabad. The Governments of Turkey and Pakistan, by this agreement, have agreed to co-operate in the fields of defense production and services through procurement, joint production and mutual assistance in research and development. The agreement is valid for five years and further extendable to any length of period & through mutual consultations.

Economic Institutions and Issues

Overview of Economy of Pakistan

The economy of Pakistan is the 23rd largest in the world in terms of purchasing power parity (PPP), and 42nd largest in terms of nominal gross domestic product. Pakistan has a population of over 220 million (the world's 5th-largest), giving it a nominal GDP per capita of \$1,357 in 2019,¹ which ranks 154th in the world and giving it a PPP GDP per capita of 5,839 in 2019, which ranks 132nd in the world for 2019. However, Pakistan's undocumented economy is estimated to be 36% of its overall economy, which is not taken into consideration when calculating per capita income. Pakistan is a developing country and is one of the Next Eleven countries identified by Jim O'Neill in a research paper as having a high potential of becoming, along with the BRICS countries, among the world's largest economies in the 21st century. The economy is semi-industrialized, with centres of growth along the Indus River. Primary export commodities include textiles, leather goods, sports goods, chemicals and carpets/rugs.

Main Industries by Region



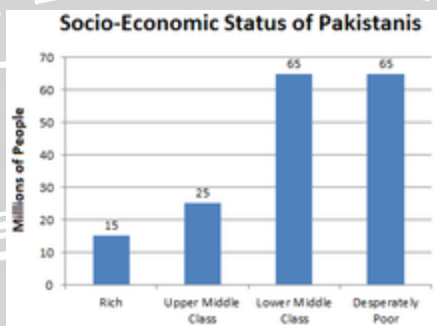
Major Economic Institutions

Stock market

In the first four years of the twenty-first century, Pakistan's KSE 100 Index was the best-performing stock market index in the world as declared by the international magazine "Business Week". The stock market capitalisation of listed companies in Pakistan was valued at \$5,937 million in 2005 by the World Bank. But in 2008, after the General Elections, uncertain political environment, rising militancy along western borders of the country, and mounting inflation and current account deficits resulted in the steep decline of the Karachi Stock Exchange

Middle class

As of 2017, according to Wall Street Journal, citing estimates largely based on income and the purchase of consumption goods, had suggested that as many as 42% of Pakistan's population may now belong to the upper and middle classes.



Poverty alleviation expenditures

Pakistan government spent over 1 trillion Rupees (about \$16.7 billion) on poverty alleviation programmes during the past four years, cutting poverty from 35% in 2000-01 to 29.3% in 2013 and 17% in 2015. Rural poverty remains a pressing issue, as development there has been far slower than in the major urban areas.

Employment

The high population growth in the past few decades has ensured that a very large number of young people are now entering the labor market. Even though it is among the six most populous Asian nations. In the past, excessive red tape made firing from jobs, and consequently hiring, difficult. Significant progress in taxation and business reforms has ensured that many firms now are not compelled to operate in the underground economy.

Tourism

Tourism in Pakistan has been stated as being the tourism industry's "next big thing". Pakistan, with its diverse cultures, people and landscapes, has attracted 90 million tourists to the country, almost double to that of a decade ago. Due to threat of terrorism the number of foreigner tourists has gradually declined and the shock of 2013 Nanga Parbat tourist shooting has terribly adversely affected the tourism industry. As of 2016 tourism has begun to recover in Pakistan, albeit gradually.

Revenue

Although the country is a Federation with constitutional division of taxation powers between the Federal Government and the four provinces, the revenue department of the Federal Government, the Federal board of Revenue, collects almost 86% of the entire national tax collection. The Federal Board of Revenue collected 3.842 trillion rupees in taxes against the revised target of 3.935 trillion rupees in the fiscal year 2017–2018. In FY 2013, FBR tax collection was Rs. 1,946 billion. So in only 5 years it almost doubles its tax revenue which is a phenomenal achievement.

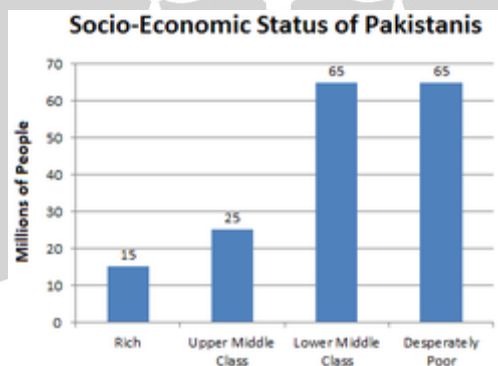
Economic Issues

Corruption

The corruption is on-going issue in the government, claiming to take initiatives against it, particularly in the government and lower levels of police forces. In 2011, the country has had a consistently poor ranking at the Transparency International's Corruption Perceptions Index with scores of 2.5, 2.3 in 2010, and 2.5 in 2009 out of 10.

Poverty

Poverty in Pakistan has fallen dramatically, independent bodies supported estimates of a considerable fall in the statistic by the 2007-08 fiscal year, when it was estimated that 17.2% of the total population lived below the poverty line. The declining trend in poverty as seen in the country during the 1970s and 1980s was reversed in the 1990s by poor federal policies and rampant corruption.



Circular debt and spending priorities

Since before the collapse of the USSR in 1991, progressive economic liberalization has been carried out by the government both at the provincial and the national level. Pakistan has achieved FDI of almost \$8.4 billion in the financial fiscal year of 2006–07, surpassing the government target of \$4 billion. Despite this milestone achievement, the Foreign investment had significantly declined by 2010, dropping by ~54.6% due to Pakistan's military operations, financial crises, law and order situation in Karachi, according to the Bank of Pakistan. From the 2006 estimate, the Government expenditures were ~\$25 billion.

Debt Servicing

As of August 2020, public debt and liabilities of Pakistan is estimated to be about Rs44.2 trillion/US\$270 billion which are 107 percent of gross domestic product (GDP) of

Pakistan.] About Rs18.17 trillion is owed by the government to domestic creditors, and about Rs13.78 trillion is owed by Public Sector Enterprises (PSEs).

Similarly, as of March 2020, external Debt of Pakistan is now around US\$112 billion. Pakistan owes US\$11.3 billion to Paris Club, US\$27 billion to multilateral donors, US\$5.765 billion to International Monetary Fund, and US\$12 billion to international bonds such as Eurobond, and sukuk. About 15% of the external debt which is estimated around US\$17.1 billion (6.15% of GDP) is owed to China due to China-Pakistan Economic Corridor.

Contemporary Pakistan

Following are the factors/ issues which make importance of Pakistan in contemporary age.

Institutional Problems

Geo-Politics of Pakistan and Conflict

Geographically, Pakistan is at the hub of the Central, South and West Asia, which gives strategic importance to it the shortest access to the sea, further enhances its importance for all the landlocked countries of Central Asia. Central Asian countries possess lots of natural resources, which attract the world super powers to establish their influence in the region.

Governance and Conflicts

It is well recognized and accepted that good governance relates to political and institutional processes and outcomes that are considered necessary to attain the goals of peace, progress and development. Good governance is a continuous process where public institutions play the role of a catalyst and major players because they manage public resources and ensure the fulfillment of basic human rights without corruption, abuse and exploitation.

Other Problems

1. Poor housing quality and affordability

The State Bank of Pakistan has estimated that across all major cities, urban housing was approximately 4.4 million units short of demand in 2015. If current trends continue, Pakistan's five largest cities will account for 78 percent of the total housing shortage by 2035. When provided, housing is often low quality. Pakistan ranks eighth among the ten countries that collectively hold 60 percent of substandard housing across the world (United Nations MDG Indicators; McKinsey Global Institute Analysis). Karachi, one of the world's fastest growing megacities with an estimated 17 million people, ranks second lowest in South Asia and sixth lowest in the world on the Economist Intelligence Unit's 2015 livability index.

2. Water and Sanitation

In most Pakistani cities, water is supplied only four to 16 hours per day and to only 50 percent of the population. According to the Asian Development Bank (ADB), 90 percent of water supply schemes are unsafe for drinking. Shared latrines among households are common in

cities and access to solid waste management services remains low. In the most population-dense areas of Karachi, one toilet is shared between twenty people. The World Bank estimates that poor sanitation costs Pakistan around 3.9 percent of GDP; diarrhea-related death and disease among children under five being the largest contributors.

3. Transportation

Karachi is the only megacity in the world without a mass public transport system. Meanwhile, the cost of private transportation is estimated to have increased by over 100 percent since 2000. Those who cannot afford the commute are forced to live in unplanned, inner-city neighborhoods.



Increased private transport on urban roads has caused severe congestion. The government has responded by upgrading many urban roads. However, infrastructure for the most common modes of travel in Pakistan – such as pavements for walking or special lanes for bicycles – either does not exist or has been encroached upon. This is despite the fact that 40 percent of all trips in Lahore are made on foot.

Mobility in urban Pakistan is also harder for women. An ADB study found that almost 85 percent of working-women surveyed in Karachi were harassed in 2015.

4. Health

Better health outcomes in urban areas are explained by improved access to private health care in cities. But with the exception of immunisation, the utilisation of basic public health services is very low in urban areas.

Poor health outcomes are also a direct impact of the pollution caused by rapid urbanisation. According to the World Health Organization, Karachi is the most polluted city in Pakistan with air twice as polluted as that of Beijing. The level of pollution in Punjab's major cities is also three to four times higher than that determined safe by the UN.

A lack of clean drinking water remains a major contributor to the high mortality rate of children under five years old. According to Save the Children's 2015 Annual Report, poor urban children in Pakistan are more likely to die young than rural children.

The challenge of global warming has also intensified in cities. A rise in concrete structures across the urban landscape is increasing temperatures within cities. In 2015, an unanticipated heat wave in Karachi led to almost 1,500 deaths.

5. Education

Although urban areas have higher student enrollment and better learning outcomes, close to 10 percent of all children in Lahore, Karachi and Peshawar remain out of school. Like healthcare, better education in cities is explained by the private sector. From 2001 to 2014, the share of primary enrollment in urban private schools rose from 25 percent to 40 percent.

6. Land Management

Outdated land use regulation and building codes, the absence of a unified land record system and patchy data on land use result in poor urban land management. One consequence is extreme inequality in land use. In Karachi, 36 percent of the population lives in formally planned settlements that consume 77 percent of the city's residential land, where urban density can be as low as 84 people per hectare. On the other hand, Karachi's many informal settlements have densities of more than 4,500 per hectare. These hugely varying densities have resulted in unequal access to vital urban services.

Society and Social Structure in Pakistan

Society in Pakistan

PAKISTANI SOCIETY IS ETHNICALLY DIVERSE yet overwhelmingly Muslim. It is largely rural yet beset by the problems of hyperurbanization. Since its independence in 1947, Pakistan has enjoyed a robust and expanding economy--the average per capita income in the mid-1990s approached the transition line separating low-income from middle-income countries--but wealth is poorly distributed. A middle-class is emerging, but a narrow stratum of elite families maintains extremely disproportionate control over the nation's wealth, and almost one-third of all Pakistanis live in poverty. It is a male-dominated society in which social development has lagged considerably behind economic change, as revealed by such critical indicators as sanitation, access to health care, and literacy, especially among females. Increasing population pressure on limited resources, together with this pattern of social and economic inequity, was causing increased disquietude within the society in the early 1990s.

Although in the mid-1980s the World Bank forecast the advancement of Pakistan to the ranks of middle-income countries, the nation had not quite achieved this transition in the mid-1990s. Many blame this fact on Pakistan's failure to make significant progress in human development

despite consistently high rates of economic growth. The annual population growth rate, which hovered between 3.1 and 3.3 percent in the mid-1990s, threatens to precipitate increased social unrest as greater numbers of people scurry after diminishing resources.

Population

In early 1994, the population of Pakistan was estimated to be 126 million, making it the ninth most populous country in the world. Its land area, however, ranks thirty-second among nations. Thus Pakistan has about 2 percent of the world's population living on less than 0.7 percent of the world's land. The population growth rate is among the world's highest, officially estimated at 3.1 percent per year, but privately thought to be closer to 3.3 percent per year by many planners involved in population programs. Pakistan's population is expected to reach 150 million by 2000 and to account for 4 percent of the world's population growth between 1994 and 2004. Pakistan's population is expected to double between 1994 and 2022.

Population Distribution and Density

More than half of Pakistan's population is below the age of fifteen; nearly a third is below the age of nine. For cultural reasons, enumerating the precise number of females has been difficult--and estimates of the percentage of females in the population range from 47.5 percent in the 1981 census to 48.3 percent in the 1987-88 Labour Force Survey. Pakistan is one of the few countries in the world with an inverse sex ratio: official sources claim there are 111 men for every 100 women. The discrepancy is particularly obvious among people over fifty: men account for 7.1 percent of the country's total population and women for less than 5 percent. This figure reflects the secondary status of females in Pakistani society, especially their lack of access to quality medical care.

Population Planning Policies and Problems

Following Zia ul-Haq's coup d'état in 1977, government population planning efforts were almost halted. In 1980 the Population Division, formerly under the direction of a minister of state, was renamed the Population Welfare Division and transferred to the Ministry of Planning and Economic Development. This agency was charged with the delivery of both family planning services and maternal and child health care. This reorganized structure corresponded with the new population planning strategy, which was based on a multifaceted community-based "cafeteria" approach, in cooperation with Family Welfare Centres (essentially clinics) and Reproductive Health Centres (mostly engaged in sterilizations). Community participation had finally become a cornerstone of the government's policy, and it was hoped that contraceptive use would rise dramatically. The population by 1980 had exceeded 84 million.

In preparing the Sixth Five-Year Plan (1983-88), the government projected a national population of 147 million in the year 2000 if the growth rate were to be a constant at 2.8 percent per year, and of 134 million if the rate were to decline to the desired 2.1 percent per year by then. By the Seventh Five-Year Plan (1988-93) period, the multipronged approach initiated in the 1980s had increased international donor assistance and had begun to enlist

local NGOs. Efforts to improve maternal and child health were coupled with education campaigns. Because of local mores concerning modesty, the government avoided explicit reference to contraceptive devices and instead focused its public education efforts on

Migration and Growth of Major Cities

Diverse in nature

Pakistani cities are diverse in nature. The urban topology reflects the varied political history within the region. Some cities dating from the medieval era, such as Lahore and Multan, served as capitals of kingdoms or small principalities, or they were fortified border towns prior to colonial rule. Other precolonial cities, such as Peshawar, were trading centers located at strategic points along the caravan route. Some cities in Sindh and Punjab centered on cottage industries, and their trade rivaled the premier European cities of the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries.

Karachi's rapid growth

Karachi's rapid growth has been directly related to the overall economic growth in the country. The partition of British India into the independent states of Pakistan and India prompted an influx into Pakistan of Muslim merchants from various parts of the new, Hindu-majority India. These merchants, whom sociologist Hamza Alavi refers to as *salariat*, had money to invest and received unusual encouragement from the government, which wanted to promote the growth of the new state.

The nation's capital

The nation's capital was situated in Karachi at independence. General Mohammad Ayub Khan, who assumed power in 1958, aspired, however, to build a new capital that would be better protected from possible attack by India and would reflect the greatness of the new country. In 1959 Ayub Khan decided to move the capital to the shadow of the Margalla Hills near Pakistan's third largest city, Rawalpindi. The move was completed in 1963, and the new capital was named Islamabad (abode of Islam). The population of Islamabad continues to increase rapidly, and the official 1991 estimate of just over 200,000 has probably been much exceeded.

HEALTH AND WELFARE

There has been significant improvement in some health indicators, even though the population grew by 130 percent between 1955 and 1960 and between 1985 and 1990, and increasing from 50.0 million in 1960 to 123.4 million in 1993. For example, in 1960 only 25 percent of the population had purportedly safe water (compared with 56 percent in 1992). In addition, average life expectancy at birth was 43.1 years in 1960; in 1992 it had reached 58.3 years

Maternal and Child Health

The inadequate health care and the malnutrition suffered by women are reflected in infant and child health statistics. About 30 percent of babies born between 1985 and 1990 were of low birth weight. During 1992 ninety-nine of every 1,000 infants died in their first year of life. Mothers breast-feed for a median of twenty months, according to a 1986-90 survey, but generally withhold necessary supplementary foods until weaning. In 1990 approximately 42 percent of children under five years of age were underweight. In 1992 there were 3.7 million malnourished children, and 652,000 died. Poor nutrition contributes significantly to childhood morbidity and mortality.

Pakistan Social Structure and Organization

Four major impacts of Pakistani feudalism which have encouraged political authoritarianism have been identified by the critics.

1. First, the vast economic and social gulf between the landholding elite and the rural masses has effectively depoliticized the latter. Votes are sought in an atmosphere of coercive localism. The rural poor dare not oppose their landlord patrons.
2. Second, the perpetuation of feudal power relations has contributed to a political culture of violence and combativeness rather than cooperation.
3. Third, the parochial and personalized character of Pakistan politics is rooted in the landlords' predominance; this is a factor in the weak political institutionalization which has hindered democratic consolidation.
4. Fourth, the landlords are concerned primarily with bolstering the local prestige rather than with pursuing a political agenda. This means that a significant fraction of the rural elite will always be prepared to lend legitimacy to authoritarian rulers. Along with a section of the ulama, landlords are on hand to join what has been derisively termed the Martial Law B Team.

Ethnicity in Pakistan

The major ethnic groups of Pakistan include Punjabis, Pashtuns, Sindhis, Saraikis, Muhajirs, Baloch, Paharis, Hindkowan s, Chitralis, Rajputs and other smaller groups. Smaller ethnic groups found throughout the nation include Kashmiris, Kalash, Siddi, Burkusho, Wakhis, Khowar, Hazara, Shina, Kalyu Baltis and Jatts.

Pakistan's census does not include the 1.7 million refugees from Afghanistan¹ mainly found in Khyber Pakhtunkhwa (KP), with significant populations in the cities of Karachi and Quetta. Most of these Afghan refugees were born in Pakistan within the last 30 years and are ethnic Pashtuns, Tajiks, Uzbeks, Baloch and Turkmen.

Punjabis

Punjabis are an Indo-Aryan ethno-linguistic group and they are the largest ethnic group in Pakistan by population, numbering approximately 110 million people and thus consisting of 50.0% of Pakistan's total population of 220 million in 2020. The Punjabis found in Pakistan belong to groups known as *biradaris* (literally 'brotherhood'), with further divisions between the *zamindar* or *qoums*, traditionally associated with agriculture, and *moeens*, traditionally associated with artisanry. Some *zamindars* are further divided into castes such as Jatt, Shaikh, Khatri, Khandowa, Gujjar, Awan, Arain and Syed. Ethnicities from neighbouring regions such as Kashmiris, Pashtuns and Baluchis also form a sizeable portion of the population of Punjab, especially in metropolises such as Lahore, Rawalpindi, Sialkot and Faisalabad.

Pashtuns

Pashtuns (also referred to as Pukhtuns), an Iranic ethno-linguistic group, are Pakistan's second largest ethnicity (consisting 15% of the population). They are native to the region known as Pashtunistan, an area west of the Indus River including the provinces of Khyber Pakhtunkhwa and northern Balochistan, southern and eastern Afghanistan.

They speak Pashto as their first language and are divided into multiple tribes such as Afridi and Yousafzai and Khattak, which are notably the main Pashtun tribes in Pakistan. They make up an estimated 35 million of Pakistan's total population.

Sindhis

The Sindhis are an Indo-Aryan ethno-linguistic group who speak the Sindhi language and are native to the Sindh province of Pakistan and they are Pakistan's third largest ethnicity (consisting 14% of the country). Sindhis are predominantly Muslim. Sindhi Muslim culture is highly influenced by Sufi doctrines and principles and some of the popular cultural icons of Sindh are Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai, Lal Shahbaz Qalandar, Jhulelal and Sachal Sarmast.

Baloch

The Baloch as an Iranic ethnic linguistic group, are principally found in the east of Balochistan province of Pakistan. Despite living south towards the Gulf of Oman and the Arabian sea for centuries, they are classified as a northwestern Iranian people in accordance to their language which belongs to the northwestern subgroup of Iranian languages.

Kashmiris

Kashmiri are a Dardic (sub grouping of Indo-Aryan) ethnic group native to the Kashmir Valley and Azad Kashmir. The majority of Kashmiri Muslims are Sunni. They refer to themselves as "Kashur" in their mother language. Kashmiri Muslims are descended from Kashmiri Hindus and are also known as 'Sheikhs' presently, the Kashmiri Muslim population is predominantly found in Kashmir Valley. Smaller Kashmiri communities also live in other regions of the Jammu and Kashmir territory.

Hazara

The Hazara people, natives to the present day Hazarajat (**Hazaristan**), are a Persian-speaking people mostly residing in all Pakistan and specially in Quetta. Some are citizens of Pakistan

while others are refugees. Genetically, the Hazara are a mixture of Turko-Mongols and Iranian-speaking peoples, and those of Middle East and Central Asia. The genetic research suggests that they are closely related to the Eurasian and the Uyghurs. The Pakistani Hazaras estimated population is believed to be more than 1,550,000

Futuristic Outlook of Pakistan

Shifting epicenter of global economic activity

Most growth over the next few decades will be in emerging markets. Asia has emerged as the new continent of growth. India and China are expected to contribute a fifth of the increase in global consumer demand over the next decade. The renewed upward trend in energy prices is creating new sources of capital in the Gulf region, with broader risk appetites than western capital. The huge natural resource endowments of Central Asian countries are being integrated into the world economy.

Globalization and Regionalization: Increasing interconnectedness and cross-border trade

World trade will rise from 61 per cent of global GDP in 2010 to an estimated 76 per cent in 2030, with intra-Asian trade rising dramatically. Vertical specialization based on resource and/ or capability-based competitive advantage, improving transport, supply chain and logistics infrastructure in the developing world will continue to feed this trend. Intra-regional trade has emerged as a major trend in the world economy. Pakistan's strategic position will not yield dividends itself. It will happen only if the requisite investments are made in regional connectivity, economic corridors, and transport and communications infrastructure, including rail and road networks to Central Asia, China and India. Equally important is support for enhancing competitiveness, promotion of export oriented industry, and development of a knowledge infrastructure.

The Knowledge Revolution

A new knowledge revolution era in technology marks a paradigm shift in development and wealth creation models, by placing knowledge as the most strategic asset in the development balance sheet. Rapid changes in technology and the introduction of disruptive new technologies are enabling and catalyzing massive increases in productivity and giving birth to entire new sectors of economic activity. Six technologies are likely to drive the future of development namely micro-electronics, computers, telecommunications, human-made materials, robotics, and biotechnology. Specifically, the growth in ICT has shifted the world to a virtual space, particularly for the delivery of services, and has given birth to a new global operating model for businesses. Today, all nations are competing to build smart and quality human resource. In the past one of the missing links in the development strategy was a disconnect between the science and technology institutions and the productive sectors. The Vision seeks to overcome this disconnect in order to encourage the identification of indigenous solutions to local problems. This will require revamping S&T organizations, especially those that may have become dormant. Possibilities of collaboration with private sector 'Hi-tech' companies to rejuvenate existing R&D setups and restructuring of ICT R&D funds to avoid duplicity will be explored. Pakistan also lags behind others in terms of innovation and patents

registered, which are the best-known measures of success in science and technology. A major thrust will be to put Pakistan on the innovation map of the world through focused research and development.

Financial and Economic Fragility

Finally, the global economy has yet to recover fully from the aftermath of the succession of crises in 2008—an energy price hike, a global food crisis, and a financial collapse in The US, triggering a global recession as well as continued pressure on financial institutions in middle income developed countries. One of the consequences of the prolonged crisis is the adverse impact on official development assistance, and more generally, on the prospects of international cooperation for development. In many ways this is a repeat of the pattern in the 1970s and 1980s, in which a similar combination of crises led to a prolonged global recession, rising indebtedness in developing countries, and the “lost decade of development”. On the positive side, however, significant progress has been made in designing new sustainable development goals (SDGs), which could provide a platform for international cooperation similar to the one provided by the MDGs.

Social Trends

In the social domain a number of demographic trends need mentioning. These include the completion of the demographic transition in the developing world, aging in the industrialized world, and accelerating urbanization and the expansion of the urban middle class.

Physical & Environmental Trends

In the physical domain, the major threat is posed by climate change, associated with increased frequency and intensity of floods and hurricanes, prolonged droughts and growing water stress, shift of disease vectors, and the frightening possibility of the melting of the Himalayan icecap. Besides this, the world has witnessed repeated energy price shocks, hinting at a future of energy scarcity. Similarly, there are growing scarcities of water for drinking as well sanitation and agriculture. There are also indications of a decline in biodiversity and key natural resources.

Climate change

The Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) showed both that the level of confidence in climate projections had risen to 95 per cent, and that climate change had already begun to impose steep social and economic costs, especially on developing countries. These costs have manifested themselves conspicuously in Pakistan, and include high intensity floods in 2010, persistent drought, the emergence of new diseases (especially dengue fever), and even an unprecedented hurricane. Equally problematic is the fact that most of the current prescriptions for addressing climate change will have the impact of raising the prices of conventional energy resources, without making renewable energy resources more affordable. Pakistan has to incorporate this information in its longer term planning process. On the one hand, there is a need to build and strengthen adaptation capacity, especially amongst the poorest and most vulnerable populations. On the other hand, there is a need to invest in renewable energy resources with a view to making them more affordable. In

this regard, the country also needs to continue its positive engagement with the international community to ensure that global climate policy is crafted with a sensitive understanding of the needs and limitations of developing countries.

Energy demand spiralling globally; all eyes turning to alternative fuels

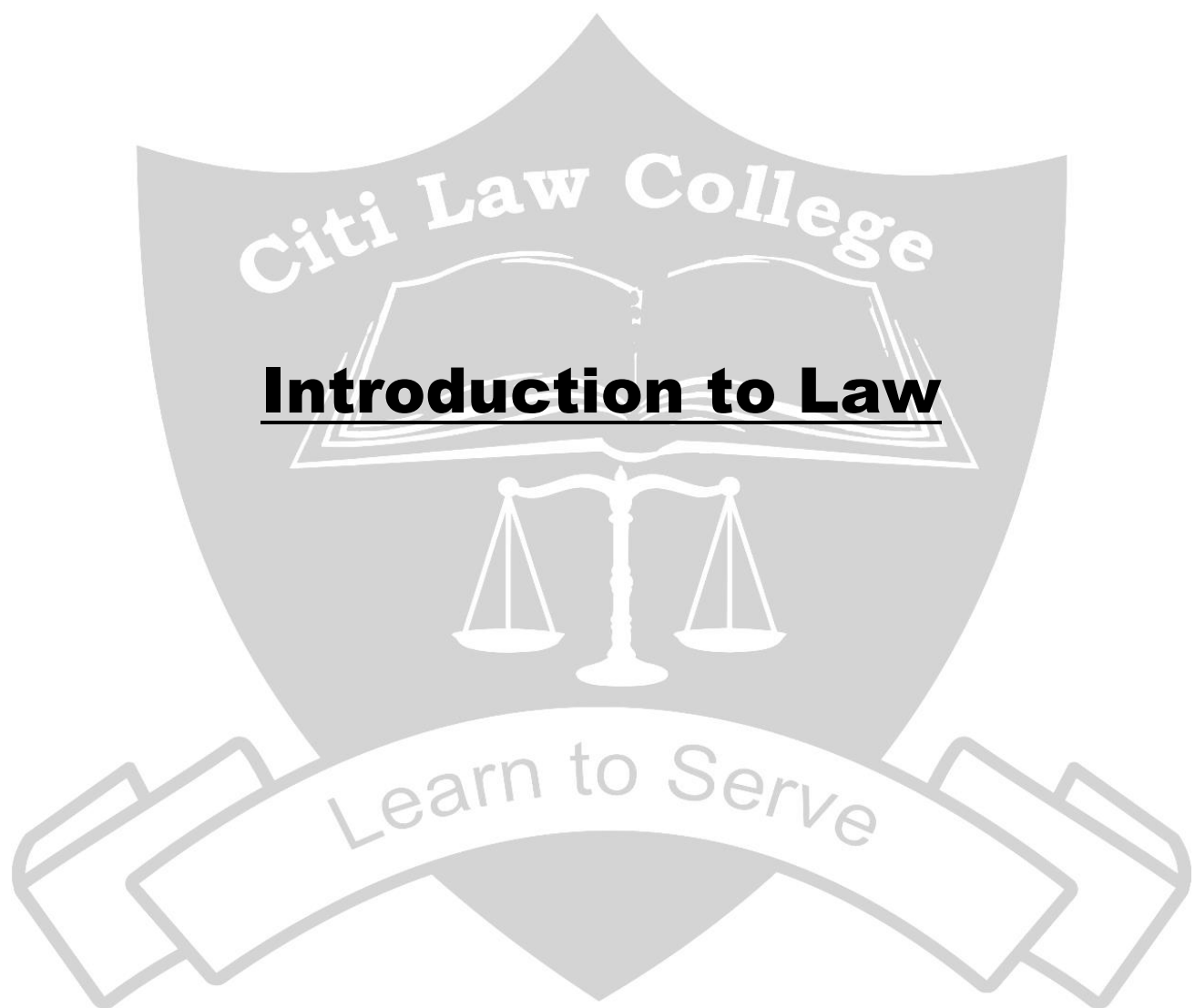
For Pakistan, the combined shortfall in energy — rising at times to 7000 megawatts— intensifies the woes of consumers, disrupts industrial and agricultural production and adds to costs making Pakistani products uncompetitive internationally. Overcoming the energy shortage will require action both on the power generation and the distribution sides. This will include investments in alternative energy. The recent inauguration of Pakistan's first solar power park is a step in this direction.

Food and water security real concerns for governments worldwide

Pakistan fares poorly with respect to indicators of food security, in spite of the strong agricultural base of the country. The Indus River system is one of the largest irrigation systems in the world and much of Punjab and Sindh consists of plains. Despite these natural endowments however Pakistan ranks a dismal 76th out of 107 countries in the Global Food Security Index. The reasons have to do with inefficiencies in food distribution, low spending on agricultural R&D and inadequate food safety nets for those in severe poverty. Once a wheat exporter, Pakistan is now in danger of failing to even meet domestic demand for wheat. Such a scenario is not sustainable given the country's growing population. Water security is becoming a major concern the world over. The World Economic Forum's Global Risks Report 2013 lists water supply crisis in the top five global risks, and the United Nations declared 2013 as the International Year of Water co-operation. Global water use over the last century has been growing at twice the rate of population increase, and will rise by another 40 per cent by 2030. Climate change is adding to the challenges. Predictions show rainfall variability alone could damage existing water infrastructure and push more than 12 million people into absolute poverty.

Sustainable practices needed to preserve the earth for the future

For Pakistan, the risk lies in environmental issues such as deforestation, unsustainable tapping of ground water, massive waste of sweet water and pollution from urban and industrial waste. Increasing international focus on environmental issues will mean that the certification of clean or sustainable practices may become the price to pay for international trade.



Introduction to Law

Introduction to Law

Definition of Law

Law is a system of rules created and enforced through social or governmental institutions to regulate behavior, with its precise definition a matter of longstanding debate. It has been variously described as a science and the art of justice. State-enforced laws can be made by a group legislature or by a single legislator, resulting in statutes; by the executive through decrees and regulations; or established by judges through precedent, usually in common law jurisdictions. Private individuals may create legally binding contracts, including arbitration agreements that adopt alternative ways of resolving disputes to standard court litigation. The creation of laws themselves may be influenced by a constitution, written or tacit, and the rights encoded therein. The law shapes politics, economics, history and society in various ways and serves as a mediator of relations between people.

Various legal systems

Legal systems vary between countries, with their differences analyzed in comparative law. In civil law jurisdictions, a legislature or other central body codifies and consolidates the law. In common law systems, judges make binding case law through precedent, although on occasion this may be overturned by a higher court or the legislature.

Scope of Law

Law's scope can be divided into two domains. Public law concerns government and society, including constitutional law, administrative law, and criminal law. Private law deals with legal disputes between individuals and/or organizations in areas such as contracts, property, torts/delicts and commercial law.

Role of Administrative Courts

This distinction is stronger in civil law countries, particularly those with a separate system of administrative courts. By contrast, the public-private law divide is less pronounced in common law jurisdictions.

Law provides a source of scholarly inquiry into legal history, philosophy, economic analysis and sociology. Law also raises important and complex issues concerning equality, fairness, and justice.

The philosophy of law is commonly known as jurisprudence. Normative jurisprudence asks "what should law be?", while analytic jurisprudence asks "what is law?"

Various definitions of law

Natural School of Law

In the natural school of thought, a court of justice decides all the laws. There are two main parts of this definition. One, to actually understand a certain law, an individual must be aware of its purpose. Two, to comprehend the true nature of law, one must consult the courts and not the legislature.

John Austin's law definition states "Law is the aggregate set of rules set by a man as politically superior, or sovereign to men, as political subjects." Thus, this definition defines law as a set of rules to be followed by everyone, regardless of their stature.

Hans Kelsen created the 'pure theory of law'. Kelsen states that law is a 'normative science'. In Kelsen's law definition, the law does not seek to describe what must occur, but rather only defines certain rules to abide by.

Friedrich Karl von Savigny gave the historical law definition. His law definition states the following theories.

- Law is a matter of unconscious and organic growth.
- The nature of law is not universal. Just like language, it varies with people and age.
- Custom not only precedes legislation but it is superior to it. Law should always conform to the popular consciousness because of customs.
- Law has its source in the common consciousness (Volkgeist) of the people.
- The legislation is the last stage of lawmaking, and, therefore, the lawyer or the jurist is more important than the legislator.

Analytical jurisprudence

One definition is that law is a system of rules and guidelines which are enforced through social institutions to govern behaviour. In *The Concept of Law* Hart argued law is a "system of rules" Austin said law was "the command of a sovereign, backed by the threat of a sanction" Dworkin describes law as an interpretive concept to achieve justice in his text titled *Law's Empire*,^[37] and Raz argues law is an "authority" to mediate people's interests.^[38] Holmes said, "The prophecies of what the courts will do in fact, and nothing more pretentious, are what I mean by the law." In his *Treatise on Law* Aquinas argues that law is a rational ordering of things which concern the common good that is promulgated by whoever is charged with the care of the community this definition has both positivist and naturalist elements.

Connection to morality and justice

Definitions of law often raise the question of the extent to which law incorporates morality. John Austin's utilitarian answer was that law is "commands, backed by threat of sanctions, from a sovereign, to whom people have a habit of obedience" Natural lawyers on the other side, such as Jean-Jacques Rousseau, argue that law reflects essentially moral and unchangeable laws of nature. The concept of "natural law" emerged in ancient Greek philosophy concurrently and in connection with the notion of justice, and re-entered the mainstream of Western culture through the writings of Thomas Aquinas, notably his *Treatise on Law*. Hugo Grotius, the founder of a purely rationalistic system of natural law, argued that law arises from both a social impulse—as Aristotle had indicated—and reason. Immanuel Kant believed a moral imperative requires laws "be chosen as though they should hold as universal laws of nature".^[44] Jeremy Bentham and his student Austin, following David Hume, believed that this conflated the "is" and what "ought to be" problem. Bentham and Austin argued for law's positivism; that real law is entirely separate from "morality" Kant was also criticized by Friedrich Nietzsche, who rejected the principle of equality, and believed that law emanates from the will to power, and cannot be labeled as "moral" or "immoral"

History of Law

Evolution in Egypt

The history of law links closely to the development of civilization. Ancient Egyptian law, dating as far back as 3000 BC, was based on the concept of Ma'at and characterised by tradition, rhetorical speech, social equality and impartiality. By the 22nd century BC, the ancient Sumerian ruler Ur-Nammu had formulated the first law code, which consisted of casuistic statements ("if ... then ..."). Around 1760 BC, King Hammurabi further developed Babylonian law, by codifying and inscribing it in stone. Hammurabi placed several copies of his law code throughout the kingdom of Babylon as stelae, for the entire public to see; this became known as the Codex Hammurabi. The most intact copy of these stelae was discovered in the 19th century by British Assyriologists, and has since been fully transliterated and translated into various languages, including English, Italian, German, and French

Old Testaments

The Old Testament dates back to 1280 BC and takes the form of moral imperatives as recommendations for a good society. The small Greek city-state, ancient Athens, from about the 8th century BC was the first society to be based on broad inclusion of its citizenry, excluding women and the slave class. However, Athens had no legal science or single word for "law" relying instead on the three-way distinction between divine law (*thémis*), human decree (*nomos*) and custom (*dike*). Yet Ancient Greek law contained major constitutional innovations in the development of democracy.

Roman law

Roman law was heavily influenced by Greek philosophy, but its detailed rules were developed by professional jurists and were highly sophisticated. Over the centuries between the rise and decline of the Roman Empire, law was adapted to cope with the changing social situations and underwent major codification under Theodosius II and Justinian I.^[63] Although codes were replaced by custom and case law during the Early Middle Ages, Roman law was rediscovered around the 11th century when medieval legal scholars began to research Roman codes and adapt their concepts to the canon law, giving birth to the *jus commune*. Latin legal maxims (called brocards) were compiled for guidance. In medieval England, royal courts developed a body of precedent which later became the common law. A Europe-wide Law Merchant was formed so that merchants could trade with common standards of practice rather than with the many splintered facets of local laws. The Law Merchant, a precursor to modern commercial law, emphasized the freedom to contract and alienability of property. As nationalism grew in the 18th and 19th centuries, the Law Merchant was incorporated into countries' local law under new civil codes. The Napoleonic and German Codes became the most influential. In contrast to English common law, which consists of enormous tomes of case law, codes in small books are easy to export and easy for judges to apply. However, today there are signs that civil and common law are converging. EU law is codified in treaties, but develops through *de facto* precedent laid down by the European Court of Justice.

Law in Indian Subcontinent & China

Ancient India and China represent distinct traditions of law, and have historically had independent schools of legal theory and practice. The *Arthashastra*, probably compiled around 100 AD (although it contains older material), and the *Manusmriti* (c. 100–300 AD) were foundational treatises in India, and comprise texts considered authoritative legal guidance. Manu's central philosophy was tolerance and pluralism, and was cited across Southeast Asia. During the Muslim conquests in the Indian subcontinent, sharia was established by the Muslim sultanates and empires, most notably Mughal Empire's Fatawa-e-Alamgiri, compiled by emperor Aurangzeb and various scholars of Islam. In India, the Hindu legal tradition, along with Islamic law, were both supplanted by common law when India became part of the British Empire. Malaysia, Brunei, Singapore and Hong Kong also adopted the common law system. The eastern Asia legal tradition reflects a unique blend of secular and religious influences. Japan was the first country to begin modernising its legal system along western lines, by importing parts of the French, but mostly the German Civil Code. This partly reflected Germany's status as a rising power in the late 19th century. Similarly, traditional Chinese law gave way to westernisation towards the final years of the Qing Dynasty in the form of six private law codes based mainly on the Japanese model of German law.

Legal System/ Procedure of Law

In general, legal systems can be split between civil law and common law systems. Modern scholars argue that the significance of this distinction has progressively declined; the numerous legal transplants, typical of modern law, result in the sharing by modern legal systems of many features traditionally considered typical of either common law or civil law. The term "civil law", referring to the civilian legal system originating in continental Europe,

should not be confused with "civil law" in the sense of the common law topics distinct from criminal law and public law.

Separation of Church & State

The third type of legal system—accepted by some countries without separation of church and state—is religious law, based on scriptures. The specific system that a country is ruled by is often determined by its history, connections with other countries, or its adherence to international standards. The sources that jurisdictions adopt as authoritatively binding are the defining features of any legal system. Yet classification is a matter of form rather than substance since similar rules often prevail.

Types of Law

Civil law is the legal system used in most countries around the world today. In civil law the sources recognized as authoritative are, primarily, legislation—especially codifications in constitutions or statutes passed by government—and custom.

Anarchist law

Anarchism has been practiced in society in much of the world. Mass anarchist communities, ranging from Syria to the United States, exist and vary from hundreds to millions. Anarchism encompasses a broad range of political philosophies with different tendencies and implementation.

Anarchist law primarily deals with how anarchism is implemented upon a society, the framework based on decentralized organizations and mutual aid, with representation by direct democracy. Laws being based upon their need A large portion of anarchist ideologies such as anarcho-syndicalism and anarcho-communism primarily focuses on decentralized worker unions, cooperatives and syndicates as the main instrument of society.

Socialist law

Socialist law is the legal systems in communist states such as the former Soviet Union and the People's Republic of China. Academic opinion is divided on whether it is a separate system from civil law, given major deviations based on Marxist–Leninist ideology, such as subordinating the judiciary to the executive ruling party.

Common law and equity

In common law legal systems, decisions by courts are explicitly acknowledged as "law" on equal footing with statutes adopted through the legislative process and with regulations issued by the executive branch. The "doctrine of precedent", or *stare decisis* (Latin for "to stand by decisions") means that decisions by higher courts bind lower courts, and future decisions of the same court, to assure that similar cases reach similar results. In contrast, in "civil law" systems, legislative statutes are typically more detailed, and judicial decisions are shorter and less detailed, because the judge or barrister is only writing to decide the single case, rather than to set out reasoning that will guide future courts.

Religious law

Religious law is explicitly based on religious precepts. Examples include the Jewish Halakha and Islamic Sharia—both of which translate as the "path to follow"—while

Christian canon law also survives in some church communities. Often the implication of religion for law is unalterability, because the word of God cannot be amended or legislated against by judges or governments.^[103] However, a thorough and detailed legal system generally requires human elaboration. For instance, the Quran has some law, and it acts as a source of further law through interpretation *Qiyas* (reasoning by analogy), *Ijma* (consensus) and precedent. This is mainly contained in a body of law and jurisprudence known as Sharia and Fiqh respectively. Another example is the Torah or Old Testament, in the Pentateuch or Five Books of Moses. This contains the basic code of Jewish law, which some Israeli communities choose to use. The Halakha is a code of Jewish law that summarizes some of the Talmud's interpretations. Nevertheless, Israeli law allows litigants to use religious laws only if they choose. Canon law is only in use by members of the Catholic Church, the Eastern Orthodox Church and the Anglican Communion.

Sharia law

Until the 18th century, Sharia law was practiced throughout the Muslim world in a non-codified form, with the Ottoman Empire's Mecelle code in the 19th century being a first attempt at codifying elements of Sharia law. Since the mid-1940s, efforts have been made, in country after country, to bring Sharia law more into line with modern conditions and conceptions. In modern times, the legal systems of many Muslim countries draw upon both civil and common law traditions as well as Islamic law and custom. The constitutions of certain Muslim states, such as Egypt and Afghanistan, recognize Islam as the religion of the state, obliging legislature to adhere to Sharia. Saudi Arabia recognizes Quran as its constitution, and is governed on the basis of Islamic law.^[115] Iran has also witnessed a reiteration of Islamic law into its legal system after 1979. During the last few decades, one of the fundamental features of the movement of Islamic resurgence has been the call to restore the Sharia, which has generated a vast amount of literature and affected world politics.

Canon law

Canon law (from Greek *kanon*, a 'straight measuring rod, ruler') is a set of ordinances and regulations made by ecclesiastical authority (Church leadership), for the government of a Christian organization or church and its members.

Legal Institutions

The main institutions of law in industrialized countries are independent courts, representative parliaments, an accountable executive, the military and police, bureaucratic organization, the legal profession and civil society itself. John Locke, in his *Two Treatises of Government*, and Baron de Montesquieu in *The Spirit of the Laws*, advocated for a separation of powers between the political, legislature and executive bodies. Their principle was that no person should be able to usurp all powers of the state, in contrast to the absolutist theory of Thomas Hobbes' *Leviathan*.^[123] Sun Yat-sen's Five Power Constitution for the Republic of China took the separation of powers further by having two additional branches of government - a Control Yuan for auditing oversight and an Examination Yuan to manage the employment of public officials. Max Weber and others reshaped thinking on the extension of state. Modern military, policing and bureaucratic power over ordinary citizens' daily lives pose special problems for accountability that earlier writers such as Locke or Montesquieu could not have foreseen. The custom and practice of the legal profession is an important part of people's

access to justice, whilst civil society is a term used to refer to the social institutions, communities and partnerships that form law's political basis.

Judiciary

Examples of UK, Australia & US

A judiciary is a number of judges mediating disputes to determine outcome. Most countries have systems of appeal courts, with an apex court as the ultimate judicial authority. In the United States, this authority is the Supreme Court; in Australia, the High Court; in the UK, the Supreme Court; in Germany, the *Bundesverfassungsgericht*; and in France, the *Cour de Cassation*. For most European countries the European Court of Justice in Luxembourg can overrule national law, when EU law is relevant. The European Court of Human Rights in Strasbourg allows citizens of the Council of Europe member states to bring cases relating to human rights issues before it. Some countries allow their highest judicial authority to overrule legislation they determine to be unconstitutional. For example, in *Brown v. Board of Education*, the United States Supreme Court nullified many state statutes that had established racially segregated schools, finding such statutes to be incompatible with the Fourteenth Amendment to the United States Constitution.

Legislature

Prominent examples of legislatures are the Houses of Parliament in London, the Congress in Washington D.C., the Bundestag in Berlin, the Duma in Moscow, the Parlamento Italiano in Rome and the *Assemblée nationale* in Paris. By the principle of representative government people vote for politicians to carry out *their* wishes. Although countries like, Greece, Sweden and China are unicameral, most countries are bicameral, meaning they have two separately appointed legislative houses. In the 'lower house' politicians are elected to represent smaller constituencies.

The 'upper house'

The 'upper house' is usually elected to represent states in a federal system (as in Australia, Germany or the United States) or different voting configuration in a unitary system (as in France). In the UK the upper house is appointed by the government as a house of review. One criticism of bicameral systems with two elected chambers is that the upper and lower houses may simply mirror one another. The traditional justification of bicameralism is that an upper chamber acts as a house of review. This can minimize arbitrariness and injustice in governmental action.

Making of Law

To pass legislation, a majority of the members of a legislature must vote for a bill (proposed law) in each house. Normally there will be several readings and amendments proposed by the different political factions. If a country has an entrenched constitution, a special majority for changes to the constitution may be required, making changes to the law more difficult. A government usually leads the process, which can be formed from Members of Parliament (e.g.

the UK or Germany). However, in a presidential system, the government is usually formed by an executive and his or her appointed cabinet officials (e.g. the United States or Brazil)

Executive

The executive in a legal system serves as the centre of political authority of the State. In a parliamentary system, as with Britain, Italy, Germany, India, and Japan, the executive is known as the cabinet, and composed of members of the legislature. The executive is led by the head of government, whose office holds power under the confidence of the legislature. Because popular elections appoint political parties to govern, the leader of a party can change in between elections.

Although the role of the executive varies from country to country, usually it will propose the majority of legislation, and propose government agenda. In presidential systems, the executive often has the power to veto legislation. Most executives in both systems are responsible for foreign relations, the military and police, and the bureaucracy. Ministers or other officials head a country's public offices, such as a foreign ministry or defense ministry. The election of a different executive is therefore capable of revolutionizing an entire country's approach to government.

Sources of Law

The term law has many definitions, in layman's language law means "The system of rules which a particular country or community recognizes as regulating the actions of its members and which it may enforce by the imposition of penalties". The famous jurist Salmond defines law as "Law is the body of principles recognized and applied by the state in the administration of justice".

One must know as to what are the sources of law and on which of the sources one can rely upon for justice. It is very important to understand that the law of every land is derived from the sources so one has to know what are the sources of law before getting into any concept of law

India derives its laws from a variety of sources and they are as follows:

1. Legislation as one of the sources of law-

The term 'Legislation' is derived from the Latin words 'Legis' meaning regulation and 'latum' which means making. The legislation is considered as a primary source of law in India, legislation has a wide ambit and it is used to regulate, authorize, to enable, to provide funds, to prescribe, to sanction, grant, declare or to restrict. The legislature is framed by the parliament in the form of new acts, new laws, repeal and amendment of old laws. The procedure for this is prescribed in the constitution of India.

So legislation as one of the sources of law is further divided into two parts :

Supreme legislation: It is the parent law that originates from the sovereign strength of the nation. It cannot be repealed, annulled or managed by other legislative authority.

Subordinate Legislation: The subordinate legislation are dependent on the supreme legislation for their validity and existence.

2. Customs as one of the other sources of law-

Customs is an established mode of social behavior within a community. It is one of the main and oldest sources of law in India. According to Roscoe Pound, customary regulations comprise of:

- Law formulated by customs of famous motion
- Law formulated through judicial choice
- Law formulated with the aid of doctrinal writings and clinical discussions for legal standards
- Ingredients of customs as one of the sources of law in India:
 - Antiquity
 - Continuous
 - Obligatory in nature
 - Consistency
 - Reasonability
 - Peaceful Enjoyment
 - Certainty

2. Judicial Precedents

Judicial Precedents is another one of the most important sources of law in India/Pakistan and Other Indian Subcontinent Countries

Judicial Precedents lays on the doctrine 'stare decisis', it simply means adhering and relying on earlier decisions made by the courts; i.e., for instance if high court decides on a particular case and a similar situation comes to the lower court, the lower court will treat the case alike and pass the judgement same as done by the high court. This is because the high court has set a precedent for the lower court and the lower courts are bound to follow it.

The decisions of the lower bench can always be overruled by the higher bench by giving valid reasons. In *Union of India Vs K.S. Subramaniam* [3] - AIR 1976 SC 2435- In this case when there was an inconsistency in the decision between the benches of the same court, the decision of the larger bench was followed.

- Key principles of judicial precedent
- Consistency
- Hierarchy
- Bound by their own decisions

4. Justice, Equity and Good Conscience

This principle is applied only in cases where the judges feel that the law seems to be inadequate or out of date or unjust. In such cases the judges make decisions based on equity, good conscience, fairness and justice using their commonsense.

5. Conventional Law - International Treaties/Agreements /Conventions

With the emergence of globalization, there was an increased need for world countries to interact with one another, this means that there's a requirement for world countries to be bound by a single set of laws. Such laws are made by the way of treaties, agreements, etc., and these are harmonized by the United Nations. Countries who are members of the United

Nations have to accept such rules or norms laid down by the organization, and abide by such statutes or rules and also such members also have to frame laws in conformity with such rules. And hence International conventions have an important role in framing new laws or making amendments to existing laws.

Therefore, all the above mentioned sources completely answer to the question as to what are the sources of law. All these sources plays a very important role in different changes and decisions made for justice.

Islamic Sources of Law

The Quran قرآن

The two primary and transmitted sources of Islamic Law are the Qur'ān and the Sunna (Prophetic traditions and practices). This combination of the two crucial sources of Islamic Law is seen as a link between reason and revelation. Indeed, the marriage between these two sources has resulted in the emergence of Islamic Law. The Qur'ān is considered the most sacred and important source of Islamic Law, which contains verses related to god, human beliefs and how a particular believer should live in this worldly life. The human conduct that should govern the believers' life, which is clearly stated in the Qur'ān, is indeed the domain of Islamic Law. The Qur'ān comprises about five hundred legal verses that explicitly set out legal rulings that need to be applied by all believers. Even non-legal verses in the Qur'ān do support the establishment of the legal system of Islam, as will be expounded by Professor Almatroudi.

The Sunnah سنت

The second primary and transmitted source of Islamic Law is the Sunna, which represents the Prophet Mohammad's (peace be upon him) deeds and sayings, which were formulated in the form of narratives and became known as Prophetic Ḥadīth .The Sunna also comprises a number of legal provisions that must be applied by all believers of Islam. Certain legal rulings in these transmitted Islamic sources are definitive. In other words, the law-giver (God) has formulated them in such a way which does not need personal legal reasoning and is not open to different interpretations as they are clear and definitive. Conversely, there exists a corpus of legal contents stated in both the Qur'ān and the Sunna, the application of which requires reasoning. The law-giver who has formulated certain legal rulings stated in the Qur'ān and the Sunna in such a way that never accepts two different interpretations, could have also done the same with regard to the rest of legal contents laid down in the aforementioned Islamic sources.

Legal Reasoning (ijtihād) اجتہاد

Legal reasoning (ijtihād) is an un-transmitted source of Islamic Law, whose emergence is due to the fact that Islamic jurists could not always interpret the language of the Qur'ān and that of the Sunna in the same way arriving at the same legal result, rather they frequently differ in their interpretations of certain Qur'ānic verses and particular Prophetic traditions, reaching

different legal rulings. This is owing to the fact that the law-giver has deliberately set out a number of legal rulings in these two revealed legal sources, and formulated them in such a way that makes them open to reasoning and juristic interpretation so that the law becomes legally valid on a permanent basis and is susceptible to development as new legal issues emerge. Hallaq points out that certain terms in the Qur'ān and the Sunna can have more than a single legal interpretation. Metaphorical lexical items, for instance, need to be interpreted to convey specific legal meanings. Hence, Muslim jurists develop a corpus of certain linguistic rules in an attempt to surmount such problems. One crucial aim of exercising his personal reasoning is that the jurist would establish a particular legal norm for each legal case he confronts.

Consensus (ijmā') اجماع

Related to legal reasoning is another source of Islamic Law known as consensus (ijmā'), which refers to the agreement of jurists, living in a particular age, on a specific legal ruling of a particular act, after being subject to different legal views and opinions. Consensus has to be founded on the Qur'ān and/or the Sunna. Consensus plays a crucial role in ratifying and ascertaining legal rules which may have been grounded in probable evidence. If there exists a particular consensus on specific probable evidence, such evidence can never be subject to error. Consequently, it can safely be argued that consensus is chiefly based on rules which are grounded in particular methods of reasoning. However, it is worth noting that the legal cases upon which there has been consensus are indeed limited within Islamic Law, though such legal cases have acquired special importance on account of being subject to this extraordinary source of law. Such legal cases cannot be stated here due to space restrictions.

Analogy (qiyās) قياس

Also, categorized within the realm of legal reasoning is another legal source of Islam referred to as analogy (qiyās). This source of law is not deemed a material legal source, the legal content of which can be depended upon by the jurists. However, it is a legal source that can offer ways which can be utilised by the jurist to reach legal norms. Analogy is composed of four crucial components. The first is represented by the new case which demands a legal ruling; the implementation of one of the five legal norms stated above. The second is the original case which may be mentioned in the Qur'ān or the Sunna, or accepted by consensus. The third deals with the attribute to the new case as well as the original one. The last component resides in the legal norm that serves as a legal ruling in the original case, and is applied to the new case on account of the de facto similarity between the original as well as the new cases

Preference (istihsān) استحسان

Preference (istihsān) is a particular legal practice exercised by jurists, which falls within the sphere of legal reasoning. It is deemed an inference made on the basis of a revealed text, though gives rise to a different legal result from that arrived at by analogy. The main difference between analogy and preference may lie in the fact that while the reasoning behind analogy falls chiefly within the large body of the law with no exception allowed, the reasoning underpinning preference, on the other hand, is to find a particular exception through the jurist's selection of a revealed text that allows this very exception. A clear example for this is a person who has eaten in the day of Ramadan mistakenly. The reasoning behind analogy

dictates that the person has to compensate for that day as there is no exception as to whether the person has eaten in the day of Ramadan intentionally or otherwise. Conversely, reasoning via preference does not demand compensation since the person has not eaten intentionally, rather he has done so mistakenly. It is worth pointing out that the reasoning underpinning preference is based on a valid Prophetic tradition and does therefore supersede the reasoning behind the drawn analogy. Not all preference exceptions are founded on revealed texts, some of which are based on consensus, while others are grounded in the principle of necessity.

Public Interest (istiṣlāḥ) اصطلاح

Public interest (istiṣlāḥ) is another legal practice which is contained within legal reasoning. The reasoning of public interest does not seem to be founded on the Qur'ān. Public interest, however, plays an undeniably crucial role in the determination of the ratio's suitability peculiar to analogy. This strong connection between the ratio and suitability has resulted in considering public interest by some jurists an extension to analogy. There are, indeed, certain universal principles on which the Sharī'a is generally based. These reside in the protection of one's life, his/her mind, offspring, religion as well as property. If the feature of public interest in a particular case is in line with these universal principles, the reasoning in accordance with public interest must be exercised. It is worth stating that the element of universality is of paramount importance as the law intends to serve interests of Muslims at large.

Interpretation of Islamic Law اصول فقہ

As stated above, the two primary sources of Islamic Law are the Qur'ān and the Sunna. These two revealed legal sources have contained certain definitive legal rulings, which require no legal reasoning from the part of the jurist, rather need to be applied as they are. The Qur'ān and the Sunna have also comprised legal contents, the implementation of which demands legal reasoning from the side of the jurist. This legal reasoning points to the maximum effort exerted by the jurist to interpret and apply the rules pertaining to the origins of jurisprudence ('uṣūl alfiqh), in quest for the appropriate legal ruling that best fits the legal case in question. In deed, a huge bulk of Islamic Law is subject to legal reasoning and is dependent thereon. This is owing to the fact that only limited legal rulings stated in the Qur'ān and the Sunna have a definitive nature, and the rest of the legal body of Islamic Law is contingent upon the jurists' legal reasoning.

FUNCTIONS OF LAW

According to Holland, the function of law is to ensure the well-being of the society. Thus it is something more than an institution for the protection of individuals' rights.

Roscoe Pound attributed four major functions of law, namely:

- (1) Maintenance of law and order in society;
- (2) To maintain status quo in society;
- (3) To ensure maximum freedom of individuals; and
- (4) To satisfy the basic needs of the people. He treats law as a species of social engineering.

The Realist view about the purpose and function of law is that for the pursuit of highest good of the individuals and the state as such controlling agency.

The object of law is to ensure justice. The justice may be either distributive or corrective. **Distributive** justice seeks to ensure fair distribution of social benefits and burden among the members of the community. **Corrective** justice, on the other hand, seeks to remedy the wrong. Thus if a person wrongfully takes possession of another's property, the court shall direct the former to restore it to the latter. This is corrective justice. Rule of law is *sine qua non* for even-handed dispensation of justice. It implies that every one is equal before law and law extends equal protection to everyone; judges should impart justice without fear or favour and like cases should be treated alike.

Law and Other Needs

It must, however, be stated that justice alone is not the only goal of law. The notion of law represents a basic conflict between two different needs, namely, the need for uniformity and the need for flexibility. Uniformity is needed to provide certainty and predictability. That is, where laws are fixed and generalized, the citizen can plan his/her activities with a measure of certainty and predict the legal consequence of his/her conducts. This is even more necessary in case of certain laws, notably, the law of contract or property. Uniformity and certainty of rules of law also bring stability and security in the social order.

Today the followings are taken as important functions of law.

A- Social control

Members of the society may have different social values, various behaviours and interests. It is important to control those behaviours and to inculcate socially acceptable social norms among the members of the society. There are informal and formal social controls. Law is one of the forms of formal social controls. As to Roscoe Pound, law is a highly specialized form of social control in developed politically organized society. Lawrence M. Freedman explains the following two ways in which law plays important role in social control: first, law clearly specifies rules and norms that are essential for the society and punishes deviant behaviour. "Secondly, the legal system carries out many rules of social control. Police arrest burglars, prosecutors prosecute them, courts sentence them, prison guards watch them, and parole boards release them.

B) Dispute settlement

Disputes are UN avoidable in the life of society and it is the role of the law to settle disputes. Thus, disagreements that are justiceable will be resolved by law in court or out of court using alternative dispute settlement mechanisms.

C) Social change

A number of scholars agree about the role of law in modern society as instrument to social change. Law enables us to have purposive, planned, and directed social change **Flexibility** of law provides some measure of discretion in law to make it adaptable to social conditions. If law is rigid and unalterable, it may not respond to changes spontaneously which may lead to

resentment and dissatisfaction among the subjects and may even result into violence or revolution. Therefore, some amount of flexibility is inevitable in law.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN LAW AND STATE

What relationship do you envisage between law and state? There are three main legal theories with regard to the relationship between law and state. They are: the state is superior to and creates law; law precedes the state and binds it when it comes into existence; law and the state are the same thing looked at from different points of view.

Austin View

Austin explains that state is superior to and creates law when he defines law as the command of the sovereign. According to Austin, there must be a political society of 'considerable' numbers, and a superior in that society who is habitually obeyed by the bulk of the members of that community. Within this community, the superior has a sovereign power to lay down the law. Collectively considered, the sovereign is above the law, but a member of the legislature is individually bound by the law.

The theory of sovereignty

The theory of sovereignty has been of service as a formal theory, but some writers go farther and seek to justify sovereignty as a moral necessity instead of as a convenient hypothesis. For example, Hegelianism treats the state as a supreme moral end being a value in itself; it is not bound by the rules of ethics that apply to individual person. This theory 'grants to state absolutism the virtue of moral truth'. 'The state is the divine idea as it exists on earth'.

The second theory

According to the second theory, law may bind the State. The sovereign has absolute power over positive law, but is bound by *ius naturale*. Ihering considered that law in the full sense was achieved only when it bound both ruler and ruled. Ihering regards state as the maker of law and he argues that law is the intelligent policy of power, and it is easier to govern if the state voluntarily submits to the law it has created. Then, Jellinek develops this doctrine into a theory of auto limitation-the State is the creator of law, but voluntarily submits to it.

Nature of State

What is state? The normal marks of a state are a fixed territory, population, and competence to rule which is not derived from another state. Kantorowicz defines the state as a juristic person endowed with the right to impose its will on the inhabitants of a given territory, of which right it cannot by law be deprived without its own consent.

Law as instrument of State

It may be argued that the law being an instrument of the state is created and established along with it. No state has ever been without system of law; however crude it may have been. In like manner, system of law has been without a state defining either directly (i.e., through enactments) or indirectly (through recognition) the law is and assuring its validity and guarantying its endowment through the special machinery at the disposal of the state only. That is why law is generally defined as a set of general statements aimed at regulating choices

in possible human behaviour that is defined or recognized, published and sanctioned warded by the state.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN LEGAL NORMS AND NON-LEGAL NORMS

According to Black's Law Dictionary norm is "a model or standard accepted (voluntarily or involuntarily) by society or other large group, against which society judges someone or something". Thus, norm connotes a standard that is accepted by society voluntarily or in voluntarily. The society can judge someone or something against the norm. For example, the standard to determine a given behaviour as right or wrong is norm.

We have seen that one of the natures of law is that it is a norm. The general statement of a legal norm is not a mere rendition. In fact, all social norms differ from the mere resumption of a philosopher or a doctor, etc. True such propositions made by philosophers and medical doctors may be useful addresses; but nobody is bound to follow them. In contrary, legal norms are binding. In fact, the essence of the legal norms is that members of the society are bound to behave in accordance with the law. That is why we usually refer to statements about what will happen to an addressee who behave in accordance with the law attached to the general statements. These are what we call sanctions. Sanctions answer the question: How does the community or group in case the norms are not obeyed? What are the guarantees to ensure that the norm will be adhered to? Sanctions are various types but their common objective is to form norm and to follow the prescribed norms. Even permissive norms are protected by sanctions; though in their case the sanction is addressed to the person permitted to do the thing but to the rest of the world commanding everybody else not to interfere with the rights of the person so entitled.

We can observe that law is a set of norms regulating, in a general and binding manner, the general behaviour of person, there by organizing, protecting and develop certain social relations. Do you agree with this? Why or why not?

Both legal and non-legal norms are normatives, that means both need to create and develop human behaviours.

Non-legal norms have been inexistent before state is created while legal norms have come into existence with the coming into being of state. Thus, societies have been used to be regulated by non-legal norms fo0r example, at the time of communal society. But legal norms were gradually emerged.

What are the relations between legal and non-legal norms?

Concept of rule of Law

What is the distinction between law and ethics? Law tends to prescribe what is considered necessary for the given time and place. Ethics concentrates on the individual rather than upon society; law is concerned with the social relationships of the society rather than the individual excellence of their characters and conduct. Ethics must consider the motive for action as all-important; whereas law is concerned mainly with requiring conduct to comply with certain standards, and it is not usually concerned with the motives of persons. It is too narrow, however, to say that ethics deals only with the individual, or that ethics treats only of the 'interior' and law only of the 'exterior', for ethics in judging acts must consider the

consequences that flow from them and it is not possible to analyse the ethical duties of person without considering his/her obligations to his/her fellows or his/her place in society. It is equally misleading to concentrate upon those aspects of the law which are concerned directly with conduct and with 'exterior' factors in person's social relations, to the exclusion of those which, explicitly or implicitly, are aimed at intention, motive and the ends which persons seek.

In general, there are similarities and differences between law and morality. Their similarities, according to Hart are:

- 1) They are alike binding regardless of the consent of individual bound and supported by serious social pressure for conformity;
- 2) Compliance with both legal and moral obligation is considered as a minimum contribution to social life. This is because as we have already discussed compliance with legal norms enable the members of the sociality to live together. The same holds true with respect to moral obligations.
- 3) Both law and morals include rules that are essential for life in general even though they also include special rules applicable to special activities. Thus, the members of the society are required to comply with those rules to live together. Thus, prohibition to violence to person and property are found in both law and morals.

What are the differences between law and positive morality?

Various tests have been suggested to distinguish a rule of law from a mere dictate of positive morality. Firstly, a rule of law is imposed by the State; secondly, while there may be a sanction behind the rules of positive morality, it is not applied by organized machinery, nor is it determined in advance... Third, some argue that the content of law is different from that of social morality: but, while it is true that law, having a different object, covers a different scope, there is no immutable boundary to its operation. Law, positive morality, and ethics are overlapping circles, which can never entirely coincide, but the hand of person can move them and determine the content that is concerned to all or two or confined to one. Ethics condemns murder, because it is once accepted by both positive morality and law.

Positive morality & Rule of Law

We do find a close relationship between the rules of law and rules of positive morality, for the latter determine the upper and lower limits of the effective operation of law. If the law lags behind popular standards it falls into disrepute; if the legal standards are too high, there are great difficulties of enforcement... The close relationship between law and the life of the community is shown by the historical school, and if we admit that positive morality influences law, it must be recognized that law in its turn plays a part in fixing the moral standards of the average person. Fourthly, it has been suggested that the method of expression should be used as a test-rules of positive morality lack precision, whereas rules of law are expressed in technical and precise language. There is much truth in this, but the distinction is only relative; for early law is fluid and vague, and some social usages may be expressed very precisely, for example, the modes of address of those bearing titles.

The Objective (Purpose) of Law

The law serves many purposes. Four principal ones are establishing standards, maintaining order, resolving disputes, and protecting liberties and rights.

1) Establishing Standards

The law is a guidepost for minimally acceptable behavior in society. Some activities, for instance, are crimes because society (through a legislative body) has determined that it will not tolerate certain behaviors that injure or damage persons or their property. For example, under a typical state law, it is a crime to cause physical injury to another person without justification—doing so generally constitutes the crime of assault.

2) Maintaining Order

This is an offshoot of establishing standards. Some semblance of order is necessary in a civil society and is therefore reflected in law. The law—when enforced—provides order consistent with society's guidelines. Wildlife management laws, for example, (such as West Virginia's prohibition against using ferrets for hunting,) were first passed in an effort to conserve game that had nearly been hunted into extinction during the nineteenth century. Such laws reflect the value society places on protecting wildlife for future generations to enjoy.

3) Resolving Disputes

Disputes are unavoidable in a society comprised of persons with different needs, wants, values, and views. The law provides a formal means for resolving disputes—the court system.

4) Protecting Liberties and Rights

The constitutions and statutes of the United States and its states provide for various liberties and rights. One function of the law is to protect these various liberties and rights from violations or unreasonable intrusions by persons, organizations, or government. For example, subject to certain exceptions, the First Amendment to the Constitution prohibits the government from making a law that prohibits the freedom of speech. Someone who believes that his free speech rights have been prohibited by the government may pursue a remedy by bringing a case in the courts.



The Rule of Law

Legal Principle

The rule of law is the legal principle that law should govern a nation, as opposed to being governed by arbitrary decisions of individual government officials. It primarily refers to the influence and authority of law within society, particularly as a constraint upon behavior, including behavior of government officials. The phrase can be traced back to sixteenth-century Britain, and in the following century, the Scottish theologian Samuel Rutherford used the phrase in his argument against the divine right of kings. The concept, if not the phrase, was familiar to ancient philosophers such as Aristotle, who wrote, "Law should govern."

Application of Rule of Law

Rule of law implies that every citizen is subject to the law, including lawmakers themselves. In this sense, the rule of law stands in contrast to an autocracy, dictatorship, or oligarchy, in which the rulers are held above the law. Lack of the rule of law can be found in both democracies and dictatorships, because of neglect or ignorance of the law, for example, and the rule of law is more apt to deteriorate if a government has insufficient corrective mechanisms for restoring it. If you've ever read *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* (or seen the movie), and you can recall the Queen of Hearts yelling, "Off with their heads!" at the slightest infraction or offense, you have some idea of what it would be like to live in a society that is not governed by the rule of law.

Rule of Law & Developed Countries

The rule of law system in the United States is established in the U.S. Constitution. The U.S. Constitution itself became the law of the land well over two hundred years ago, and the tenets set forth in the document remain in full force today. The way in which the Constitution is applied, though, has always been subject to court interpretation. As circumstances and public opinion evolve through the years, so too do the interpretations offered by the courts. From time to time, it even becomes necessary to amend the Constitution to keep pace with changes in the country's beliefs and values.

Origins of Law

The establishment of a system of laws was not invented by the founding fathers of the United States. The idea of written laws goes back to ancient Mesopotamian culture that prospered long before the Bible was written or the civilizations of the Greeks or Romans flowered. In fact, the oldest known evidence of a law code is tablets from the ancient city Ebla (Tell Mardikh in modern-day Syria). They date to about 2400 BCE. However, most scholars credit Hammurabi's Code as the origin of written laws and a formal legal system. If you haven't heard of Hammurabi, you have certainly heard one of his laws: "An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth." Hammurabi's Code, a collection of 282 laws inscribed on an upright stone pillar, contains many fundamental legal concepts we would recognize in today's legal system. In fact, Hammurabi's reasoning for creating this code is not that far removed from the rationale for our current legal system. In his preface, Hammurabi writes that he sets forth these laws "to bring about the rule of righteousness in the land, to destroy the wicked and the evil-doers; so that the strong should not harm the weak."

Territorial Nature of Law

INTRODUCTION

The propositions that the system of law belongs to a defined territory means that it applies to all persons; in that territory it acts things and events. It's not applicable to people elsewhere, things acting events. Since one sovereign State cannot legislate for the territories of another sovereign State, its legislation must generally be confined to the territorial limits of the state alone in its operation and its system of law should be confined to its application to persons, things, acts and events within a defined territory. Thus, law in general is of a territorial nature. Law enforcement is territorial just as a law is territorial. Law territoriality flows from the world's political division. No state allows other states to exercise governmental powers within it. Law enforcement is confined to the territorial boundaries of the enforcing state. The principle of territoriality (also the principle of territoriality) is a principle of public international law under which a sovereign state can prosecute criminal offences committed within its borders. The principle also bars States from exercising jurisdiction outside their borders, unless they have jurisdiction under other principles, such as the principle of nationality, the passive personality, the protective principle, and possibly universal jurisdiction

Meaning:

The arguments that the rule of law belongs to a given jurisdiction implies that it applies to all individuals, actions within that jurisdiction activities and incidents. It does not refer to people, actions or incidents anywhere.

Jurisdiction of a Territory by Common Law Nature:

A state has authority over all of its people and stuff. Such individuals may be natural born subjects or naturalised subjects or domiciled aliens. Their authority therefore applies to their possession of their territorial waters and ports and to any actions performed in their respect. To give an example: Criminal law of England applies to all crimes perpetrated in England and not outside its jurisdiction. Additionally, England courts prescribe the rule of marriage, divorce and inheritance only to individuals associated with England's territories.

Intellectual Property Laws:

Intellectual property rights are territorially restricted by their very existence. Goods are manufactured where the corporate strategies of today's internationally competing companies see expense, productivity and quality advantages. There aren't inherently intellectual property rights in all producing nations. The conflict between the requirements of a global economy and the territorial nature of intellectual property rights is characteristic of the pressure that globalization exercises on traditional notions of territorially delimited jurisdictions, an issue by no means limited to or a specialty of intellectual property law.

Criminal Law:

The solution is in extradition procedure. States sign treaties with each one under which one agrees to return to the individuals of the other state located in their territories that are wanted for crimes committed in the jurisdiction of the treaty party. The territorial principle takes the view that jurisdiction is illegal. In Roman theory, the victim is the determinant rather than the location of perpetrator. A nation, in that view shall have authority over its nationality wherever it may be and hence, anywhere he could be held responsible for his criminal misdeed delivered. Depends on where the perpetration took place. That is, the country in which territory where the crime has been committed retains authority over the offence. It's a rational consequence of the law enforcement definition as a means to keep the calm.

Civil Cases:

In civil cases extradition is not done. However, in their own courts, each government has a redress for civil wrongs anywhere they may be perpetrated.

Jurisdiction of English Court:

English Courts, though committed elsewhere than in England, apply English law. This extraterritorial jurisdiction extends to crimes such as piracy, treason, murder or bigamy, committed in any peace of the world by British subject. Likewise, in Pakistan, the PPC provides that if Pakistani subjects commit any known offence in any part of the world, they may be tried in Pakistani courts on the basis of evidence.

Conflict of law:

There is another exception is the territorial nature of law, that is conflict of law found in every system of law. Example If two persons makes make a contract in France and one of them sues on it in an England Court the issue will be decided by England court by applying French Law to meet the ends of justice. In Penn v. Baltimore, the English Court took up a case concerning a contract entered into in Canada and decided against the defendant, and passed the enforced decree.

Exceptions to the nature of Territorial Law:

- 1. International Law:** International law is territorial law, and the general ruler is excepted. States are entitled to exercise control of their armed forces as they enter a foreign territory.
- 2. England Civil Law:** It applies to all British subjects wherever they may be committed in respect of Bigamy, Treason or Murder offences. The state's civil law sometimes does not apply to every person living in the state. Example is Foreign-country ambassadors have certain special rights and are usually exempt from the civil law process.
- 3. The Procedural Law:** Procedural law is in no respect territorial. The law of procedure in England is the law of England courts rather than England's law.

Extra territorial Law Enforcement:

A law is said to have extra territorial operation if it is also enacted outside the territorial boundaries within it. By default, of C.P.C. and Cr. P.C., the courts of Pakistan are allowed to prosecute a crime perpetrated on land and on high seas outside of Pakistan. The above is known as the Admiralty Authority and is founded on the idea that a high seas ship is a floating island belonging to the country whose flag it is flying.

CONCLUSION:

In conclusion, one can clearly infer that, broadly speaking, the essence of the law is territorial but not a rigid regulation; certain cases are not based on the jurisdiction by statute and determined not by reference to geographical requirements, but by reference to the specific credentials of people with authority, such as ethnicity, race or religion. Salmond's inference is that since the legal area is not a theoretically essential aspect of the concept of law, it is possible that a system of law is applied which is restricted Salmond 's point is that since the area of law is not a theoretically necessary aspect of the definition of law, a system of law is imaginable whose scope is limited and defined not by reference to geographical requirements but by reference to the particular characteristics of the people over whom authority is exercised, such as ethnicity, race or religion. One solution is harmonization or integration of the law, regionally or internationally.

Concept of Legal Rights

Legal rights are, clearly, rights which exist under the rules of legal systems or by virtue of decisions of suitably authoritative bodies within them. They raise a number of different philosophical issues.

- (1) Whether legal rights are conceptually related to other types of rights, principally moral rights;
- (2) What the analysis of the concept of a legal right is;
- (3) What kinds of entities can be legal right-holders?
- (4) Whether there any kinds of rights which are exclusive to, or at least have much greater importance in, legal systems, as opposed to morality;
- (5) What rights legal systems ought to create or recognize. Issue
- (6) Is primarily one of moral and political philosophy, and is not different in general principle from the issue of what duties, permissions, powers, etc, legal systems ought to create or recognize. It will not, therefore, be addressed here.

Are Legal Rights Conceptually Related to Other Types of Rights?

The position of many important writers on legal rights is difficult to ascertain on this point, because it is not one they addressed directly. For example, confined his discussion entirely to legal rights and never mentioned moral ones. Hart did write about moral rights as well as legal ones but not in a way that allows for much direct comparison. Bentham wrote extensively about the analysis of legal rights, but, notoriously, thought that the idea of natural moral rights was conceptual nonsense.

Whilst not necessarily sharing Mill's view about all rights being related to fundamentals of well-being, many contemporary writers, agree that the core concept of a right is something common to law and morality, though some have argued that jurisprudential writers, particularly Hohfeld, provide a better and clearer starting-point for general analysis than previous writers in moral philosophy. The view that the core concept is common to both would appear to be consistent with maintaining that, nevertheless, in terms of justification in practical reasoning, legal rights should be based on moral ones.

The Conceptual Analysis of Legal Rights

Not all philosophers have agreed that rights can be fully analyzed. For example, argued that the task is impossible because the concept of a right is as basic as any of the others, such as duty, liberty, power, etc (or any set of them) into which it is usually analysed. He agreed, however, that rights can in part be explained by reference to such concepts. White's approach, based largely on close linguistic analysis, has remained something of a minority one.

The remaining approaches can be categorized in different ways, but a main division is between those who think that rights are singled out by their great weight as practical reasons, and those who think that rights are not special in this regard, but instead are to be analyzed into duties, permissions, powers, etc, or some combination of these, perhaps with the addition of other conditions.

What Kinds of Entities can be Legal Right-holders?

There has been much dispute amongst philosophers as what to kinds of entities can be right-holders. Corresponding pretty much to the general dispute about the very nature of rights, some have argued that any entity which would benefit from the performance by others of legal duties can be a right-holder; others that it has to be an entity which has interests; others that it has to be an entity capable of exercising some kind of control over the relevant legal machinery. And there are variants of all these positions.

Exclusivity of Rights

The issue here is: whether there are any fundamental aspects of rights which are exclusive to, or at least more important in, legal systems, as opposed to morality.

Five particular sub-issues may be raised here.

Primary and Remedial Rights

Remedial rights are those which arise because of a breach of a primary one. Clearly they arise also outside the law, for example a duty to apologize or make amends even if there is no legal obligation to do so. But legal remedial duties are generally more precise, and, just by the nature of law, institutionalized.

Remedies for Breach of Right

It is one of the main functions of legal systems to provide remedies for breach (or sometimes anticipated breach) of the primary rights which they confer. So if someone is injured by the negligence of another there will usually arise a remedial right to damages. If he is killed there may arise in members of his family an independent right to compensation, and so on. Other types of remedial right can include those for court orders requiring the party at fault to execute, or refrain from, some particular course of action, very often that which they had a duty to do, or to refrain from, under the primary right. Such rights are often very complex in the detail. For example the measure of damages may be different if the wrongful act is a tort/delict, as opposed to a breach of contract. Likewise, in many systems, some remedies must be granted as a matter of right whilst others are at the discretion of the court. By way of illustration of the remedies in the two British legal systems, reference may be made to Lawson and Walker.

Nature of Remedial Rights

A related, more controversial, point is as to whether criminal, as opposed to civil, law confers any legal rights on the citizens protected by it. The orthodox view is that it does not, although there may well be a parallel civil right. Take the case of someone who is wrongfully assaulted. In most legal systems this will be both a crime and a tort/delict. The civil law clearly gives a remedial right, eg. to sue for damages. But since, in most jurisdictions, it is mainly (and sometimes exclusively) the state which decides whether to prosecute for the criminal aspect, the more usual view is that the citizen has no legal right corresponding to the criminal aspect.

Conditional Rights

In the case of many legal rights a condition has to be satisfied for their possession or exercise. This, in itself, does not make legal rights different from many moral ones. Just as one has a legal right to damages for assault only if one has been assaulted, one has a moral one to an apology for being insulted only if one has been insulted. But legal rights can give rise to more complicated situations, which rarely arise in morality.

Some Examples

In the above examples we can say that the right-token, as opposed to the right-type, comes into existence only when the condition for its instantiation is triggered. But legal systems sometimes say that the right-token exists before one of the conditions for the exercise of the right exists. Essentially, it is the difference between saying “if p , X has a right to A ” and “ X has a right, if p , to A .” In the latter case the implication is that the right-token exists now, not just that it will exist. Why should we say this? One proposed answer is that legal systems, unlike morality, have devised sets of rules for transmission of rights even before the triggering condition for the exercise of the right has arrived.

Property Rights

A further particular kind of legal rights, or group of rights, which has received an increasing amount of attention from theorists is that of property rights. Discussion of this belongs more properly to that of property itself — see the entry on property. Only some very brief points will be made here.

The first is as to whether property rights, and hence the concept of property, are essentially legal in their nature, or whether they are more general social phenomena which are simply recognised and protected by law in all modern societies. According to Bentham (1843) “... there is no natural property ... property is entirely the creature of the law.” Bentham’s argument is essentially that what we mean by property is security of expectation in being able to keep, sell, use, etc, objects, and only the law can guarantee such security.

Subjective Rights

The above account of rights has been written largely from the point of view of Anglo-American law and philosophy. It should, however, be mentioned that there is one aspect of legal rights which is to be found amongst the European Continental writers, but of which there is no trace in the Anglo-American tradition. That is the description of rights as being ‘subjective’ (*droits subjectifs*; *subjektive Rechte*).

In French and in German the same word (*droit*, *Recht*) serves as the noun which refers both to rules of law and the rights which are created by them, and therefore disambiguation is required.

In French law the distinction is drawn by distinguishing between *le Droit objectif* (the noun spelt with a capital according to some, but not all, writers) and *les droits subjectifs*. (For general discussions see, for example, However, French law seems at the same time to confine the term ‘*droits subjectifs*’ to a sub-class of legal rights, namely rights which are primarily those of private citizens, eg to make a will or contract. The term appears not to extend to such

rights as those of a government agency owning property or a government minister making a legal order under delegated powers.

Means of Conferring Legal Rights

Many of the issues relating to this are not confined to rights, but are shared with duties and powers, so only a brief outline will be given.

Constitution & Fundamental Rights

In most modern legal systems certain fundamental rights are conferred by the constitution. This usually gives them a certain degree of priority over competing legal considerations, but this can vary from system to system. Sometimes constitutional rights will have an absolute priority over any other consideration not itself based on a constitutional right. Sometimes they will merely favour one legal outcome rather than another, without dictating it.

Constitutions will vary, too, as to whether certain rights are 'entrenched' or not. Entrenchment can be absolute, in which case the rights cannot be removed or altered by any constitutional means (as is the case with some of the 'basic rights' in the German Constitution), or it can be relative, requiring only a more onerous procedure than that for normal legislation (as with the Constitution of the USA.).

Human Rights & International Law

Constitutions will also vary on the extent to which human rights recognized under international law or treaty are recognized in national law. For example, in some countries in Europe, the European Convention on Human Rights, and decisions of the European Court of Human Rights thereon, are incorporated into national law and override any national law inconsistent with them. In others, such as the United Kingdom, the courts have, so far as possible, to interpret legislation to be consistent with the Convention, but have no power to strike it down even if they find it to be clearly inconsistent.

Legislation by the State

Other rights can be conferred by normal legislation or by common law (ie. the tradition of judge-made law). One interesting point is that, arguably, many legal rights are conferred by no positive law, but arise simply from the absence of any law to the contrary. That is, it is probably a practical necessity that every legal system has an unwritten 'closure rule' to the effect that whatever is not prohibited is permitted. If some types of rights are essentially permissions, then many such rights arise in this way. In most legal systems my right to cross the street, for example, is of this nature. Probably no positive law will say that I can do so, and possibly no more general enacted right will imply it.



Jammu and Kashmir Studies

مطالعہ جموں و کشمیر

History of Kashmir

The history of Kashmir is intertwined with the history of the broader Indian subcontinent and the surrounding regions, comprising the areas of Central Asia, South Asia and East Asia. Historically, Kashmir referred to the Kashmir Valley. Today, it denotes a larger area that includes the Indian-administered union territories of Jammu and Kashmir (which consists of Jammu and the Kashmir Valley) and Ladakh, the Pakistan-administered territories of Azad Kashmir and Gilgit–Baltistan, and the Chinese-administered regions of Aksai Chin and the Trans-Karakoram Tract.

Emerging with Different religions

In the first half of the 1st millennium, the Kashmir region became an important centre of Hinduism and later of Buddhism; later in the ninth century, Shaivism arose. Islamization in Kashmir took place during 13th to 15th century and led to the eventual decline of the Kashmir Shaivism in Kashmir. However, the achievements of the previous civilizations were not lost.

First Muslim ruler

In 1339, Shah Mir became the first Muslim ruler of Kashmir, inaugurating the Shah Mir dynasty. For the next five centuries, Muslim monarchs ruled Kashmir, including the Mughal Empire, who ruled from 1586 until 1751, and the Afghan Durrani Empire, which ruled from 1747 until 1819. That year, the Sikhs, under Ranjit Singh, annexed Kashmir. In 1846, after the Sikh defeat in the First Anglo-Sikh War, the Treaty of Lahore was signed and upon the purchase of the region from the British under the Treaty of Amritsar, the Raja of Jammu, Gulab Singh, became the new ruler of Kashmir. The rule of his descendants, under the paramountcy (or tutelage) of the British Crown, lasted until 1947, when the former princely state became a disputed territory, now administered by three countries: India, Pakistan, and the People's Republic of China.

Etymology

According to folk etymology, the name "Kashmir" means "desiccated land" (from the Sanskrit: *Ka* = water and *shimeera* = desiccate).^[2] In the *Rajatarangini*, a history of Kashmir written by Kalhana in the mid-12th century, it is stated that the valley of Kashmir was formerly a lake. According to Hindu mythology, the lake was drained by the great rishi or sage, Kashyapa, son of Marichi, son of Brahma, by cutting the gap in the hills at Baramulla (*Varaha-mula*). When Kashmir had been drained, Kashyapa asked Brahmins to settle there. This is still the local tradition, and in the existing physical condition of the country, we may see some ground for the story which has taken this form. The name of Kashyapa is by history and tradition connected with the draining of the lake, and the chief town or collection of dwellings in the valley was called *Kashyapa-pura*, which has been identified with *Kaspapyros* of Hecataeus (*apud* Stephanus of Byzantium) and *Kaspatyros* of Herodotus (3.102, 4.44). Kashmir is also believed to be the country meant by Ptolemy's *Kaspeiria*. Cashmere is an archaic spelling of Kashmir, and in some countries it is still spelled this way.

Histography

Nilmata Purana (compiled c. 500–600 CE) contains accounts of Kashmir's early history. However, being a Puranic source, it has been argued that it suffers from a degree of inconsistency and unreliability. Kalhana's *Rajatarangini* (River of Kings), all the 8000 Sanskrit verses of which were completed by 1150 CE, chronicles the history of Kashmir's dynasties from mythical times to the 12th century. It relies upon traditional sources like *Nilmata Purana*, inscriptions, coins, monuments, and Kalhana's personal observations borne out of political experiences of his family. Towards the end of the work mythical explanations give way to rational and critical analyses of dramatic events between 11th and 12th centuries, for which Kalhana is often credited as India's first historian. During the reign of Muslim kings in Kashmir, three supplements to *Rajatarangini* were written by Jonaraja (1411–1463 CE), Srivara, and Prajyabhatta and Suka, which end with Akbar's conquest of Kashmir in 1586 CE. The text was translated into Persian by Muslim scholars such as Nizam Uddin, Farishta, and Abul Fazl. *Baharistan-i-Shahi* and Haidar Mailk's *Tarikh-i-Kashmir* (completed in 1621 CE) are the most important texts on the history of Kashmir during the Sultanate period. Both the texts were written in Persian and used *Rajatarangini* and Persian histories as their sources.

Early History

From 3000 BC (قبل مسیح)

Earliest Neolithic sites in the flood plains of Kashmir valley are dated to c. 3000 BCE. Most important of these sites are the settlements at Burzahom, which had two Neolithic and one Megalithic phases. First phase (c. 2920 BCE) at Burzahom is marked by mud plastered pit dwellings, coarse pottery and stone tools. In the second phase, which lasted till c. 1700 BCE, houses were constructed on ground level and the dead were buried, sometimes with domesticated and wild animals. Hunting and fishing were the primary modes of subsistence though evidence of cultivation of wheat, barley, and lentils have also been found in both the phases. In the megalithic phase, massive circles were constructed and grey or black burnish replaced coarse red ware in pottery during the later Vedic period, as kingdoms of the Vedic tribes expanded, the Uttara–Kurus settled in Kashmir.

Porus fight with Alexander

In 326 BCE, Porus asked Abisares, the king of Kashmir, to aid him against Alexander the Great in the Battle of Hydaspes. After Porus lost the battle, Abhisares submitted to Alexander by sending him treasure and elephants during the reign of Ashoka (304–232 BCE), Kashmir became a part of the Maurya Empire and Buddhism was introduced in Kashmir. During this period, many stupas, some shrines dedicated to Shiva, and the city of Srinagari (Srinagar) were built. Kanishka (127–151 CE), an emperor of the Kushan dynasty, conquered Kashmir and established the new city of Kanishkapur. Buddhist tradition holds that Kanishka held the Fourth Buddhist council in Kashmir, in which celebrated scholars such as Ashvagoshā, Nagarjuna and Vasumitra took part. By the fourth century, Kashmir became a seat of learning for both Buddhism and Hinduism. Kashmiri Buddhist missionaries helped spread Buddhism to Tibet and China and from the fifth century CE, pilgrims from these countries started visiting Kashmir. Kumārajīva (343–413 CE) was among the renowned Kashmiri scholars who traveled to China. He influenced the Chinese emperor Yao Xing and spearheaded translation of many Sanskrit works into Chinese at the Chang'an monastery.

Hepthalites conquered Kashmir

Hepthalites (White Huns) under Toramana crossed over the Hindu Kush mountains and conquered large parts of western India including Kashmir. His son Mihirakula (c. 502–530 CE) led a military campaign to conquer all of North India. He was opposed by Baladitya in Magadha and eventually defeated by Yasodharman in Malwa. After the defeat, Mihirakula returned to Kashmir where he led a coup on the king. He then conquered Gandhara where he committed many atrocities on Buddhists and destroyed their shrines. Influence of the Huns faded after Mihirakula's death. After seventh century, significant developments took place in Kashmiri Hinduism. In the centuries that followed, Kashmir produced many poets, philosophers, and artists who contributed to Sanskrit literature and Hindu religion. Among notable scholars of this period was Vasugupta (c. 875–925 CE) who wrote the *Shiva Sutras* which laid the foundation for a monistic Shaiva system called Kashmir Shaivism. Dualistic interpretation of Shaiva scripture was defeated by Abhinavagupta (c. 975–1025 CE) who wrote many philosophical works on Kashmir Shaivism. Kashmir Shaivism was adopted by the common masses of Kashmir and strongly influenced Shaivism in Southern India.

Establishment of Karkota Empire

In the eighth century, the Karkota Empire established themselves as rulers of Kashmir. Kashmir grew as an imperial power under the Karkotas. Chandrapida of this dynasty was recognized by an imperial order of the Chinese emperor as the king of Kashmir. His successor Lalitaditya Muktapida led a successful military campaign against the Tibetans. He then defeated Yashovarman of Kanyakubja and subsequently conquered eastern kingdoms of Magadha, Kamarupa, Gauda, and Kalinga. Lalitaditya extended his influence of Malwa and Gujarat and defeated Arabs at Sindh. After his demise, Kashmir's influence over other kingdoms declined and the dynasty ended in c. 855–856 CE. Utpala dynasty founded by Avantivarman followed the Karkotas. His successor Shankaravarman (885–902 CE) led a successful military campaign against Gurjaras in Punjab. Political instability in the 10th century made the royal body guards (Tantrins) very powerful in Kashmir. Under the Tantrins, civil administration collapsed and chaos reigned in Kashmir till they were defeated by Chakravarman. Queen Didda, who descended from the Hindu Shahis of Kabul on her mother's side, took over as the ruler in second half of the 10th century. After her death in 1003 CE, the throne passed to Lohara dynasty.^[38] During the 11th century, Mahmud of Ghazni made two attempts to conquer Kashmir. However, both his campaigns failed because he could not siege the fortress at Lohkot.

Rulers of Kashmir

Prelude and Kashmir Sultanate (1346–1580s)

The oppressive taxation, corruption, internecine fights and rise of feudal lords (*Damaras*) during the unpopular rule of the Lohara dynasty (1003–1320 CE) paved the way for foreign invasions of Kashmir. Suhadeva, last king of the Lohara dynasty, fled Kashmir after Zulju (Dulacha), a Turkic–Mongol chief, led a savage raid on Kashmir. Rinchana, a Tibetan Buddhist refugee in Kashmir, established himself as the ruler after Zulju. Rinchana's conversion

to Islam is a subject of Kashmiri folklore. He was persuaded to accept Islam by his minister Shah Mir, probably for political reasons. Islam had penetrated into countries outside Kashmir and in absence of the support from Hindus, who were in a majority, Rinchana needed the support of the Kashmiri Muslims. Shah Mir's coup on Rinchana's successor secured Muslim rule and the rule of his dynasty in Kashmir. In the 14th century, Islam gradually became the dominant religion in Kashmir. With the fall of Kashmir, a premier center of Sanskrit literary creativity, Sanskrit literature there disappeared. Islamic preacher Sheikh Nooruddin Noorani, who is traditionally revered by Hindus as Nund Rishi, combined elements of Kashmir Shaivism with Sufi mysticism in his discourses. The Sultans between 1354 and 1470 CE were tolerant of other religions with the exception of Sultan Sikandar (1389–1413 CE). Sultan Sikandar imposed taxes on non-Muslims, forced conversions to Islam, and earned the title *But-Shikan* for destroying idols. Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin (c. 1420–1470 CE) invited artists and craftsmen from Central Asia and Persia to train local artists in Kashmir. Under his rule the arts of wood carving, papier-mâché, shawl and carpet weaving prospered.^[49] For a brief period in the 1470s, states of Jammu, Poonch and Rajauri which paid tributes to Kashmir revolted against the Sultan Hajji Khan. However, they were subjugated by his son Hasan Khan who took over as ruler in 1472 CE. By the mid 16th century, Hindu influence in the courts and role of the Hindu priests had declined as Muslim missionaries immigrated into Kashmir from Central Asia and Persia, and Persian replaced Sanskrit as the official language. Around the same period, the nobility of Chaks had become powerful enough to unseat the Shah Mir dynasty.



Silver sasnu of the Kashmir Sultan Shams al-Din Shah II (ruled 1537–38). During the Sultanate period, the Kashmir sultans issued silver and copper coins. The silver coins were square and followed a weight standard unique to Kashmir of between 6 and 7 gm. This coin weighs 6.16 gm.

Mughal general Mirza Muhammad Haidar Dughlat, a member of ruling family in Kashgar, invaded Kashmir in c. 1540 CE on behalf of emperor Humayun. Persecution of Shias, Shafi'is and Sufis and instigation by Suri kings led to a revolt which overthrew Dughlat's rule in Kashmir.

Mughals (1580s–1750s)

Kashmir did not witness direct Mughal rule till the reign of Mughal badshah (emperor) Akbar the Great, who visited the valley himself in 1589 CE. Akbar conquered Kashmir by deceit, and later added it in 1586 to his Afghan province Kabul Subah, but Shah Jahan carved it out as a separate subah (imperial top-level province), with seat at Srinagar. During successive Mughal emperors many celebrated gardens, mosques and palaces were constructed. Religious

intolerance and discriminatory taxation reappeared when Mughal emperor Aurangzeb ascended to the throne in 1658 CE. After his death, the influence of the Mughal Empire declined.

In 1700 CE, a servant of a wealthy Kashmir merchant brought *Mo-i Muqqadas* (the hair of the Prophet PBUH), a relic of Muhammad, to the valley. The relic was housed in the Hazrat Bal Shrine on the banks of Dal Lake. Nadir Shah's invasion of India in 1738 CE further weakened Mughal control over Kashmir.

Sikh Rule (1820 to 1846)

After four centuries of Muslim rule under the Mughals and the Shah Mir Dynasty, Kashmir fell to the conquering armies of the Sikhs under Ranjit Singh of Punjab. As the Kashmiris had suffered under the Afghans, they initially welcomed the new Sikh rulers. However, the Sikh governors turned out to be hard taskmasters, and Sikh rule was generally considered oppressive, protected perhaps by the remoteness of Kashmir from the capital of the Sikh Empire in Lahore. The Sikhs enacted a number of anti-Muslim laws, which included handing out death sentences for cow slaughter, closing down the Jamia Masjid in Srinagar, and banning the *azaan*, the public Muslim call to prayer. Kashmir had also now begun to attract European visitors, several of whom wrote of the abject poverty of the vast Muslim peasantry and of the exorbitant taxes under the Sikhs. High taxes, according to some contemporary accounts, had depopulated large tracts of the countryside, allowing only one-sixteenth of the cultivable land to be cultivated.^[54] However, after a famine in 1832, the Sikhs reduced the land tax to half the produce of the land and also began to offer interest-free loans to farmers; Kashmir became the second highest revenue earner for the Sikh empire. During this time Kashmiri shawls became known worldwide, attracting many buyers especially in the west.

Earlier, in 1780, after the death of Ranjit Deo, the Raja of Jammu, the kingdom of Jammu (to the south of the Kashmir valley) was also captured by the Sikhs and afterwards, until 1846, became a tributary to the Sikh power Ranjit Deo's grandnephew, Gulab Singh, subsequently sought service at the court of Ranjit Singh, distinguished himself in later campaigns, especially the annexation of the Kashmir valley, and, for his services, was appointed governor of Jammu in 1820. With the help of his officer, Zorawar Singh, Gulab Singh soon captured for the Sikhs the lands of Ladakh and Baltistan to the east and north-east, respectively, of Jammu.

Dogra Rule (1846 to 1947)

The First Anglo-Sikh War

In 1845, the First Anglo-Sikh War broke out, and Gulab Singh "contrived to hold himself aloof till the battle of Sobraon (1846), when he appeared as a useful mediator and the trusted advisor of Sir Henry Lawrence. Two treaties were concluded. By the first the State of Lahore (*i.e.* West Punjab) handed over to the British, as equivalent for (rupees) ten million of indemnity, the hill countries between Beas and Indus; by the second the British made over to Gulab Singh for (Rupees) 7.5 million all the hilly or mountainous country situated to the east of Indus and west of Ravi" (*i.e.* the Vale of Kashmir). The Treaty of Amritsar freed Gulab Singh from obligations towards the Sikhs and made him the Maharajah of Jammu and Kashmir. The Dogras' loyalty came in handy to the British during the revolt of 1857 which challenged British rule in India. Dogras refused to provide sanctuary to mutineers, allowed English women and

children to seek asylum in Kashmir and sent Kashmiri troops to fight on behalf of the British. British in return rewarded them by securing the succession of Dogra rule in Kashmir. Soon after Gulab Singh's death in 1857, his son, Ranbir Singh, added the emirates of Hunza, Gilgit and Nagar to the kingdom.

Princely State of Kashmir and Jammu

The *Princely State of Kashmir and Jammu* (as it was then called) was constituted between 1820 and 1858 and was "somewhat artificial in composition and it did not develop a fully coherent identity, partly as a result of its disparate origins and partly as a result of the autocratic rule which it experienced on the fringes of Empire. It combined disparate regions, religions, and ethnicities: to the east, Ladakh was ethnically and culturally Tibetan and its inhabitants practised Buddhism; to the south, Jammu had a mixed population of Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs. In the heavily populated central Kashmir valley, the population was overwhelmingly *Sunni* Muslim, however, there was also a small but influential Hindu minority, the Kashmiri brahmins or pandits; to the northeast, sparsely populated Baltistan had a population ethnically related to Ladakh, but which practised *Shi'a* Islam; to the north, also sparsely populated, Gilgit Agency, was an area of diverse, mostly *Shi'a* groups; and, to the west, Poonch was Muslim, but of different ethnicity than the Kashmir valley.

Despite being in a majority the Muslims were made to suffer severe oppression under Hindu rule in the form of high taxes, unpaid forced labor and discriminatory laws. Many Kashmiri Muslims migrated from the Valley to Punjab due to famine and policies of Dogra rulers. The Muslim peasantry was vast, impoverished and ruled by a Hindu elite. The Muslim peasants lacked education, awareness of rights and were chronically in debt to landlords and moneylenders, and did not organize politically until the 1930s.



1909 Map of the Princely State of Kashmir and Jammu. The names of different regions, important cities, rivers and mountains are underlined in red.

At the Time of Independence 1947

Ranbir Singh's grandson Hari Singh, who had ascended the throne of Kashmir in 1925, was the reigning monarch in 1947 at the conclusion of British rule of the subcontinent and the subsequent partition of the British Indian Empire into the newly independent Dominion of India and Dominion of Pakistan. An internal revolt began in the Poonch region against oppressive taxation by the Maharaja. In August, Maharaja's forces fired upon demonstrations in favour of Kashmir joining Pakistan, burned whole villages and massacred innocent people. Rulers of Princely States were encouraged to accede their States to either Dominion – India or Pakistan, taking into account factors such as geographical contiguity and the wishes of their people. In 1947, Kashmir's population was "77% Muslim and 20% Hindu". To postpone making a hurried decision, the Maharaja signed a standstill agreement with Pakistan. The War Broke out and Mujahdeen With Pakistan Army conquered a large area . And Azad Government of State of Jammu and Kashmir established on 24th October 1947.

Post 1947 Scenario

In early 1948, India sought a resolution of the Kashmir Conflict at the United Nations. Following the set-up of the United Nations Commission for India and Pakistan (UNCIP), the UN Security Council passed Resolution 47 on 21 April 1948. The UN mission insisted that the opinion of people of J&K must be ascertained. The then Indian Prime Minister is reported to have himself urged U.N. to poll Kashmir and on the basis of results Kashmir's accession will be decided.

UN Resolution

On 5 January 1949, UNCIP (United Nations Commission for India and Pakistan) resolution stated that the question of the accession of the State of Jammu and Kashmir to India or Pakistan will be decided through a free and impartial plebiscite.

Ceasefire

In the last days of 1948, a ceasefire was agreed under UN auspices; however, since the plebiscite demanded by the UN was never conducted, relations between India and Pakistan soured. And eventually led to three more wars over Kashmir in 1965, 1971 and 1999. India has control of about half the area of the former princely state of Jammu and Kashmir; Pakistan controls a third of the region, governing it as Gilgit-Baltistan and Azad Kashmir. According to Encyclopedia Britannica, "Although there was a clear Muslim majority in Kashmir before the 1947 partition and it's economic, cultural, and geographic contiguity with the Muslim-majority area of the Punjab (in Pakistan) could be convincingly demonstrated.

Establishing a special commission

The UN Security Council on 20 January 1948 passed Resolution 39 establishing a special commission to investigate the conflict. Subsequent to the commission's recommendation the Security Council, ordered in its Resolution 47, passed on 21 April 1948 that the invading Pakistani army retreat from Jammu & Kashmir and that the accession of Kashmir to either India or Pakistan be determined in accordance with a plebiscite to be supervised by the UN.

Boundary dispute

The eastern region of the erstwhile princely state of Kashmir has also been beset with a boundary dispute. In the late 19th- and early 20th centuries, although some boundary agreements were signed between Great Britain, Afghanistan and Russia over the northern borders of Kashmir, China never accepted these agreements, and the official Chinese position did not change with the communist revolution in 1949. By the mid-1950s the Chinese army had entered the north-east portion of Ladakh.

Construction of military road by India

"By 1956–57 they had completed a military road through the Aksai Chin area to provide better communication between Xinjiang and western Tibet. India's belated discovery of this road led to border clashes between the two countries that culminated in the Sino-Indian war of October 1962. China has occupied Aksai Chin since 1962 and, in addition, an adjoining region, the Trans-Karakoram Tract was ceded by Pakistan to China in 1965.

In 1949, the Indian government obliged Hari Singh to leave Jammu and Kashmir and yield the government to Sheikh Abdullah, the leader of a political party, the National Conference Party.

Indian Step of Abrogation of Special Status

In August 2019, the Government of India illegally and immorally repealed the special status accorded to Jammu and Kashmir under Article 370 of the Indian constitution in 2019, and the Parliament of India passed the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganization Act, which contained provisions to dissolve the state and reorganize it into two union territories – Jammu and Kashmir in the west and Ladakh in the east. These changes will come into effect from 31 October 2019.

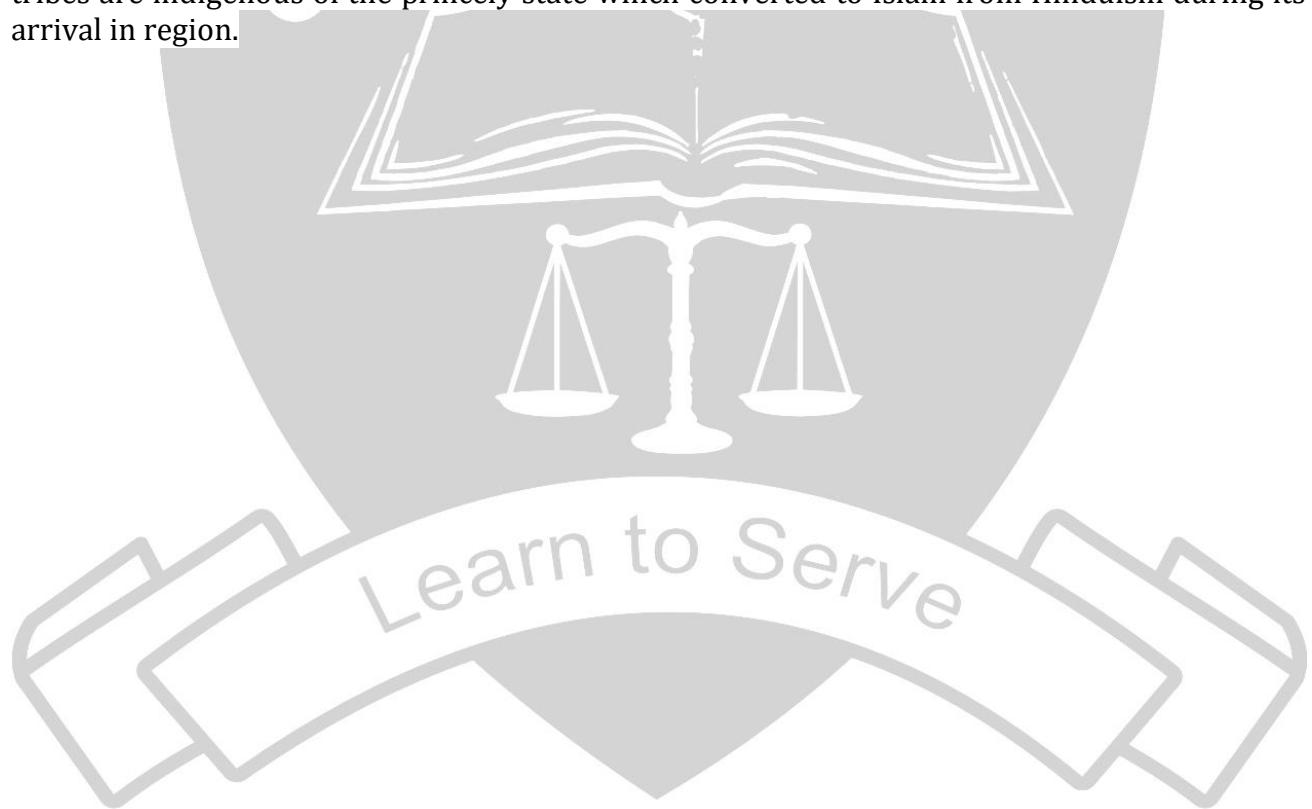
Historical View of Demography of Kashmir

1901 Census of the British Indian Empire

In the 1901 Census of the British Indian Empire, the population of the princely state of Kashmir was 2,905,578. Of these 2,154,695 were Muslims, 689,073 Hindus, 25,828 Sikhs, and 35,047 Buddhists. The Hindus were found mainly in Jammu, where they constituted a little less than 50% of the population. In the Kashmir Valley, the Hindus represented "only 524 in every 10,000 of the population (*i.e.* 5.24%), and in the frontier *wazarats* of Ladakh and Gilgit only 94 out of every 10,000 persons (0.94%). In the same Census of 1901, in the Kashmir Valley, the total population was recorded to be 1,157,394, of which the Muslim population was 1,083,766, or 93.6% of the population. These percentages have remained fairly stable for the last 100 years. In the 1941 Census of British India, Muslims accounted for 93.6% of the population of the Kashmir Valley and the Hindus constituted 4%. In 2003, the percentage of Muslims in the Kashmir Valley was 95% and those of Hindus 4%; the same year, in Jammu, the percentage of Hindus was 67% and those of Muslims 27%.

Muslims Demography

Among the Muslims of the *Kashmir province* within the princely state, four divisions were recorded: "Shaikhs, Saiyids, Mughals, and Pathans. The Shaikhs, who are by far the most numerous, are the descendants of Hindus, but have retained none of the caste rules of their forefathers. They have clan names known as *krams*..." It was recorded that these *kram* names included "Tantre", "Shaikh", "Bat", "Mantu", "Ganai", "Dar", "Damar", "Lon", etc. The Saiyids, it was recorded, "could be divided into those who follow the profession of religion and those who have taken to agriculture and other pursuits. Their *kram* name is 'Mir.' While a Saiyid retains his saintly profession Mir is a prefix; if he has taken to agriculture, Mir is an affix to his name. The *Mughals* who were not numerous were recorded to have *kram* names like "Mir" (a Abbreviation of "Mirza"), "Beg", "Bandi", "Bach" and "Ashaye". Finally, it was recorded that the Pathans "who are more numerous than the Mughals ... are found chiefly in the south-west of the valley, where Pathan colonies have from time to time been founded. The most interesting of these colonies is that of Kuki-Khel Afridis at Dranghahama, who retain all the old customs and speak Pashtu. Among the main tribes of Muslims in the princely state are the Butts, Dar, Lone, Jat, Gujjar, Rajput, Sudhan and Khatri. A small number of Butts, Dar and Lone use the title Khawaja and the Khatri use the title Shaikh the Gujjar use the title of Chaudhary. All these tribes are indigenous of the princely state which converted to Islam from Hinduism during its arrival in region.



Kashmiri Culture



The culture of Kashmir is a blend of multiple customs and came from Northern India, Northern Pakistan and the Chinese territory of Aksai Chin. The state enjoys the presence of mix religions and that's why Kashmir is famous for its cultural heritage. It amalgamates Hindu, Sikh, Muslim and Buddhist people who make Kashmir more beautiful by adopting their own culture that has brought many changes in their living style.

Origin, Background & People



The Kashmiri population is an ethno-linguistic group that can be compared with an Indo-Greek with their racial structure of the Kashmiris. The native of Kashmiri people lives in Pakistan, Upper Punjab and Potohar where they organize a group and live together. Although, Kashmiri people live in different parts of India they are mainly gathered in the Valley of Kashmir, Doda, Kishtwar and Ramban thasils of Jammu Division. Their language is highly influenced by the Sanskrit language and mostly spoken by Kashmiri Muslims and Kashmiri

According to the sources, Wazwan and their culture is highly influenced by Central Asian and Persian culture. Their dance, music, cuisine, carpet weaving and Koshur Sufiana forms a significant part of Kashmiri identity. Kashmiri culture is mainly followed by people living in Kashmir valley and Dodab of the Chenab region. The valley is known for the fine arts including traditional boats and houseboats, handicrafts and poetry.

A top-down view of a variety of Indian dishes. In the center is a large oval platter of yellow biryani with a small bowl of green chutney and three fried breads. To the right is a bowl of tandoori chicken with a small bowl of red chutney. Above the biryani is a bowl of salad. To the left is a bowl of yellow curry with a cinnamon stick. Below the biryani is a large oval platter of yellow rice with a small bowl of red chutney. To the right is a bowl of naan bread. In the bottom left is a bowl of lemon and lime slices. In the bottom right is a bowl of naan bread. A small sign in the top center reads "Miss India".

If you are dessert lover then you must try sevaiyaan, phirni and barfi among others which would make you fall in love with these sweets. Guest in Kashmir is welcomed with hot sheer tea and Kahwah which you have never tasted before. Kashmiri Pulao is also a famous dish worldwide which is prepared in almost every home at regular intervals. A large number of Kashmiri people also love hak or karam sag which is mostly made during winter to keep themselves protected from chilled weather.

Kashmiri Costums



The costumes of Kashmiri people are very colorful and attractive. The majority of people wear traditional costume and women attire themselves with gorgeous jewelry like nose ring, bangles, earrings, necklaces and loose salwar kamiz which make them comfortable during the hot season. Whereas, men dress themselves in kurta pajama, shalwars, gurabi and skullcaps. Pheran is kind of overcoat wore by Kashmiri people during winter which is decorated with colorful patches and embroidery work.

Most of the costumes of Kashmiri people are loose gown and it just varies in quality of fabric according to the weather. Most of the men wear headgear and women wear a skullcap. Most of the women cover their head and shoulders from strangers and elders as a matter of respect. The Kashmiri costume truly indicates their culture and lifestyle. It also shows that India is still following their cultural values.

Festivals and Observances

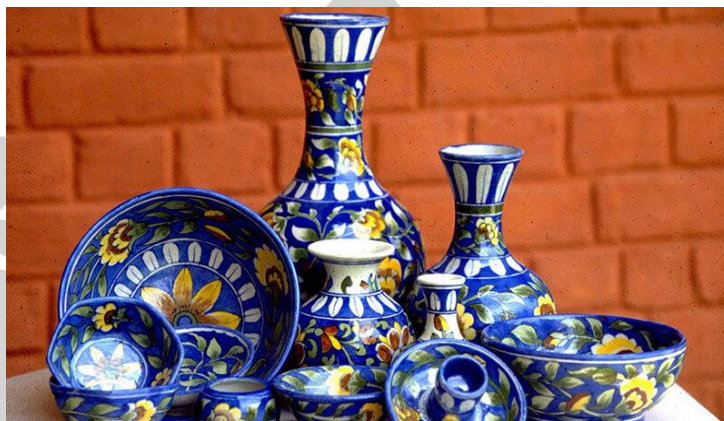


A large number of festivals are celebrated by Kashmiri people with full joy and enthusiasm. Besides a panoramic view of the landscape, J & K is a home to rich cultural heritage and it is easily reflected by the festival celebration by the Kashmiri people. Some of the popular festivals are Baishakhi, Lohri, Eid-ul-Fitr, Hemis festival, Tulip Festival, Shikara Festival, Gurez

Festival, Sindu Darshan and Domoche. A large number of people gather during the festive season and enjoy these auspicious days with lots of enthusiasm.

Traditional dance, participation in painting, multi-cuisine and shops of handicrafts are an integral part of these festivals. Numerous fairs like Bahu Mela, Jhiri Mela and Craft Mela are also organized on some auspicious days where Kashmiri Culture is highlighted by those people. Kashmir is one of the best places where you can see rich heritage and culture along with its beauty.

Handicrafts



Kashmir is a popular place for their beautiful and unique Handicraft. The Pashmina Shawl is famous worldwide for its quality and fabric. Almost every woman love and desire Pashmina Shawl as it symbolizes royalty. The design and embroidery work on the shawl is breathtaking also, the warmth and softness that it offers is completely matchless. Kashmir is also famous for their hand-knotted carpets and woolen rugs having floral design.

On the other hand, basketry, paper mache, wooden carving furniture made of walnut wood and silverware are one of the best handicrafts offered by Kashmiri people. As Kashmir is one of the best attractions for tourist, the handicraft industry is getting expanded by the government.

Dance and Music



Kashmir has its own style of dance performance and music that is simple and fabulous. Almost every festival and fair consists of dance and music that is a big attraction for tourist also. There is a wide variety of dance and music that is performed according to the occasion. One of the popular dance forms is Mask dance that is performed during the Hemis Festival. The dancers wear colorful costume, wear face mask and brocade robes and do ceremonial dances. Other

major dance forms are Chakri, Ladishah, Ruf dance and Dandaras dance. Roul, Dogri and Wuegi-Nachun are some of the forms of folk dance.

Kashmiri people love folk music and tap their feet on the most famous Rabab music. The common instruments played in this music are Sitar, Dukra and Nagara. Wanawun, Ghazals, Sufi and Choral are some major music forms in Kashmir that are sung during wedding ceremonies and festivals.

Occupation



Kashmir occupation is majorly involved in agriculture and popular cultivated items include Rice, Maize, Mustard, Cotton seed, Radish, Onions, Gourd, Lotus-stalk, Linseed, Carrots, etc. The climatic condition of Kashmir also helps in cultivation of fruits like mulberry, grapes, plums, apples, cherries, apricots, walnuts, almond, etc. Agricultural exports and exports of handicrafts, shawls, and rugs bring the state a handsome amount of foreign exchange.

Muslim Festivals in Kashmir

The Ramzan Festival in Kashmir



The Ramzan Festival in Kashmir

The Islamic calendar comprise of nine holy months. During the Ramzan Festival in Srinagar, the city takes a novel look. There are four pillars of the religious ideology of Islam. The words of Islam asserted that salvation is attained in the month of Ramzan through penance and self-reparation. The Ramzan Festival in Azad Kashmir Indian Occupied Kashmir is celebrated by Muslims.

The Ramzan Festival in Kashmir is celebrated by fasting in the ninth month of the Islamic calendar. The fasting ends up in the festivity of "Eid ul-Fitr" in the beautiful State, State of Jammu and Kashmir. The penance acquired from of this ninth month's starvation leads to the destruction of sins accumulated by the acts of lying, slander, back stabbing, breach of promise and avarice. Smoking is forbidden in this season of fasting of Ramzan Festival in Srinagar. A person during the Ramzan Festival in Kashmir goes through "Holy Qoran" and visits the mosque regularly. On the twenty seventh day of the ninth month the people celebrate the Lalyat-al-Qadr which is also known as "the Night of Blessing". On the completion of the fasting, the people of Kashmir exchange gifts and presents, visits each other's house to give blessings and so on.



The Festival of Eid-UL-Fitr and Eid-UL-Azha in Kashmir

Eid-ul-Fitr and Eid-ul-Azha are the most famous Muslim festivals in the state of Jammu and Kashmir. Although, the festival is also celebrated in part of Jammu as well. Eid-ul-Fitr marks the end of fasting month of Ramadan. During this day, instead of five-time namaz, people have to offer namaz six times. The day is very auspicious for all Muslims; they wear new clothes and attend many grand feasts. Eid-ul-Azha is equally important festival, which is more prominent for the Qurbani (sacrifice). People sacrifice goats, sheep and some even Camels.

Eid is celebrated on the first day of Shaw'waal which is the 10th month of the Islamic calender. On this day Muslims show their real joy for the health, strength and the opportunities of life, which Allah has given to them to fulfill their obligation of fasting and other good deeds during the blessed month of Ramadan? Eid is a Day of Remembrance when The Muslims pray to Allah and glorify His name to demonstrate their remembrance of His favours. Eid is a Day of Forgiveness When Muslims assembles in the congregation of the Day, they whole-heartedly pray for forgiveness and strength in faith. Eid is a Day of peace as a Muslim is obliged to establishes peace within his heart by obeying the Law of Allah and leading a disciplinary life.

The first Eid was celebrated in 624 CE by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) with his friends and relatives after the victory of the battle of Jang-e-Badar. There is also the opinion that 'Eid-ul-Fitr is a unique festival and it has no connection with any historical event nor is it related to the changes of seasons or cycles of agriculture. It is not a festival related in any way to worldly affairs'.

A very important aspect of Eid is the charity, which all the Muslims are expected to extend to the needy. Earlier, this was in the form of gifts in kind but now cash is given to the needy. Charity is based on the concept of fraternity. If Allah had given you more than enough, it is to be given to your fellow beings that lack the essentials to live.

The conception of Eid in Islam is not confined only to celebration extravagance, luxurious feasts, friendly handshakes and embraces. The Muslims should rather devote this day to the worship of God and should beseech Him to approve their virtuous deeds and forgive their sins. This is because the doors of God's pardon are kept open this day and His Blessings are bountiful.

The Urs Festival in Kashmir

The Urs (or Ziarats) is a typical Kashmiri festival. It is held annually at the shrines of Muslim saints on their death anniversaries. There is a saying " It snows when the Urs of Meesha Sahib is held, it is windy when the Urs of Batamol Sahib takes place, it rains on the occasion of the Urs of Bahauddin".

These Urs are popular despite the rigours of weather. This is celebrated in different parts of Srinagar, not only by Muslims but Hindus and Sikhs also. An interesting feature of the Urs celebrations at Batamaloo (the locality in Srinagar named after the saint Batamol Sahib) and in Anantag (Rishi Mol's anniversary) is that both Muslims and Hindus abstain from taking meat during the course of the festival.

The Nauroz Festival in Kashmir

Kashmir is known as the paradise of India for its mystic valleys, natural landscapes, the huge Shrines of Jammu and a number of festivals and events that is celebrated in Kashmir. Followers of Islam, Hinduism and Buddhism, all stay in peace in this state blessed with natural abundance. Kashmir is rich in culture, tradition and in a number of festivals. It truly deserves to be called the paradise of India for people from all over the world come to Jammu and Kashmir to get a glimpse of its eternal beauty.

Nauroz Festival in Srinagar in India is one of the most important festivals celebrated with triumph in this valley.

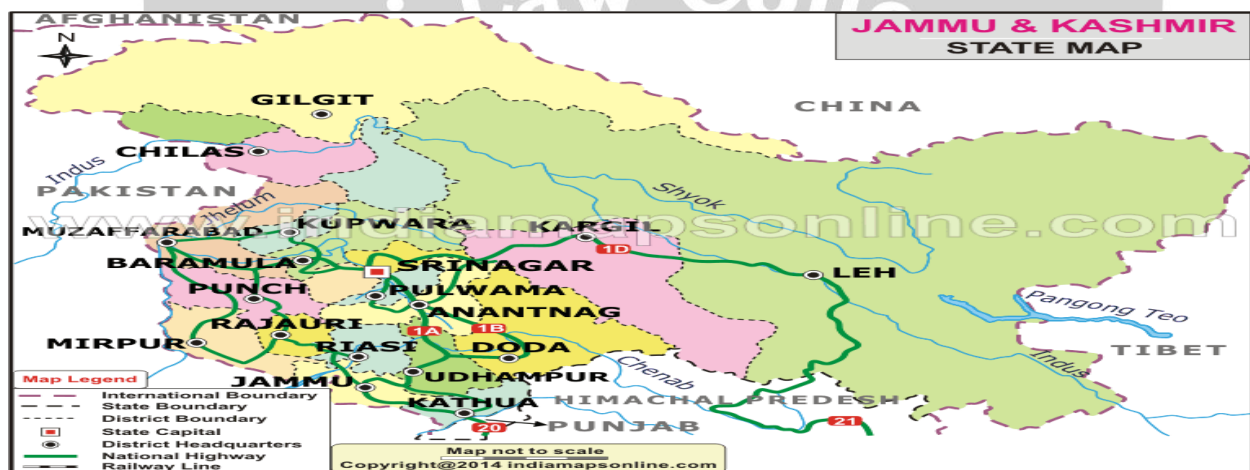
Nauroz Festival at Srinagar in India is celebrated for 9 days all over India. The Nauroz festival of the Shia Muslims comes a week after the New Year day. The Shia Muslims celebrate this 9-day festival with good eating and activities showing a spirit of gay abandon, in contrast to

recitation of religious dirges that characterize most of their festivals. Nauroz Festival of Srinagar in India is celebrated with equal triumph and glory. The Muslims wear new clothes and go to the mosque to pray. The Nauroz Festival of Srinagar in India is celebrated with fun and frolic. Every Muslim wishes their families

The Festival of Shab-I-Mairaj and Shab-I-Barat in Kashmir

Muslim festivals which are celebrated nationally include Shab-i Mairaj which is followed by Shab-i-Barat. The dates of these festivals change in accordance with the appearance of the moon and shift by 10 days each year. During the night of Shab-i-Barat,

Geographical Importance of Jammu & Kashmir



Jammu and Kashmir, a state, located in the northern part of the Indian subcontinent in the vicinity of the Karakoram and westernmost Himalayan mountain ranges. The territory is part of the larger region of Kashmir, which has been the subject of dispute between India, Pakistan, and China since the partition of the subcontinent in 1947. Legislation passed in August 2019 set the stage for downgrading Jammu and Kashmir from statehood to union territory status and splitting off a part of it, known as the Ladakh region, into a separate union territory. The change went into effect on October 31 of that year, though several court cases affecting its status remained pending. The information that follows describes the former state of Jammu and Kashmir, including the Ladakh region.



Jhelum River

Jhelum River at Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir

Jammu and Kashmir, formerly one of the largest princely states of India, is bounded to the northeast by the Uygur Autonomous Region of Xinjiang (China), to the east by the Tibet Autonomous Region (China) and the Chinese-administered portions of Kashmir, to the south by the Indian states of Himachal Pradesh and Punjab, to the southwest by Pakistan, and to the northwest by the Pakistani-administered portion of Kashmir. The administrative capitals are Srinagar in summer and Jammu in winter. Area 39,146 square miles (101,387 square km)

Land

The vast majority of the state's territory is mountainous, and the physiography is divided into seven zones that are closely associated with the structural components of the western Himalayas. From southwest to northeast those zones consist of the plains, the foothills, the Pir Panjal Range, the Vale of Kashmir, the Great Himalayas zone, the upper Indus River valley, and the Karakoram Range. The climate varies from alpine in the northeast to subtropical in the southwest. In the alpine area, average annual precipitation is about 3 inches (75 mm), but in the subtropical zone (around Jammu) rainfall amounts to about 45 inches (1,150 mm) per year. The entire region is prone to violent seismic activity, and light to moderate tremors are common. A strong earthquake centred in Azad Kashmir killed hundreds in Jammu and Kashmir state in 2005.



The plains

The narrow zone of plains landscape in the Jammu region is characterized by interlocking sandy alluvial fans that have been deposited by streams discharging from the foothills and by a much-dissected pediment (eroded bedrock surface) covered by loams and loess (wind-deposited silt) of Pleistocene age (about 11,700 to 2,600,000 years old). Precipitation is low, amounting to about 15 to 20 inches (380 to 500 mm) per year, and it occurs mainly in the form of heavy but infrequent rain showers during the summer monsoon (June to September). The countryside has been almost entirely denuded of trees, and thorn scrub and coarse grass are the dominant forms of vegetation.

The Foothills

The foothills of the Himalayas, rising from about 2,000 to 7,000 feet (600 to 2,100 metres), form outer and inner zones. The outer zone consists of sandstones, clays, silts, and conglomerates, influenced by Himalayan folding movements and eroded to form long ridges and valleys called *duns*. The inner zone consists of more-massive sedimentary rock, including red sandstones of Miocene age (roughly 5.3 to 23 million years old), that has been folded, fractured, and eroded to form steep spurs and plateau remnants. River valleys are deeply incised and terraced, and faulting has produced a number of alluvium-filled basins, such as those surrounding Udhampur and Punch. Precipitation increases with elevation, and the lower scrubland gives way to pine forests higher up.

The Pir Panjal Range

The Pir Panjal Range constitutes the first (southernmost) mountain rampart associated with the Himalayas in the state and is the westernmost of the Lesser Himalayas. It has an average crest line of 12,500 feet (3,800 metres), with individual peaks rising to some 15,000 feet

(4,600 metres). Consisting of an ancient rock core of granites, gneisses, quartz rocks, and slates, it has been subject to considerable uplift and fracturing and was heavily glaciated during the Pleistocene Epoch. The range receives heavy precipitation in the forms of winter snowfall and summer rain and has extensive areas of pasture above the tree line. It is drained principally by the Jhelum, Punch, and Chenab rivers.

The Vale of Kashmir

The Vale of Kashmir is a deep asymmetrical basin lying between the Pir Panjal Range and the western end of the Great Himalayas at an average elevation of 5,300 feet (1,620 metres). During Pleistocene times it was occupied at times by a body of water known as Lake Karewa; it is now filled by lacustrine (still water) sediments as well as alluvium deposited by the upper Jhelum River. Soil and water conditions vary across the valley. The climate is characterized by annual precipitation of about 30 inches (750 mm), derived partially from the summer monsoon and partially from storms associated with winter low-pressure systems. Snowfall often is accompanied by rain and sleet. Temperatures vary considerably by elevation; at Srinagar the average minimum temperature is in the upper 20s F (about -2°C) in January, and the average maximum is in the upper 80s F (about 31°C) in July.



Western Himalayas

Birch trees in the western Himalayas, Jammu and Kashmir state, Up to about 7,000 feet (2,100 metres), woodlands of deodar cedar, blue pine, walnut, willow, elm, and poplar occur. From 7,000 to 10,500 feet (3,200 metres), coniferous forests with fir, pine, and spruce are found.

From 10,500 to 12,000 feet (3,700 metres), birch is dominant, and above 12,000 feet there are meadows with rhododendrons and dwarf willows as well as honeysuckle

The Great Himalayas zone

Geologically complex and topographically immense, the Great Himalayas contain ranges with numerous peaks reaching elevations of 20,000 feet (6,100 metres) or higher, between which lie deeply entrenched remote valleys. The region was heavily glaciated during the Pleistocene Epoch, and remnant glaciers and snowfields are still present. The zone receives some rain from the southwest monsoon in the summer months—and the lower slopes are forested—but the mountains constitute a climatic divide, representing a transition from the monsoon climate of the Indian subcontinent to the dry continental climate of Central Asia.

The upper Indus River valley

The valley of the upper Indus River is a well-defined feature that follows the geologic strike (structural trend) westward from the Tibetan border to the point in the Pakistani sector of Kashmir where the river rounds the great mountainous mass of Nanga Parbat to run southward in deep gorges that cut across the strike. In its upper reaches the river is flanked by gravel terraces; each tributary builds an alluvial fan out into the main valley. The town of Leh stands on such a fan, 11,500 feet (3,500 metres) above sea level, with a climate characterized by an almost total lack of precipitation, by intense insolation (exposure to sunlight), and by great diurnal and annual ranges of temperature. Life depends on meltwater from the surrounding mountains, and vegetation is alpine (i.e., consists of species above the tree line), growing on thin soils.

The Karakoram Range

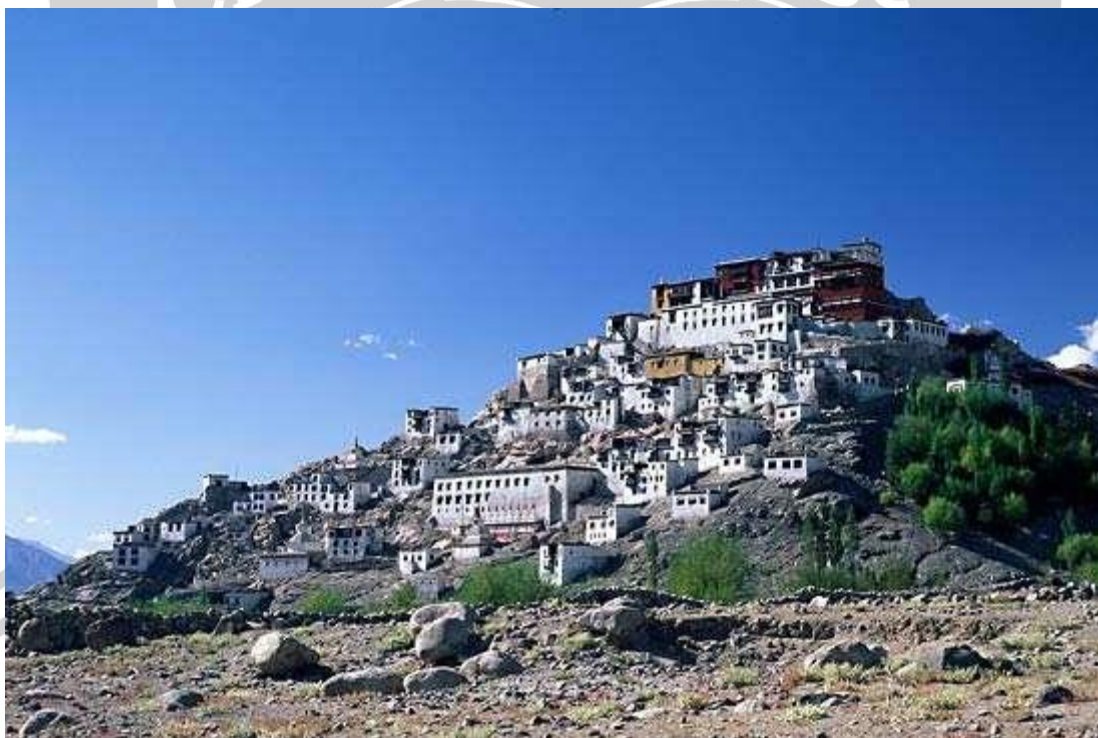
The great granite-gneiss massifs of the Karakoram Range—which straddles the Indian and Pakistani sectors of Kashmir—contain some of the world's highest peaks. Those include K2 (also called Mount Godwin Austen) on the border of the Pakistani sector and one of the Chinese-administered enclaves, with an elevation of 28,251 feet (8,611 metres); at least 30 other peaks exceed 24,000 feet (7,300 metres). The range, which is still heavily glaciated, rises starkly from dry desolate plateaus that are characterized by extremes of temperature and shattered rock debris. The Karakoram, along with other areas in and around the Himalayan region, is often called the "roof of the world."

Animal life

Among the wild mammals found in the state are the Siberian ibex, the Ladakh urial (a species of wild sheep with a reddish coat), the rare *hangul* (or Kashmir stag) found in Dachigam National Park, the endangered markhor (a large goat) inhabiting mainly protected areas of the Pir Panjal Range, and black and brown bears. There are many species of game birds, including vast numbers of migratory ducks.

People

The cultural, ethnic, and linguistic composition of Jammu and Kashmir varies across the state by region. About two-thirds of the population adheres to Islam, a greater proportion than in any other Indian state; Hindus constitute most of the remaining third. There also are small minorities of Sikhs and Buddhists. Urdu is the state's official language.



Ladakh

Thiksey Monastery near Leh, Ladakh, Jammu and Kashmir state,

The Jammu region

Jammu, winter capital of the maharajas (the former Hindu rulers of the region) and second largest city in the state, was historically the seat of the Dogra dynasty. More than two-thirds of the region's residents are classified as Hindu. Most of Jammu's Hindus live in the southeastern portion of the region and are closely related to the Punjabi-speaking peoples in Punjab state;

many speak the Dogri language. The majority of the state's Sikhs also live in the Jammu region. To the northwest, however, the proportion of Muslims increases, with Muslims making up a dominant majority in the area around the western town of Poonch.

Kashmiris of the vale and highlands

The Vale of Kashmir, surrounded by the highlands of the broader Kashmir region, always has had something of a unique character. The vast majority of the people are Muslims who speak Kashmiri or Urdu. Culturally and ethnically, their closest links are with peoples in the northwestern highlands of the Gilgit area (in the Gilgit-Baltistan district) of the GB. The Kashmiri language is influenced by Sanskrit and belongs to the Dardic branch of Indo-Aryan languages, which also are spoken by the various hill peoples of Gilgit; Kashmiri has rich folklore and literary traditions. The great majority of the population resides in the lower reaches of the vale. Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir's largest city, is located on the Jhelum River.

Ladakh

The Great Himalayas are an ethnic and cultural as well as physical divide. The portion of the Ladakh area (sometimes called "Little Tibet") located in northeastern Jammu and Kashmir is thinly populated. To the east, around Leh, the inhabitants are predominantly Buddhists of Tibetan ancestry who speak a Tibeto-Burman language (Ladakhi). In the region around Kargil to the west, however, the population is predominantly Muslim, most belonging to the Shi'i branch of Islam.

Settlement patterns

The state's physiographic diversity is matched by a considerable variety of human occupation. In the plains and foothills of the southwestern region, colonization movements from the Punjab areas over a long period of time have produced numerous agricultural settlements. In the *dun* regions and lower valleys of the foothills, where alluvial soils and the availability of water for irrigation make agriculture possible, the population is sustained by crops of wheat and barley, which are gathered in the spring (*rabi*) harvest, and of rice and corn (maize), gathered in the late summer (*khari*) harvest; livestock also are raised. The upper sections of the valleys support a sparser population that depends on a mixed economy of corn, cattle, and forestry. Herders migrate to higher pastures each spring to give their flocks the necessary forage to produce milk and clarified butter, or ghee, for southern lowland markets. In winter the hill dwellers return to lower areas to work in government-owned forests and timber mills. Agricultural hamlets and nucleated villages predominate throughout the state; cities and towns such as Jammu and Udhampur function essentially as market centres and administrative headquarters for the rural populations and estates in the vicinity.

Demographic trends

The population of Jammu and Kashmir continued to increase fairly rapidly from the late 20th into the early 21st century, growing by nearly one-fourth between 2001 and 2011. The state has remained largely rural, nearly three-fourths of its people living in towns and villages, but urbanization has increased. Nearly two-fifths of the urban population resides in the Srinagar region. The sex ratio is relatively poor, about 890 females per 1,000 males at the 2011 census, lower than it was in the 2001 census (900 females per 1,000 males).

Economic Outlook

Agriculture

The majority of the people of Jammu and Kashmir are engaged in subsistence agriculture of diverse kinds on terraced slopes, each crop adapted to local conditions. Rice, the staple crop, is planted in May and harvested in late September. Corn, millet, pulses (legumes such as peas, beans, and lentils), cotton, and tobacco are—with rice—the main summer crops, while wheat and barley are the chief spring crops. Many temperate fruits and vegetables are grown in areas adjacent to urban markets or in well-watered areas with rich organic soils. Sericulture (silk cultivation) is also widespread. Large orchards in the Vale of Kashmir produce apples, pears, peaches, walnuts, almonds, and cherries, which are among the state's major exports. In addition, the vale is the sole producer of saffron in the Indian subcontinent. Lake margins are particularly favourable for cultivation, and vegetables and flowers are grown intensively in reclaimed marshland or on artificial floating gardens. The lakes and rivers also provide fish and water chestnuts. Cultivation in Ladakh is restricted to such main valleys as those of the Indus, Shyok, and Suru rivers, where it consists of small irrigated plots of barley, buckwheat, turnips, and mustard. Plants introduced in the 1970s by Indian researchers have given rise to orchards and vegetable fields. Pastoralism—notably yak herding—long has been a vital feature of the Ladakh economy; breeding of sheep, goats, and cattle has been encouraged. The Kashmir goat, which is raised in the region, provides cashmere for the production of fine textiles. Some Gujar and gaddi communities practice transhumance (seasonal migration of livestock) in the mountains. In addition to supplying pasture for the livestock, the mountains also are a source of many kinds of timber, a portion of which is exported.

Resources and power

The state has limited mineral and fossil-fuel resources, much of which are concentrated in the Jammu region. Small reserves of natural gas are found near the city of Jammu, and bauxite and gypsum deposits occur in the vicinity of Udhampur. Other minerals include limestone, coal, zinc, and copper. The pressure of population on land is apparent everywhere, and all available resources are utilized. All the principal cities and towns, including Leh, and a majority of the villages are electrified and hydroelectric and thermal generating plants have been constructed to provide power for industrial development based on local raw materials. Major power stations are located at Chinini and Salal and on the upper Sind and lower Jhelum rivers. Jammu

and Kashmir has vast hydroelectric generating potential, principally along the Chenab River in the southwestern part of the state but also including the basins of the Indus, Jhelum, and Ravi rivers. Although by the early 21st century only a relatively small fraction of that potential was being exploited, a large number of projects were in various stages of completion or planning that were intended to considerably boost the state's generating capacity by the year 2020.

Manufacturing

Metalware, precision instruments, sporting goods, furniture, matches, and resin and turpentine are the major manufactures of Jammu and Kashmir, with the bulk of the state's manufacturing activity located in Srinagar. Many industries have developed from rural crafts, including handloom weaving of local silk, cotton, and wool; carpet weaving; wood carving; and leatherwork. Such industries—together with the making of silverwork, copperwork, and jewelry—were stimulated first by the presence of the royal court and later by the growth of tourism; however, they also owe something to the important position achieved by Srinagar in west Himalayan trade.



Kashmir shawl

In the past the city acted as an entrepôt for the products of the Punjab region on the one hand and of the high plateau region east of the Karakoram, Pamir, and Ladakh ranges on the other hand. Routes still run northwestward into Gilgit via the Raj Diangan Pass and northeastward via the Zoji Pass to Leh and beyond. Handicraft manufacture is also important in Ladakh, particularly the production of cashmere shawls, carpets, and blankets.

Tourism

Although facilities for visitors to Jammu and Kashmir have improved considerably since the late 20th century, the state's potential in the tourist sector has remained generally untapped.

Nevertheless, tourism has made a significant socioeconomic impact on Ladakh, which was largely isolated from outsiders until the 1970s. In addition to historical and religious sites, visitor destinations include the snow-sports centre at Gulmarg in the northern Pir Panjal Range west of Srinagar, the hot mineral springs at Chumathang near Leh, and the state's many lakes and rivers. Mountain trekking is popular from July through September.



Gulmarg, Jammu and Kashmir

In addition to, Kohala, Pir Chinasi Muzaffarbad, Toli Pir, Banjosa , Mirpur are Famous tourist spots in Azad Kashmir. Many Tourists from Inside and outside Pakistan Visit these points ever year.

Banjosa Lake

Banjosa Lake is an artificial lake and a tourist resort 18 kilometers from the city of Rawalakot in Poonch District of Azad Kashmir, Pakistan. It is located at an altitude of 1,981 meters. The lake is surrounded by dense pine forest and mountains, which make it charming and romantic.



Banjosa Lake Rawalakot AJK

Toli Peer

Tolipir is a hilltop area situated in Tehsil Rawalakot in the Poonch District of Azad Kashmir. Its approximate elevation is about 8800 ft above sea level. It is about 30 km, or a 120-minute drive, from Rawalakot in Azad Kashmir. Abbaspur, Bagh and Poonch River can be viewed from Toli Pir.



Toli PeerAJK

Mangla Dam

The Mangla Dam is a multipurpose dam located on the Jhelum River in the Mirpur District of Azad Kashmir in Pakistan. It is the seventh largest dam in the world. The dam got its name from the village of Mangla. It is also a tourist Place in Mirpur AJK



Mangla Dam

Pir Chinasi

Pir Chinasi is a shrine and a tourist destination located about 30 kilometers east of Muzaffarabad, the capital city of Azad Kashmir administered by Pakistan. It is located on the top of hills at the height of 2,900 metres.

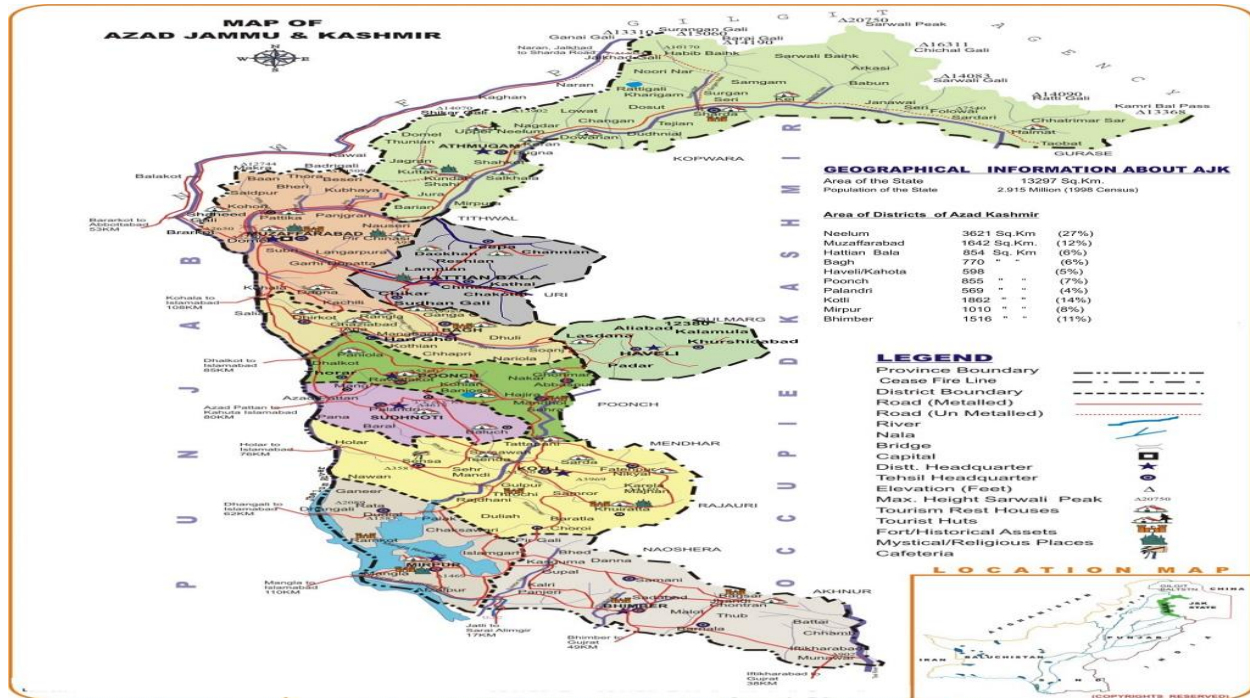


Other Tourist Spots in Azad Jammu Kashmir

- Muzaffarabad, the capital city of Azad Kashmir, is located on the banks of the Jhelum and Neelum rivers. It is 138 km (86 mi) from Rawalpindi and Islamabad. Well-known tourist spots near Muzaffarabad are the Red Fort, , Patika, Subri Lake and Awan Patti.
- The Neelum Valley is situated to the north and northeast of Muzaffarabad, The gateway to the valley. The main tourist attractions in the valley are Athmuqam, Kutton, Keran, Changan, Sharda, Kel, Arang Kel and Taobat.
- Sudhanoti is one of the eight districts of Azad Kashmir in Pakistan. Sudhanoti is located 90 km (56 mi) away from Islamabad, the Capital of Pakistan. It is connected with Rawalpindi and Islamabad through Azad Pattan road.
- Rawalakot city is the headquarters of Poonch District and is located 122 km (76 mi) from Islamabad. Tourist attractions in Poonch District are Banjosa Lake, Devi Gali, Tatta Pani..
- Bagh city, the headquarters of Bagh District, is 205 km (127 mi) from Islamabad and 100 km (62 mi) from Muzaffarabad. The principal tourist attractions in Bagh District are Bagh Fort, Dhirkot, Sudhan Gali, Ganga Lake, Ganga Choti, Kotla Waterfall, Neela Butt, Danna, Panjal Mastan National Park, and Las Danna.
- The Leepa Valley is located 105 km (65 mi) southeast of Muzaffarabad. It is the most charming and scenic place for tourists in Azad Kashmir.
- New Mirpur City is the headquarters of Mirpur District. The main tourist attractions near New Mirpur City Ramkot Fort.



Administration in Azad Kashmir



SARDAR MASOOD KHAN

The President State of AJK

Sardar Masood Khan is currently serving as the 27th President of Azad Jammu and Kashmir, a position he assumed on 25th August 2016. Immediately before becoming the President he was the Director General of the Institute of Strategic Studies Islamabad.

Prior to getting elected as the President of AJK, Sardar Masood Khan Khan had a long diplomatic career with the Foreign Service of Pakistan. Most notably, he served as the Spokesman of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs from 2003 to 2005; Pakistan's Ambassador and Permanent Representative to the United Nations and other International Organisations in Geneva, Switzerland, from 2005 to 2008; Pakistan's Ambassador to China from 2008 to 2012;

and Pakistan's Ambassador and Permanent Representative to the United Nations Headquarters, New York, from 2012 to 2015.

In his earlier diplomatic career, he held important diplomatic positions in China, The Netherlands, United Nations (New York) and the USA (Washington D.C).

Over the years, he has also held leadership positions in the international community which include President of the Conference on Disarmament, President of the Biological Weapons Review Conference 2006, President of the Governmental Group of the International Labour Organization (ILO), Chairman of the ILO Reform Committee, Chairman of the Council of the International Organization for Migration, Chairman of the Organization of Islamic Cooperation in Geneva and Chairman of the Group of 77 and China.



PRIME MINISTER RAJA MUHAMMAD FAROOQ HAIDER KHAN

Raja Muhammad Farooq Haider Khan, was elected Azad Jammu and Kashmir Prime Minister and leader of the House by AJK Legislative Assembly on 31st July, 2016 by a vast majority. Raja Muhammad Farooq Haider Khan belongs to a well known political family & inherited the career from his family, his father Raja Muhammad Haider Khan (Late) led the Muslim Conference being the President of Muslim Conference two times i.e. in 1960 & 1963. His mother Mohterma Saeeda Khan (late) holds the honor to be the first female Member of AJ&K Legislative Assembly in the history of Azad Jammu & Kashmir. His uncle Raja Muhammad Latif Khan was elected as a Member of AJ&K Legislative Assembly in 1970. His sister Miss Naureen Haider also remained a Member of AJ&K Legislative Assembly from 1991 to 1996.

Azad Kashmir Legislative Assembly

آزاد کشمیر قانون ساز اسمبلی

10th Azad Kashmir Legislative Assembly



Leadership

Speaker Shah Ghulam Qadir
PML (N)
since 30 July 2016

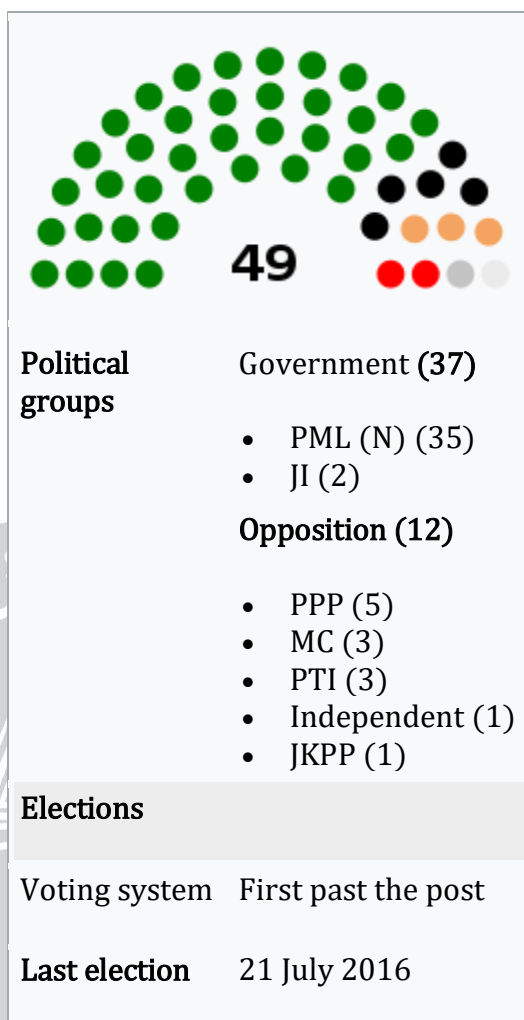
Deputy Speaker Amir Altaf
PML (N)
since 11 January 2018

Leader of the House Farooq Haider Khan
PML (N)
since 31 July 2016

Leader of the Opposition Chaudhry Mohammad Yasin
PPP
since August 2016

Structure

Seats 49



Azad Jammu & Kashmir Legislative Assembly

The Legislative Assembly of Azad Jammu and Kashmir, also known as AJK Legislative Assembly, is a unicameral legislature of elected representatives of the Pakistan administered state of Azad Kashmir.

The assembly consists of 41 elected Members and 8 co-opted members of which 5 are woman, one member from Ulama community, while one is from amongst Jammu & Kashmir technocrats and other professionals, whereas one is from amongst Jammu and Kashmir nationals residing abroad

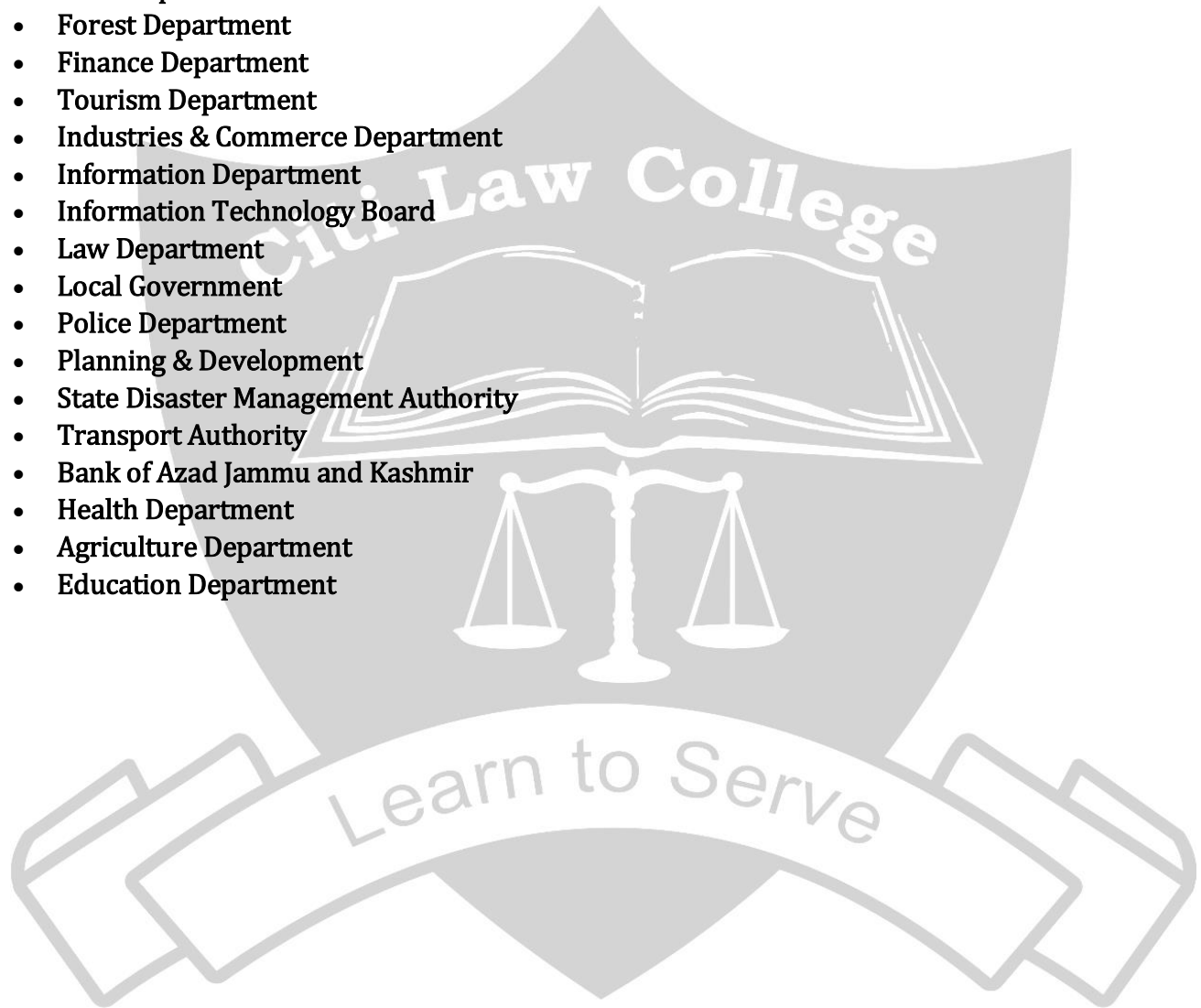
Tenure

The members of legislative Assembly are elected for a four-year term on the basis of adult franchise and one person, one vote.

Administration

Departments & Services

- Auqaf Department
- AJ&K Board of Revenue
- Services & General Administration
- Electricity Department
- Food Department
- Forest Department
- Finance Department
- Tourism Department
- Industries & Commerce Department
- Information Department
- Information Technology Board
- Law Department
- Local Government
- Police Department
- Planning & Development
- State Disaster Management Authority
- Transport Authority
- Bank of Azad Jammu and Kashmir
- Health Department
- Agriculture Department
- Education Department



Azad Jammu & Kashmir Supreme Court



The Supreme Court of AJ&K is the highest Court of appeal in Azad Jammu and Kashmir. It consists of a Chief Justice and two other Judges. The Chief Justice of Azad Jammu and Kashmir shall make before the President, and the other Judge before the Chief Justice of Azad Jammu and Kashmir oath of their offices before entering upon the office. Appointment of Chief Justice and Judges shall take effect from making the oath of their offices. Unless a Judge of the Supreme Court (which includes Chief Justice) resigns earlier or is removed from his office in accordance with law, he shall hold office until he attains the age of sixty-five years.

The remuneration and other terms and conditions of service of the Chief Justice and other Judges of the Supreme Court including their salary, allowances, privileges and pension are the same as admissible to their counterparts in the Supreme Court of Pakistan in view of Schedule IV of the AJ&K Interim Constitution Act, 1974.

JURISDICTION OF THE SUPREME COURT

The criminal and civil appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of AJ&K is regulated by sub-section (11) of section 42 of the AJ&K Interim Constitution Act, 1974 under which appeal lies to the Supreme Court from any judgment, decree, final order or sentence of the High Court of Azad Jammu and Kashmir. Similarly an appeal also lies to the Supreme Court from the order passed by the Shariat Court of Azad Jammu and Kashmir under Islamic Penal Laws Act, Shariat Court Act and other Islamic Penal Laws. In the cases where sub-section (11) of section 42 is not attracted, the appeal lies to the Supreme Court against any judgment decree order or sentence of the High Court, if the Supreme Court grants leave to appeal. Similarly an appeal lies to the Supreme Court from the judgment, decree, order or sentence of an administrative Court or Tribunal under subsection (3) of section 47 of the Interim Constitution Act, if the case involves a substantial question of law of public importance and Supreme Court grants leave to appeal.

There is no provision in the AJ&K Interim Constitution Act, 1974, like Article 184(3) of the Constitution of Islamic Republic of Pakistan, 1973 vesting original jurisdiction in the Supreme Court of Pakistan. The Supreme Court of Azad Jammu and Kashmir is only the Appellate Court as the Board of Judicial Advisors and Judicial Board used to be. It cannot entertain any direct petition nor can issue any order except in an appeal. The only original jurisdiction it has is the

advisory jurisdiction under section 46-A of the Interim Constitution Act. The appellate powers of the Supreme Court of Azad Jammu and Kashmir are identical and at par with the powers of the Supreme Court of Pakistan.

Azad Jammu & Kashmir High Court



The High Court was established under Resolution No. 372 passed on 18th May 1948. Through this resolution, one post of Judge High Court, one Steno, one Clerk of Court, one Registrar High Court, one Assistant Advocate General and one Chaprasi for the High Court were created. Through another resolution No. 594 passed on 9.10.1948, it was decided that instead of one Judge there would be two Judges of the High Court. It was provided that in the event of difference between the two on any point the opinion of the Chief Justice would prevail. It was also provided that the incumbent Judge of the High Court would be the Chief Justice because of his seniority in service in Azad Government. Under an order of the President issued 8.11.1948, Mr. Justice Abdul Majeed Khan was appointed Chief Justice of the High Court. Sheikh Abdul Rashid was appointed as puisne Judge of the High Court. At that time the Headquarter of the High Court was at Rawalpindi with the code name of "Lion". Under Cabinet Order No. 233/50 dated 11.7.1950, actions of Minister for Law in fixing the headquarter of the High Court at "Lion" in the first instance and then in shifting the headquarter of the High Court from "Lion" to Muzaffarabad were confirmed

Original jurisdiction

A High Court under section 44 of the Azad Jammu & Kashmir Interim Constitution Act 1974, have following Jurisdiction which is reproduced as under: -

"44. Jurisdiction of High Court:- (1) The High Court shall have such jurisdiction as is conferred on it by this Act or by any other law.

(2) Subject to this Act, the High Court may if it is satisfied that no other adequate remedy is provided by law.-

(a) on the application of any aggrieved party, make an order.-

(i) directing a person performing functions in connection with the affairs of Azad Jammu and Kashmir or local authority to refrain from doing that which he is not permitted by law to do, or to do that which he is required by law to do, or

(ii) declaring that any act done or proceedings taken by a person performing functions in connection with the affairs of the State or a local authority has been done or taken without lawful authority, and is of no legal effect; or

(b) On the application of any person, make an order.-

1. i) directing that a person in custody in Azad Jammu and Kashmir is brought before the High Court so that the Court may satisfy itself that he is not being held in custody without lawful authority or in an unlawful manner, or
 2. ii) requiring a person holding or purporting to hold a public office in connection with the affairs of Azad Jammu and Kashmir to show under what authority of law claims to hold that office, or
- (c) on the application of any aggrieved person, make an order giving such directions to the person or authority, including the Council and the Government, exercising any power or performing any function in, or in relation to, Azad Jammu and Kashmir as may be appropriate for the enforcement or any of the fundamental rights conferred by this Act.

(3) An order shall not be made under sub-section (2) of this section on application made by or in relation to a person in the Defence Service in respect of his terms and conditions of service, in respect of any matter arising out of his service in respect of any action in relation to him as a member of the Defence Services.

(4) Where. -

(a) application is made to the High Court for an order under clause (a) or clause (c) of sub-section (2); and

(b) The Court has reason to believe that the making of an interim order would have the effect of prejudicing or interfering with the carrying out of a public work or otherwise being harmful to the public interest, the Court shall not make an interim order unless the Advocate General or any officer authorized by him in this behalf has been given an opportunity of being heard, is satisfied that the making of the interim order would not have the effect referred to in clause (b) of this sub-section.

(5) In this section, unless the context otherwise requires, 'Person' includes any body politic or corporate, any authority of or under control of the Council or the Government and any Court or tribunal other than the Supreme Court of Azad Jammu and Kashmir, the High Court or a Court or tribunal established under a law relating to the Defence Services."

The jurisdiction conferred on the High Court under Section 44 is known as the writ jurisdiction. Jurisdiction to protect Fundamental rights of persons is also conferred on the High Court under this section. Fundamental Rights of persons are listed under sub-section (4) of Section 4 of the Constitution. The same are briefly stated as under:

1. Security of person;
2. Safeguard as to arrest and detention;
3. Slavery and Forced Labour prohibited;
4. Protection against retrospective punishment;
5. Freedom of Movement;
6. Freedom of assembly;
7. Freedom of association;

8. Freedom of trade, business or profession;
9. Freedom of speech;
10. Freedom of religion;
11. Safeguard against taxation for purposes of any particular religion;
12. Safeguard as to educational institutions in respect of religion etc.
13. Right of State subjects to acquire, hold and dispose of property;
14. Protection of property;
15. Equality of State subjects;
16. Non-discrimination in respect of access to public places;
17. Safeguard against discrimination in services;
18. Abolition of untouchability.

Appellate Jurisdiction

High Court has appellate jurisdiction against the judgments, decisions, decree and sentences passed by the civil and criminal Courts

Administrative Divisions of Azad Jammu & Kashmir

The state is administratively divided into three divisions which, in turn, are divided into ten districts

Division	District	Area (km ²)	Population (2017 Census)	Headquarters
Mirpur	Mirpur	1,010	456,200	New Mirpur City
	Kotli	1,862	774,194	Kotli
	Bhimber	1,516	420,624	Bhimber
Muzaffarabad	Muzaffarabad	1,642	650,370	Muzaffarabad
	Hattian	854	230,529	Hattian Bala
	Neelam Valley	3,621	191,251	Athmuqam
Poonch	Poonch	855	500,571	Rawalakot

Division	District	Area (km ²)	Population (2017 Census)	Headquarters
	Haveli	600	152,124	Forward Kahuta
	Bagh	768	371,919	Bagh
	Sudhanoti	569	297,584	Palandri
Total	10 districts	13,297	4,045,366	

Education in Azad Jammu & Kashmir

The literacy rate in Azad Kashmir was 65% in 2017, higher than in any other region of Pakistan. However, only 2.4% were graduates, compared to the average of 2.9% for Pakistan.

Universities

The following is a list of universities recognized by Higher Education Commission of Pakistan (HEC):

University	Location(s)	Established	Type	Specialization
Mirpur University of Science and Technology, Mirpur	Mirpur	1980 (2008)*	Public	Engineering & Technology
University of Azad Jammu and Kashmir	Muzaffarabad	1980	Public	General
University of Azad Jammu and Kashmir (Neelum Campus)	Neelum	2013	Public	General
University of Azad Jammu and Kashmir (Jhelum Valley)	Jhelum Valley	2013	Public	General

University	Location(s)	Established	Type	Specialization
Campus)	District			
Al-Khair University	Bhimber	1994 (2011*)	Private	General
Mohi-ud-Din Islamic University	Nerian Sharif	2000	Private	General
University of Poonch (Rawlakot Campus)	Rawalakot	1980 (2012)*	Public	General
University of Poonch (SM Campus, Mong, Sudhnoti District)	Sudhnoti District	2014	Public	General
University of Poonch (Kahuta Campus, Haveli District)	Haveli District	2015	Public	General
Women University of Azad Jammu and Kashmir Bagh	Bagh	2013	Public	General
University of Management Sciences and Information Technology	Kotli	2014	Public	General
Mirpur University of Science and Technology (Bhimber Campus)	Bhimber	2013	Public	Science & Humanities

Cadet College Palandri

- Cadet College Palandri in Palandri (Dist Sudhnoti)

Medical colleges

The following is a list of undergraduate medical institutions recognised by Pakistan Medical and Dental Council (PMDC) as of 2013.

Citi Law College, Near CMH, Rawalakot Ph: 05824-442207, 051-4852737 www.clc.edu.pk

- Mohtarma Benazir Bhutto Shaheed Medical College in Mirpur
- Azad Jammu Kashmir Medical College in Muzaffarabad
- Poonch Medical College in Rawalakot

Private medical colleges

- Mohi-ud-Din Islamic Medical College in Mirpur

Law Colleges in AJK

1-Citi Law College Rawalakot

2-Kashmir college of Education & Law Mirpur

3- Khan Muhammad Law College Bhimber

4- Tech Era College of Sciences & Information Muzaffarabad

Demography of Azad Jammu & Kashmir

Population

The population of Azad Kashmir, according to the preliminary results of the 2017 Census, is 4.45 million. The website of the AJK government reports the literacy rate to be 74%, with the enrolment rate in primary school being 98% and 90% for boys and girls respectively.

The population of Azad Kashmir is almost entirely Muslim. The people of this region culturally differ from the Kashmiris living in the Kashmir Valley of Jammu and Kashmir, and are closer to the culture of Jammu. Mirpur, Kotli and Bhimber are all old towns of the Jammu region.^[52]

Religion

Azad Jammu and Kashmir has an almost entirely Muslim population. According to a data maintained by Christian community organizations, there are around 4,500 Christian residents in the region. Bhimber is home to most of them, followed by Mirpur and Muzaffarabad. A few dozen families also live in Kotli, Poonch and Bagh. However, the Christian community has been struggling to get residential status and property rights in AJK. There is no official data on the total number of Bahais in AJK. Only six families are known to be living in Muzaffarabad while some of them live in rural areas. The followers of the Ahmadi faith is estimated to be somewhere between 20,000 and 25,000 and most of them live in Kotli, Mirpur Bhimber and Muzaffarabad.

Ethnic groups

Most residents of the region are not ethnic Kashmiris. Rather, the majority in Azad Kashmir are Pahari people who are ethnically related to Punjabis.

The main communities living in this region are:

- Gujjars – They are an agricultural tribe and are estimated to be the largest community living in ten districts of Azad Kashmir.
- Sudhans – (also known as Sadozai, Sardar) are second largest tribe mainly living the districts of Poonch, Sudhanoti, Bagh and Kotli in Azad Kashmir, allegedly originating from Pashtun areas Together with the Rajputs, they are the source of most of Azad Kashmir's political leaders.
- Jats – They are one of the larger communities of AJK and primarily inhabit the Districts of Mirpur, Bhimber and Kotli. A large Mirpuris population lives in the UK and it is estimated that more people of Mirpuri origins are now residing in the UK than in Mirpur district. The district Mirpur retains strong ties with the UK.
- Rajputs – They are spread across the territory, and they number little under half a million. Together with the Sundhans, they are the source of most of Azad Kashmir's political class.^[61]
- Mughals – Largely located in Bagh and Muzaffarabad districts.
- Awans – A clan with significant numbers found in Azad Jammu and Kashmir, living mainly in the Bagh, Poonch, Hattian Bala and Muzaffarabad. Besides Azad Kashmir they also reside in Punjab and Khyber Pakhtunkhwa in large numbers.
- Abbasis – They are a large clan in Azad Jammu and Kashmir and mostly live in Bagh, Hattian Bala and Muzaffarabad districts. Besides Azad Kashmir, they also inhabit, Abbottabad and upper Potohar Punjab in large numbers.
- Kashmiris – Ethnic Kashmiri populations are found in Neelam Valley and Leepa Valley (see Kashmiris in Azad Kashmir).^[63]

The culture of Azad Kashmir has many similarities to that of northern Punjabi (Potohar) culture in Punjab province, while the Sudhans have oral tradition of Pashtuns. The Peshawari turban is worn by some Sudhans in the area.

The traditional dress of the women is the shalwar kameez in Pahari style. The shalwar kameez is commonly worn by both men and women. Women use shawl to cover their head and upper body.

Languages of Azad Jammu & Kashmir

The official language of Azad Kashmir is Urdu, while English is used in higher domains. The majority of the populations, however, are native speakers of other languages. The foremost among these is Pahari-Pothwari, with its various dialects. There are also sizeable communities speaking Gujari and Kashmiri, as well as pockets of speakers of Shina, Pashto and Kundal Shahi. With the exception of Pashto and English, these languages belong to the Indo-Aryan language family.

The dialects of the Pahari-Pothwari language complex cover most of the territory of Azad Kashmir. These are also spoken across the Line of Control in neighbouring areas of Indian Jammu and Kashmir, and are closely related both to Punjabi to the south and Hinko to the northwest. The language variety in the southern districts of Azad Kashmir is known by a variety of names – including *Mirpuri*, *Pothwari* and *Pahari* – and is closely related to the Pothwari proper spoken to the east in the Pothohar region of Punjab. The dialects of the central districts of Azad Kashmir are occasionally referred to in the literature as *Chibhali* or *Punchi*, but the speakers themselves usually call them *Pahari*, an ambiguous

name that is also used for several unrelated languages of the Lower Himalayas. Going north, the speech forms gradually change into Hindko. Already in Muzaffarabad District the preferred local name for the language is *Hindko*, although it is still apparently more closely related to the core dialects of Pahari. Further north in the Neelam Valley the dialect, locally also known as *Parmi*, can more unambiguously be subsumed under Hindko.

Another major language of Azad Kashmir is Gujar. It is spoken by several hundred thousand people among the traditionally nomadic Gujars, many of whom are nowadays settled. Not all ethnic Gujars speak Gujar, the proportion of those who have shifted to other languages is probably higher in southern Azad Kashmir. Gujar is most closely related to the Rajasthani languages (particularly Mewati), although it also shares features with Punjabi. It is dispersed over large areas in northern Pakistan and India. Within Pakistan, the Gujar dialects of Azad Kashmir are more similar, in terms of shared basic vocabulary and mutual intelligibility, to the Gujar varieties of the neighbouring Hazara region than to the dialects spoken further to the northwest in Khyber Pakhtunkhwa and north in Gilgit.

There are scattered communities of Kashmiri speakers, notably in the Neelam Valley, where they form the second-largest language group after speakers of Hindko. There have been calls for the teaching of Kashmiri (particularly in order to counter India's claim of promoting the culture of Kashmir), but the limited attempts at introducing the language at the secondary school level have not been successful, and it is Urdu, rather than Kashmiri, that Kashmiri Muslims have seen as their identity symbol. There is an ongoing process of gradual shift to larger local languages,^[64] but at least in the Neelam Valley there still exist communities for whom Kashmiri is the sole mother tongue.

In the northernmost district of Neelam, there are pockets of other languages. Shina, which like Kashmiri belongs to the Dardic group, is present in two distinct varieties spoken altogether in three villages. The Iranian language Pashto, the major language of the neighbouring province of Khyber Pakhtunkhwa, is spoken in two villages in Azad Kashmir, both situated on the Line of Control. The endangered Kundal Shahi is native to the eponymous village and it is the only language not found outside Azad Kashmir.



Kashmir Issue and its Current Situation

On ground Facts

Administered by	Area	Population	% Muslim	% Hindu	% Buddhist	% Other
India	Kashmir Valley	~4 million	95%	4%	–	–
	Jammu	~3 million	30%	66%	–	4%
	Ladakh	~0.25 million	46%	–	50%	3%
Pakistan	Gilgit-Baltistan	~1 million	99%	–	–	–
	Azad Kashmir	~2.6 million	100%	–	–	–
China	Aksai Chin	–	–	–	–	–
	Shaksgam Valley	–	–	–	–	–

Article 370 and 35-A in Indian Constitution

Article 370 of the Indian constitution gave special status to Jammu and Kashmir, a region located in the northern part of Indian subcontinent which was administered by India as a state from 1954 to 31 October 2019, conferring it with the power to have a separate constitution, a state flag and autonomy over the internal administration of the state. The Indian-administered Jammu and Kashmir is part of the larger region of Kashmir which has been a subject of dispute since 1947 between India, Pakistan and, partly, China,

The article was drafted in Part XXI of the Constitution titled "**Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions**". The Constituent Assembly of Jammu and Kashmir, after its establishment, was empowered to recommend the articles of the Indian constitution that should be applied to the state or to abrogate the Article 370 altogether. After consultation with the state's

Constituent Assembly, the 1954 Presidential Order was issued, specifying the articles of the Indian constitution that applied to the state. Since the Constituent Assembly dissolved itself without recommending the abrogation of Article 370, the article was deemed to have become a permanent feature of the Indian Constitution.

This article, along with Article 35A, defined that the Jammu and Kashmir state's residents live under a separate set of laws, including those related to citizenship, ownership of property, and fundamental rights, as compared to residents of other Indian states.^[8] As a result of this provision, Indian citizens from other states could not purchase land or property in Jammu & Kashmir.

Abrogation of Article 370 and 35-A by India

On 5 August 2019, the Government of India issued a constitutional order superseding the 1954 order, and making all the provisions of the Indian constitution applicable to Jammu and Kashmir based on the resolution passed in both houses of India's parliament with 2/3 majority. Following the resolutions passed in both houses of the parliament, he issued a further order on 6 August declaring all the clauses of Article 370 except clause 1 to be inoperative.

In addition, the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganization Act, 2019 was passed by the parliament, enacting the division of the state of Jammu and Kashmir into two union territories to be called Union Territory of Jammu and Kashmir and Union Territory of Ladakh. The reorganization took place on 31 October 2019.

Pakistan's Kashmir Policy Post-Article 370

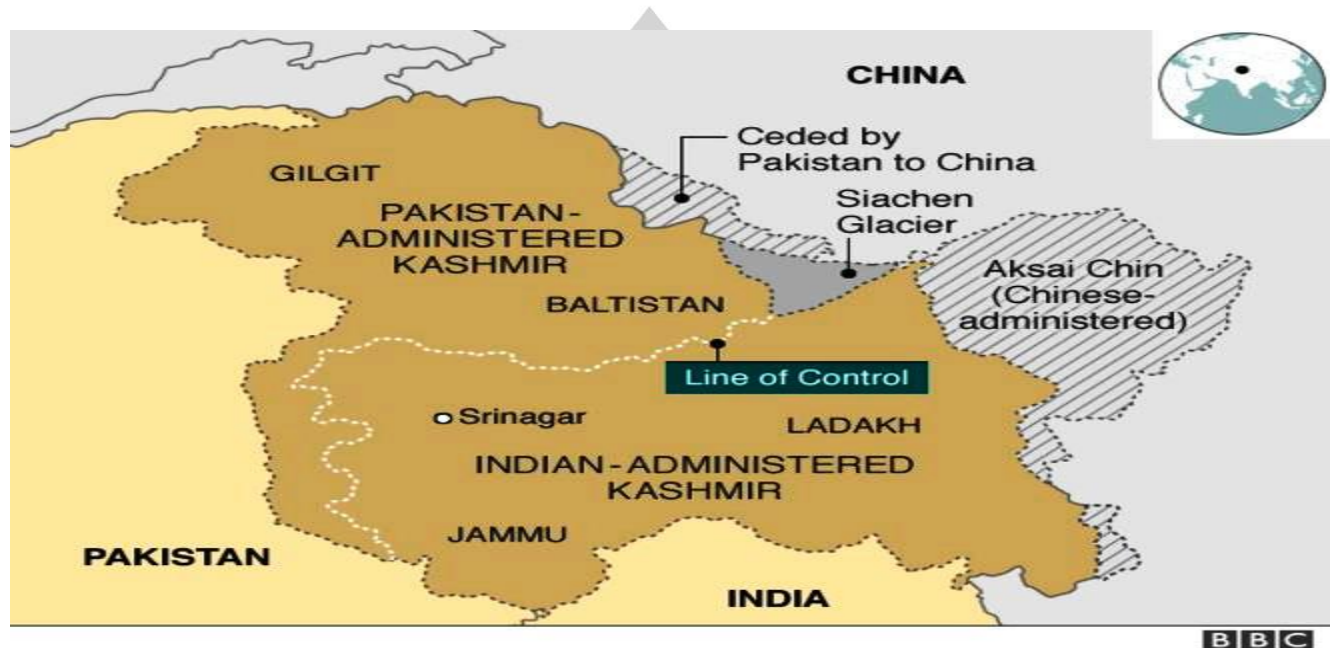
- The change in the status of the disputed territory of Jammu and Kashmir can be seen as another manifestation of the Narendra Modi-led BJP Government's *Hindutva* ideology.
- In anticipation of an adverse reaction to the change, the Indian Government moved an additional 50,000 military and paramilitary troops into the already highly-militarised area.
- The eventual lifting of the current security curfew is likely to be accompanied by further large-scale protests. India may respond by blaming Pakistan and again conducting "surgical strikes" inside Pakistani territory.
- Pakistani Prime Minister Imran Khan has made it clear that his country will respond strongly to any further military actions launched by India across the de-facto border, the Line of Control.
- In an emotionally-charged atmosphere, the Kashmir situation has brought the South Asian subcontinent to the brink of a serious crisis. Whether matters escalate will depend upon how the two nuclear-armed neighbours choose to handle the volatile situation.

Summary

Promotion of Hindutva (Nefarious) Ideology

India's move to change the status of the disputed state of Jammu and Kashmir is another manifestation of the Narendra Modi-led BJP Government's *Hindutva* ideology, which is aimed at "saffronising" India and turning it into a Hindu-dominated "Hindustan". In so doing, it has not only manipulated its own Constitution, but has also trampled democratic norms and debased the United Nations Security Council resolutions recognising the territory as an

international dispute, to which Pakistan is also a legitimate party, and promising the people of Kashmir an opportunity to determine their own future through a free and fair plebiscite under UN auspices. That promise was reiterated by Prime Minister Nehru on several occasions, with the assurance that he would respect the verdict of the Kashmiri people and that, if they were to tell India to leave, it would quit Kashmir without hesitation. As a consequence, the conditional accession of the state to the Indian Union was guaranteed through Articles 370 and 35A of the Indian Constitution.



Analysis

Under Articles 370 and 35A, the state of Jammu and Kashmir was allowed to have its own constitution and flag; its demographic makeup was assured by disallowing the purchase of property in the state by people from other parts of India. The special status thus granted to the Muslim-majority state by India's founding Prime Minister seven decades ago has now been revoked through a Presidential decree with its post-facto passage in the two Houses of Parliament amid protests by opposition MPs. The special constitutional provisions for Jammu and Kashmir could only be amended through the recommendation of the state assembly. In the event, the BJP systematically prepared grounds for its action by first dismissing the state government, of which it was itself a coalition partner, and then dismissing the state assembly and imposing Governor's rule. All of those actions were carried out over the course of the past year or so. Then, at the beginning of August 2019, making use of the political vacuum in the state, the government secured a presidential decree to revoke Articles 370 and 35A, ostensibly on the recommendations of the Governor.

Expecting a violent and adverse reaction from the populace of Jammu and Kashmir, the Modi Government moved an additional 50,000 military personnel and paramilitary troops into a highly-militarised region that already had over half a million military personnel stationed

there. The announcement of the change in the status of Jammu and Kashmir from a semi-autonomous region to a Union Territory was preceded by the imposition of a blanket curfew and the severance of all communication links, including telephone lines, mobile phones and Internet. The seriousness of the situation can be gauged from the fact that, in an unprecedented move, Hindu pilgrims conducting the *Amarnath Yatra* pilgrimage were asked to leave the territory immediately and all other tourists and visitors were also told to move out.

Residents have been locked down in their homes with soldiers stationed on almost every street. The curfew is now in its third week, with the exception of two short breaks for Friday and Eid prayers that saw angry demonstrations by stone-throwing Kashmiris. There have been reports of serious shortages of food and medical supplies. Over two thousand people have been detained, including three pro-India former Chief Ministers. Hitherto-fore Indian loyalists such as Farooq Abdullah and the BJP's former coalition partner, Mehbooba Mufti, have publicly acknowledged that their forefathers and they made an error of judgement in joining with India and have conceded that Pakistan's founder, Muhammad Ali Jinnah, was right in seeking a separate state for the Muslims.

The unrest is not confined to the Predominantly-Muslim Kashmir Valley. Widespread unrest has also been witnessed in the Kargil region, which has been made part of the new Ladakh Union Territory, now separated from Jammu and Kashmir.

Certain BJP leaders have threatened to choke the supply of rivers that flow to Pakistan and Defence Minister Rajnath Singh has made a veiled threat to wrest the Pakistani-controlled part of Jammu and Kashmir. Tensions are also running high on the Line of Control (LoC), with an increasing frequency of firing incidents along the de-facto border.

What seems to have apparently encouraged the extremist Hindu dispensation in India to take this action is the apathy of the international community towards the plight of Kashmiris, who were being openly subjected to the use of brute force, including the use of pellet guns that blinded and seriously injured thousands of unarmed civilians under the guise of counter-terrorism operations. India's so-called "surgical strike" across the LoC in September 2016 was applauded by many in the West, rather than cautioning India that it was embarking on a dangerous path. This further emboldened India to carry out aerial bombardment inside Pakistani territory in February 2019 until Pakistan retaliated. In the process, two Indian aircraft were downed, one of which fell on the Pakistani side, and its pilot captured. It deterred further military action by India at the time.

With the induction of additional troops, India may feel confident of its capability to launch new cross-LoC military actions but, in an environment of frayed tempers and charged emotions, they would surely escalate very quickly. Pakistani Prime Minister Imran Khan has made it clear that his country would respond strongly to any further military adventurism by India. Given the emotionally-charged atmosphere and the public expectation for a befitting response to any Indian aggression, the Pakistani leadership is left with little other option.

To further complicate matters, in a statement symbolically made from India's nuclear testing site at Pokhran in the Rajasthan desert, the Indian Defence Minister hinted at India abandoning its much-vaunted "No First Use" nuclear policy (although Pakistan has never given much

credence to that policy). The already delicate strategic stability in South Asia, with its non-existent crisis management and restraint mechanisms, is now under severe stress. Unfortunately, the international community has not yet fully woken up to that reality and, if anything, seems to be waiting for things to boil over before springing into action, by which time it may be too late.

The UNSC has held an informal closed-door meeting at the request of Pakistan and China, and advised both India and Pakistan to exercise caution. It may meet again formally to take up the issue which is still on the UNSC agenda. What is not commonly known is that the UN Military Observers Group in India and Pakistan (UNMOGIP) is the oldest UN peacekeeping mission. While the UNMOGIP observers are allowed to move freely to perform their assigned duties on the Pakistani side, India does not permit them to move out of Srinagar. US President Trump has expressed his concern at the deteriorating situation and has had telephone conversations with both the Indian and Pakistani leaders in an attempt to cool down the atmosphere but, beyond similar calls by the British Prime Minister, there has not been a more energetic and concerted effort by the global powers to prevent the crisis from getting out of hand.

India will one day have to lift the curfew and Kashmiris, including those who once gave their loyalty to the Indian State, will come out in large numbers to protest against the present Indian action. Given the track record of the Modi Government's handling of past demonstrations, and with increased numbers of troops available to them, the authorities are likely to use increased force to suppress dissent; large-scale violence and bloodletting is a not unlikely result. As has happened in the past, the Indian authorities will blame Pakistan for inciting violence and respond with increased actions along the LoC with the accompanying potential for escalation.

In a recent interview with the *New York Times*, Prime Minister Khan again highlighted the dangers inherent in an armed conflict between two nuclear-armed states, the consequences of which will be disastrous not only for the South Asian region, but for the wider world, as well.

Implications of Revocation of Article 370

Riding the Hindutva wave, BJP government in India has abrogated Article 370 of the Indian constitution, which gave special status to Indian Occupied Kashmir (IOK). This is not only a violation of UN resolutions and bilateral agreements between Pakistan and India, it is also against the commitments made in the Instrument of Accession India had signed with Maharaja of Kashmir. Any changes to the article could only be made with the consent of the Constituent Assembly of Jammu and Kashmir, which had dissolved itself in 1957 after drafting State's constitution. While the Presidential order has replaced "Constituent Assembly" with "Legislative Assembly, in reality IOK has been ruled by the Governor appointed by New Delhi since June 2018, after dissolution of Legislative Assembly. With Article 370 revoked, Article 35A, which prohibited outsiders from buying property in the state, has also been dissolved. Now, any Indian can purchase property and apply for government jobs. It will ultimately lead to a demographic and cultural change in the Muslim-majority region. There are reports that the additional forces recently moved to IOK have a large number of hard core criminals in disguise. Therefore, Kashmiri people rising against the decision or not, will be subjected to killing, rape, torture and violence. This in the long run will lead to many Kashmiris crossing

the LOC into AJ&K or to main land India. This will further change the demography of the region.

According to legal experts, in the absence of the Constituent Assembly, the presidential order cannot change the wording of the article or abrogate it. If the action is challenged in the Indian court by people of Kashmir and decided on merit, it would be cancelled. J&K High Court had already given a verdict on non-violability of Article 370.

To give credibility to their action, BJP ministers are claiming that it gives full rights to Kashmiris in accordance with their long standing aspirations. If what they claim is true, then why Indian government arrested the local leadership, moved out tourists and students from the area in an emergency, and moved in large number of additional forces to maintain law and order.

In January, 1948 India herself had approached United Nations and had accepted its resolution on plebiscite. During past seven decades, India has remained part of all UN discussions / decisions on Kashmir. Doing away with Article 370 does not only flout UN resolutions on the subject, but also ends Shimla agreement and Lahore declaration. Since this action renders Instrument of Accession null and void, India is now in forceful occupation of IOK. For the past seven decades, there have been three parties to the conflict, Pakistan, people of Kashmir and India. Indian unilateral decision on changing status of Kashmir, provides Pakistan with an opportunity to walk away from any bilateral agreements, most importantly the Shimla agreement which India has always used to refuse third party mediation as the Kashmir dispute does not remain a bilateral issue anymore.

Indian unilateral decision to violate UN resolutions, multilateral and bilateral agreements and commitments made to the people of Kashmir, suggest India can move away from any multilateral or bilateral agreements at will, at any time. Disregard for UN resolutions should completely shut the door for Indian aspirations for permanent membership of the UNSC. Similarly, India cannot be trusted to meet her commitments with the NSG, as her failure to honour commitments on nuclear material related deals, will seriously jeopardise international efforts on nuclear proliferation.

If the people of the IOK do not act now, their future generations will continue to suffer. Their resistance would not only internationalise the issue, but will also give impetus to all other separatist movements in India. An unprecedented uprising in IOK will initially lead to extreme use of force by Indian government to suppress the protests, but ultimately, it will have to give in. Over 200 million Muslims, 30 million Christians and over 21 million Sikhs living in India have suffered for more than 70 years. Indian government's latest decision on article 370 should help them read the Indian mind-set and they must struggle to get their rights at this time. If the Kashmir movement as well other separatist movements pick up momentum, this can turn out to be Waterloo for the Indian state. BJP's extremist policies aimed at making Akhand Bharat, may ultimately lead to Balkanisation of India.

Kashmiri diaspora in different countries need to support their brethren by staging protests to highlight the consequences of Indian decision for people of Kashmir. They should also make

extensive use of social as well as electronic media to reach their intended audience to get favourable public opinion.

BJP is known for unwittingly providing opportunities to Pakistan. BJP government's decision to carryout nuclear tests in 1998 helped Pakistan to become an overt nuclear power. The abrogation of Article 370 should also be taken as an opportunity to internationalise the issue and come out of the bindings of Shimla agreement and Lahore declaration.

Pakistan must continue to provide all possible moral and diplomatic support to the people of Kashmir. The issue should be taken up with UN Security Council, OIC and other international fora. At the same time, all the Ambassadors in Islamabad should be briefed about the repercussions of the Indian step for Kashmiri people as well as the region.

Since India has violated multilateral and bilateral agreements, Pakistan should consider to close its air space for Indian commercial flights, reminding India of the Ganga hijacking incident. Government of Pakistan's decision to discontinue trade recalling of our High Commissioner from New Delhi and sending the Indian High Commissioner back to Delhi are steps in the right direction.

Continuing with her past record, Indian government may stage manage a Pulwama like incident to blame Pakistan and take harsher measures against the people of Kashmir. Pakistan's armed forces must remain vigilant and prepared to counter any Indian misadventure.

This is a God sent opportunity, Pakistan must make the best use of it. Pakistan should coordinate with other countries to project India as a country which cannot be trusted in the multilateral or bilateral agreements; hence ineligible for becoming permanent member of the UNSC or part of the NSG. India has always been selective in discussing bilateral issues, however, now Pakistan must put reinstatement of Article 370 as a precondition for comprehensive dialogue on all issues including Kashmir.

United Nations Military Observer Group (UNMOG)

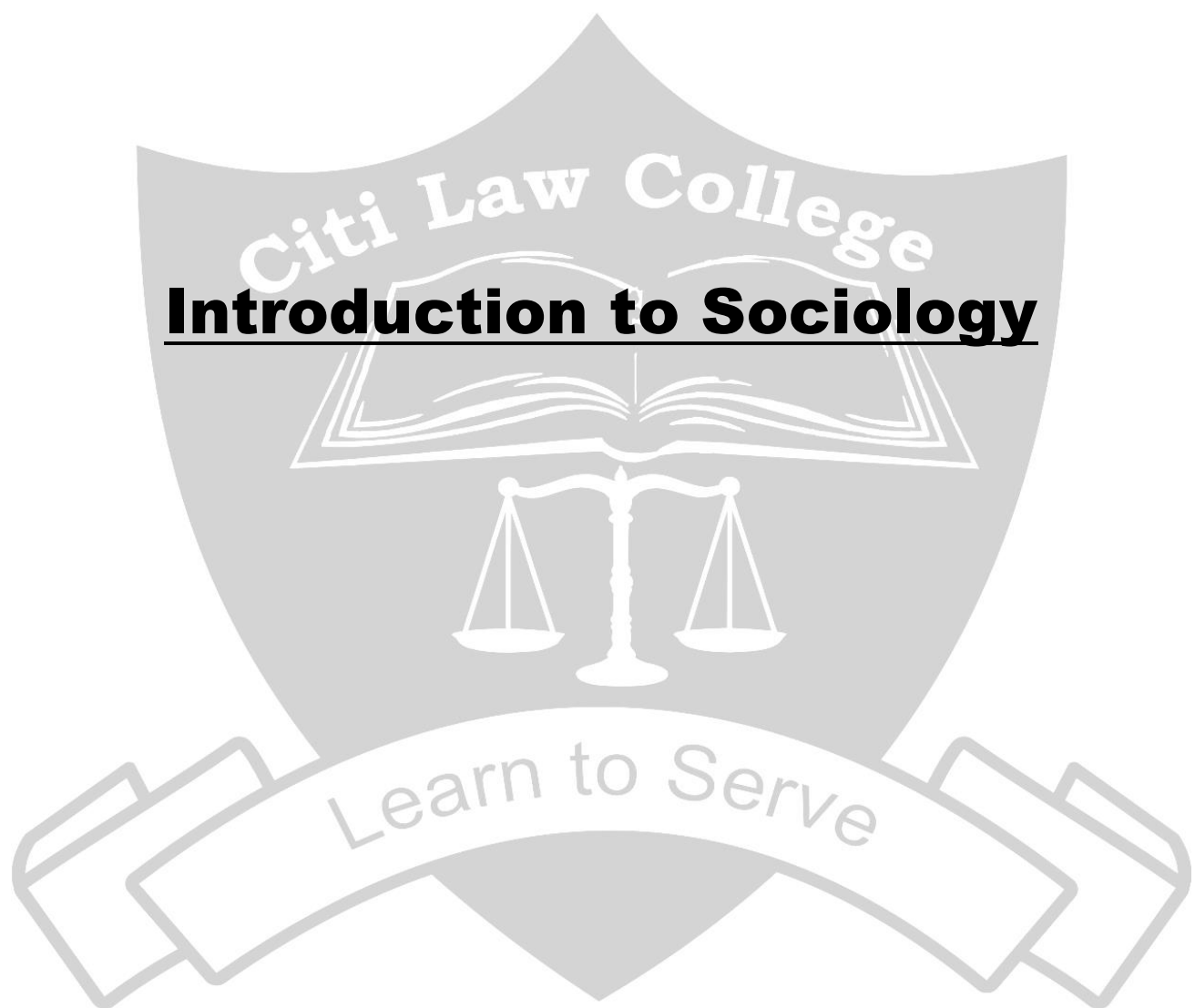
The Security Council Resolution 47 (1948) also enlarged the membership of the UNCIP to 5 members. India and Pakistan signed the Karachi Agreement in July 1949 and established a ceasefire line to be supervised by observers. After the termination of the UNCIP, the Security Council passed Resolution 91 (1951) and established a *United Nations Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan* (UNMOGIP) to observe and report violations of ceasefire.

After the Indo-Pakistani War of 1971, the two countries signed the Simla Agreement in 1972 to define the Line of Control in Kashmir. India and Pakistan disagree on UNMOGIP's mandate in Kashmir because India argued that the mandate of UNMOGIP has lapsed after the Simla agreement because it was specifically established to observe ceasefire according to the Karachi Agreement.

However, The Secretary General of the United Nations maintained that the UNMOGIP should continue to function because no resolution has been passed to terminate it. India has partially

restricted the activities of the unarmed 45 UN observers on the Indian side of the Line of Control on the grounds that the mandate of UNMOGIP has lapsed.





Introduction to Sociology

Overview

Have you ever wondered why individuals and societies are so varied? Do you ask what social forces have shaped different existences? The quest to understand society is urgent and important, for if we cannot understand the social world, we are more likely to be overwhelmed by it. We also need to understand social processes if we want to influence them. Sociology can help us to understand ourselves better, since it examines how the social world influences the way we think, feel, and act. It can also help with decision-making, both our own and that of larger organizations. Sociologists can gather systematic information from which to make a decision, provide insights into what is going on in a situation, and present alternatives.

What is Sociology?

Sociology is the scientific study of society, including patterns of social relationships, social interaction, and culture. The term *sociology* was first used by Frenchman Auguste Comte in the 1830s when he proposed a synthetic science uniting all knowledge about human activity. In the academic world, sociology is considered one of the social sciences.

What Do Sociologists Study?

Sociologists study all things human, from the interactions between two people to the complex relationships between nations or multinational corporations. While sociology assumes that human actions are patterned, individuals still have room for choices. Becoming aware of the social processes that influence the way humans think, feel, and behave plus having the will to act can help individuals to shape the social forces they face.

The Origins of Sociology

Sociologists believe that our social surroundings influence thought and action. For example, the rise of the social sciences developed in response to social changes. In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, Europeans were exploring the world and voyagers returned from Asia, the Americas, Africa, and the South Seas with amazing stories of other societies and civilizations. Widely different social practices challenged the view that European life reflected the natural order of God.

In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, Western Europe was rocked by technical, economic, and social changes that forever changed the social order. Science and technology were developing rapidly. James Watt invented the steam engine in 1769, and in 1865 Joseph Lister discovered that an antiseptic barrier could be placed between a wound and germs in the atmosphere to inhibit infection. These and other scientific developments spurred social changes and offered hope that scientific methods might help explain the social as well as the natural world. This trend was part of a more general growth in rationalism.

The industrial revolution began in Britain in the late eighteenth century. By the late nineteenth century, the old order was collapsing “under the twin blows of industrialism and revolutionary democracy. Mechanical industry was growing, and thousands of people were

migrating to cities to work in the new factories. People once rooted in the land and social communities where they farmed found themselves crowded into cities. The traditional authority of the church, the village, and the family were being undermined by impersonal factory and city life.



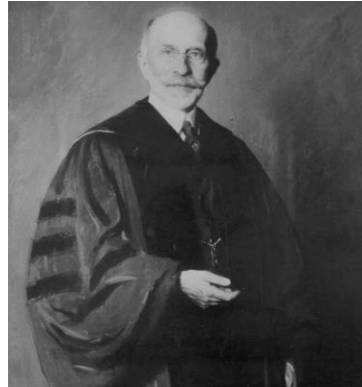
Capitalism also grew in Western Europe in the nineteenth century. This meant that relatively few people owned the means of production—such as factories—while many others had to sell their labor to those owners. At the same time, relatively impersonal financial markets began to expand. The modern epoch was also marked by the development of administrative state power, which involved increasing concentrations of information and armed power

Finally, there was enormous population growth worldwide in this period, due to longer life expectancy and major decreases in child death rates. These massive social changes lent new urgency to the development of the social sciences, as early sociological thinkers struggled with the vast implications of economic, social and political revolutions. All the major figures in the early years of sociology thought about the “great transformation” from simple, preliterate societies to massive, complex, industrial societies.



The Institutionalization of Sociology

Sociology was taught by that name for the first time at the University of Kansas in 1890 by Frank Blackmar, under the course title Elements of Sociology, where it remains the oldest continuing sociology course in the United States. The first academic department of sociology was established in 1892 at the University of Chicago by Albion W. Small, who in 1895 founded the American Journal of Sociology.



The first European department of sociology was founded in 1895 at the University of Bordeaux by Émile Durkheim, founder of *L'Année Sociologique* (1896). The first sociology department to be established in the United Kingdom was at the London School of Economics and Political Science (home of the *British Journal of Sociology*) in 1904.

In 1919 a sociology department was established in Germany at the Ludwig Maximilians University of Munich by Max Weber, and in 1920 by Florian Znaniecki.



International cooperation in sociology began in 1893 when René Worms founded the Institut *International de Sociologie*, which was later eclipsed by the much larger International Sociological Association (ISA), founded in 1949. In 1905, the American Sociological Association, the world's largest association of professional sociologists, was founded, and in 1909 the *Deutsche Gesellschaft für Soziologie* (German Society for Sociology) was founded by Ferdinand Tönnies and Max Weber, among others.

Fields of Sociology

The sociologist is especially interested in customs, traditions and values which emerge from group living and in the way group living is in turn affected by these customs, traditions and values. Sociology is interested in the way groups interact with one another and in the processes and institutions which they develop.

Sociology is subdivided into many specialized fields of which some of are:

- Applied sociology
- Collective behaviour
- Community
- Comparative sociology
- Crime and delinquency
- Cultural sociology
- Demography
- Deviant behaviour
- Formal and complex organizations
- Human ecology
- Industrial sociology
- Law and society
- Marriage and Family
- Medical sociology
- Military sociology
- Political sociology
- Sociology of Religion
- Urban sociology
- Social psychology
- Social control
- Rural sociology
- Sociological theory
- Sociology of Education

Sociology is only one of the social sciences and other disciplines share its interest in many topics. Its interest in communication and public opinion is shared by psychology and political

science, criminology is shared with psychology, political science and law and police science. Sociology is especially close to psychology and anthropology and overlaps them constantly

THE SOCIOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE

- **Seeing the general in the particular**
- **Gender is also a social construction**
- **Society affects what we do**
- **applying the sociological perspective**
- **Benefits of Sociological Perspective**

Sociology is a reasoned and rigorous study of human social life, social groups, and societies. At the heart of Sociology is a distinctive point of view called “the sociological perspective”. Thus sociology offers a perspective, a view of the world. For example: why do human lives seem to follow certain predictable Pattern.

- **Our lives do not unfold according to sheer chance,**
- **Nor do we decide for ourselves how to live, acting on what is called ‘free will’.**

We make many important decisions everyday, of course, but always within the larger arena called “society”. The essential wisdom of sociology is that:

Our social world guides our actions and life choices just as the seasons influence our activities and clothing.

This is sociological perspective. Perspective means a view or an outlook or an approach or an *imagination* (of the world). Hence sociological perspective means *an approach to understanding human behavior by placing it within its broader social context*.

People live in a society. Society is a group of people who share a culture and a territory. People’s behavior is influenced by their **society**. To find out why people do what they do, sociologists look at **social location**, where people are located in a particular society.

For human beings the existence of society is essential. It is essential:

- For the survival of human child at birth; and also**
- For social experience – for purposes of ‘nurturance’.**

Seeing the general in the particular:

It means identifying general patterns in the behavior of particular people. Although every individual is unique, a society shapes the lives of its members. People in the USA are much more likely to expect love to figure in marriage than, say, people living in a traditional village in rural Pakistan. Nevertheless, every society acts differently on various categories of people (children compared to adults; women compared to men, rich compared to poor). General categories to which we belong shape our experiences. Children are different from adults, more than just biological maturity. Society attaches meaning to age, so that we experience distinct stages in our lives i.e. childhood, adolescence, early adulthood, late adulthood, and old age. In fact all these stages with respect to the lines of demarcation (years as cutting points) are determined by society. What is the position of a particular age category in the society and what

are the roles and responsibilities assigned to members of that age group are all determined by that society. Therefore **age is social construction**.

Children are often considered as dependent, whereas adults as responsible. What about the old? What is the cutting age point for this group and what are the society's expectations about this group in Pakistani rural society? Are these expectations in Pakistani rural society different from Pakistani urban society? Although **societies define the stages of life differently, yet there are differences by social class within the same society**. Here a particular social class may be considered as a sub-society in itself and may have their own distinct definition of stages of life.

Gender is also a social construction

Male and female is a biological distinction but there are different role expectations attached to these two categories of human beings in different societies. Societies give them different work and different family responsibilities. The advantages and opportunities available to us differ by gender. Not going into the rationale of such differences, for the present one could simply say that it is the society that determines the image of a gender. Further to the societal variations in gender outlooks, one could see gender differences by social class in the same society.

Society affects what we do

To see the power of society to shape individual choices, consider the number of children women have. In the US the average woman has slightly fewer than two children during her lifetime. In Pakistan it is four, in India about three, in South Africa about four, in Saudi Arabia about six, and in Niger about seven. Why these striking differences? Society has much to do with decisions women and men make about childbearing. Another illustration of power of society to shape even our most private choices comes from the study of suicide. What could be a more personal choice than taking one's own life? Emile Durkheim showed that social forces are at work even in the apparently isolated case of self-destruction. One has to look into such individual decisions in social context. You may look at the social forces that are at work for the suicide cases in Pakistan.

Applying the sociological perspective

People should develop the ability to understand their own lives in terms of larger social forces. This is called

Sociological imagination, a concept given by C. Wright Mills. Sociological imagination is the strategies that can help you sort out the multiple circumstances that could be responsible for your social experiences, your life choices, and your life chances. Therefore, think sociologically, which implies to cultivating the sociological imagination. It is easy to apply sociological perspective when we encounter people who differ from us because they remind us that society shapes individual lives. Also an introduction to sociology is an invitation to learn a new way of looking at familiar patterns of social life.

Benefits of Sociological Perspective

Applying the sociological perspectives to our daily lives benefits us in four ways:

Citi Law College, Near CMH, Rawalakot Ph: 05824-442207, 051-4852737 www.clc.edu.pk

1. The sociological perspective helps us to assess the truth of community held Assumptions (call it “common sense”).

We all take many things for granted, but that does not make them true. A sociological approach Encourages us to ask whether commonly held beliefs are actually true and, to the extent they are racial differences; and social class differences. Where do these differences come from?

2. The sociological perspective prompts us to assess both the opportunities and the Constraints that characterize our lives.

What we are likely and unlikely to accomplish for ourselves and how can we pursue our goals effectively?

3. The sociological perspective empowers us to participate actively in our society.

If we do not know how the society operates, we are likely to accept the status quo. But the greater our understanding, the more we can take an active hand in shaping our social life. Evaluating any aspect of social life – whatever your goal – requires identifying social forces at work and assessing their consequences.

4. The sociological perspective helps us recognize human variety and confront the challenges of living in a diverse world.

There is a diversity of people’s life styles, still we may consider our way of life as superior, right, and natural. All others are no good. The sociological perspective encourages us to think critically about the relative strengths and weaknesses of all ways of life, including our own.

THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK

- **The Structural-Functional Framework**
- **The Social-Conflict Framework**
- **The Symbolic-Interaction Framework**

Theory is a statement of how and why specific facts are related. The job of sociological theory is to explain social behavior in the real world. For example why some groups of people have higher suicide rates than others? In building theory, sociologists face two basic facts: What issues should we study? How should we connect the facts? How sociologists answer these questions depends on their theoretical “road map” or paradigm. (It is pronounced as para-daia-um.)

Paradigm is a basic image of society. A theoretical paradigm provides a basic image of society that guides thinking and research.

For example: Do societies remain static? Do they continuously keep? Changing? What keeps them stable? What makes societies ever changing?

Sociology has three major paradigms reflecting different images of society:

- 1. The Structural-Functional**
- 2. The Social-Conflict**
- 3. The Symbolic-Interaction**

1. The Structural-Functional Paradigm:

It is a framework for building theory that sees society as a complex system whose parts work together to promote solidarity and stability.

The paradigm is based on the idea that:

1. Our lives are guided by **social structure** i.e. relatively stable patterns of social behavior. Social Structure gives our lives shape, whether it be in families, the workplace, or the classroom.
2. Social structures can be understood in terms of their social functions, or consequences for the Operation of society as a whole. All social structures – from simple handshake to complex religious rituals – function to keep society going. All social structures contribute to the operation of Society.

1. **The consequences of any social pattern are likely to differ for various categories of people.** For example conventional family pattern provides for the support and development of children, but it also confers privileges on men while limiting the opportunities for women.
2. **People rarely perceive all the functions of a social structure.** He therefore distinguishes between **manifest functions** – **the recognized and intended consequences of a social pattern** --- and **latent functions** – *the largely unrecognized and unintended consequences*. Manifest functions of educational institution – imparting knowledge, preparing young people for job market – Latentfunction could be keeping so many young people out of the labor market.
3. **Not all the effects of any social system benefit everyone in society.** There could be **social dysfunctions** i.e. *undesirable consequences for the operation of society*. Not everyone agrees on what is Beneficial and what is harmful. Is women empowerment functional?

2. The Social-Conflict Paradigm

The social conflict framework sees society as an arena of inequality that generates conflict and change.

Unlike structural-functional paradigm, which emphasizes solidarity, this approach highlights division based on inequality. Factors like gender, ethnicity, social class, and age are linked to the unequal distribution of money, power, education, and social prestige. A conflict analysis suggests that, rather than promoting the operation of society as a whole, social structure typically benefits some people while depriving the others.

The Symbolic-Interaction Paradigm

The structural-functionalists and social-conflict paradigms share a **macro-level orientation**, meaning a focus on broad social structures that shape society as a whole. The symbolic interaction paradigm provides a **micro-level orientation**, meaning a focus on social interaction in Specific situations. The **symbolic-interaction paradigm** sees society as the product of the everyday interactions of individuals. “Society” amounts to the **shared reality** that people construct as they interact with one another. Human beings are the creatures that live in the world of symbols, attaching meaning to virtually everything. Symbols attached to reality (material or non material).

Meanings attached to symbols. Symbols are the means of communication. Therefore: Symbols as the basis of social life without symbols we would have no mechanism of perceiving others in terms of relationships (aunts and uncles, employers and teachers). Only because we have

these symbols like aunts and uncles that define for us what such relationships entail. Compare these symbols with symbols like boyfriend or girlfriend; you will see that the relationships change quite differently. Without symbols we cannot coordinate our actions with others; we would be unable to plan for a future date, time, and place. Without symbols there will be no books, movies, no schools, no hospitals, and no governments. Symbols make social life possible.

NATURE OF SOCIOLOGY AS A SUBJECT

SOCIOLOGY AS SCIENCE

- **Goals of Science**
- **Characteristics of Scientific Method**

Science is knowledge but every kind of knowledge is not science. Science is a method for the discovery of uniformities in this universe through the process of observation and re-observation; the results are organized, systematized, and made part of the body of knowledge. In this way science is a logical system that bases knowledge on direct, systematic observation. Following this method creates scientific knowledge, which rests on **empirical evidence**, that is, *information that we can verify with our senses*.

Goals of Science

The goals of science can be:

- **To explain why something happens.**
- **To make generalizations. Discovery of uniformities/principles/laws.**
- **Look for patterns in the phenomenon under observation, or recurring characteristics.**
- **To predict. To specify what will happen in the future in the light of current knowledge.**

For the attainment of the stipulated goals the procedure followed is to collect information through sensory experiences. Hence we call it observations and there is repetition of observations.

Researcher would like to be **positive** about his findings. Therefore he would like to be definite, factual, and positively sure. Hence the researcher would develop clear **observational criteria** i.e. measuring indicators for adequate explanations. This approach is called **Positivism**. Auguste Comte coined the term 'positivism', which means knowledge based on sensory experience.

Characteristics of Scientific Method

1. Empirical

The focus of attention is that phenomenon which is observable by using five senses by the human beings. If one person has observed others can also make that observation which implies that it is repeatable as well as testable.

2. Verifiable

Observations made by any one researcher could be open to confirmation or refutation by other observers. Others could also use their sensory experiences for the verification of the previous findings. The replicability of the phenomenon is essential for repeating the observation. In this way the intuitions and revelations are out of this process because these are having been the privileges of special individuals.

5. Deterministic

Through scientific method the scientists try to explain why things happen? There could be number of factors producing a particular effect but the researchers try to find out the Contribution of each factor as well as of different combinations of the same factors. In this way he tries to identify the factor or combination of factors that produce the maximum effect. In this way he tries to locate the minimum number of causal factors that explain the variation in the effect. This is the principle of parsimony. Such an exercise is an effort to determine cause-and-effect relationship.

6. Ethical and ideological neutrality

Researchers are human beings who have values, beliefs, Ideologies and norms. Effort is made that the personal values, beliefs, and ideologies do not Contaminate the research findings. If these influence, then the purity of the information is adulterated and the predictions made by the scientists will not hold true. Hence the scientific work should objective and unbiased. Since the human beings are studying the human beings to what extent they can be unbiased?

7. Statistical Generalization

Statistics is a device for comparing what is observed and what is logically expected. They are subjecting information to statistical analysis.

8. Rationalism

The collected facts have to be interpreted with arguments. Therefore the scientists try to employ rigorous rule of logic in their research work. Any knowledge that is created by applying scientific method is to be called as science. Sociology uses scientific method for the understanding, identifying the patterns, and predicting the human behavior. Therefore, sociology is science of human social life

1. Cumulative

The knowledge created by this method keeps on growing. The researchers try to develop linkages between their findings and the findings of previous researchers. The new findings may support the previous researches, refute them, or may modify but certainly there is an addition to the existing body of knowledge. The new researchers need not start from scratch,

rather they have a rich reservoir of knowledge at their disposal and they try to further build on it.

2. Self-Correcting

Possibility of error is always there but the good thing is its identification and correction. The research findings are shared with other professionals in seminars, conferences, and by printing these in professional journals. The comments are received and errors, if any, are corrected. Even the scientists are not categorical in their statements. They would usually make a statement as is supported by the evidence available at the time. Hence the statement is open to challenge by the availability of new evidence.

3.Deterministic

Through scientific method the scientists try to explain why things happen? There Could be number of factors producing a particular effect but the researchers try to find out the Contribution of each factor as well as of different combinations of the same factors. In this way he tries to identify the factor or combination of factors that produce the maximum effect. In this way he tries to locate the minimum number of causal factors that explain the variation in the effect. This is the principle of parsimony. Such an exercise is an effort to determine cause-and-effect relationship.

4. Ethical and ideological neutrality

Researchers are human beings who have values, beliefs, ideologies, and norms. Effort is made that the personal values, beliefs, and ideologies do not contaminate the research findings. If these influence then the purity of the information is adulterated and the predictions made by the scientists will not hold true. Hence the scientific work should objective and unbiased. Since the human beings are studying the human beings to What extent they can be unbiased.

5. Statistical Generalization

Statistics is a device for comparing what is observed and what is Logically expected. They are subjecting information to statistical analysis.

6. Rationalism

The collected facts have to be interpreted with arguments. Therefore the scientists try to employ rigorous rule of logic in their research work. Any knowledge that is created by applying scientific method is to be called as science. Sociology uses scientific method for the understanding, identifying the patterns, and predicting the human behavior. Therefore, sociology is science of human social life.

CLASSICAL THEORITICAL PERSPECTIVE

The Classical Theorists in Sociology (Marx, Weber, and Durkheim):

What can they tell us about environment - society relations?

The classical theorists have all been justifiably criticized during the past 40 years for ignoring the relationship of humans to their natural environment. In the current historical moment, it might be useful to alter the intellectual agenda some and focus on the possible utility of the classical theorists' work as a heuristic tool for interpreting contemporary environment - society relations

Common Points of Departure for Marx, Weber, and Durkheim

- All three were preoccupied with 'the Great Transformation' (Polanyi) that occurred with the industrialization and urbanization of Europe in the 19th century.
- All three of them applauded Darwin's work. → They each produced a vast 'oeuvre', much of which we will not review.
- All three of them analyze the contexts (eg. structures) that shape market exchanges.
- The three theorists can be considered structuralists, but they focused on different types of structures
- For Marx, think about factories that convert natural resources into commodities through human labor.
- For Weber, think about norms, but also about offices that contain bureaucracies that enforce norms.
- For Durkheim, think about norms, but also about cities that house different kinds of occupational specialists with distinct sets of norms.

Karl Marx (1818-1883)

Karl Marx conceived of societies largely as factories and cities that took in massive amounts of resources and used them to spew out a continuing stream of commodities and massive amounts of pollution.

Factory owners engage in an insatiable drive for profits which they earn by exploiting both workers and natural resources.

Technological changes (the forces of production) enhance profits.

Large landowners, railroad barons, and shipping magnates stripped rural areas of their natural resources and sent them to cities where they were fed into factories that produced wealth for their owners and pollutants for entire communities of people. In this manner a metabolic rift developed between cities where resources and pollutants piled up and the countryside which was stripped of resources.

People in capitalist societies, particularly in urban areas, became estranged from the natural world, so the rift has an experiential dimension.

Max Weber (1864-1920)

Max Weber produced a vast array of work. He wrote comparative histories of the ancient Middle East as well as of India and of China. He produced an account of the early years of capitalism in the Protestant Ethic and the Spirit of Capitalism (1905) and finally in Economy and Society (1920) a political economic account of the spread of capitalism around the globe. The environment figures in all of these analyses, sometimes only as a container for social transformations and quite frequently as an independent force, like a drought, that spurs change.

In Economy and Society Weber argues that the spread of capitalism has led to the progressive rationalization of human societies. Rationalization would include the creation of new technologies. For Weber capitalism is embodied as an accountant who wears eye shades. S/he is 'calculating, efficient, reduces uncertainty, increases predictability, and uses increasing amounts of non-human technologies' (Foster and Holleman). S/he owns the means of production and generates profits through the rational consideration of alternative courses of action. The state grows alongside capitalist enterprises and it exhibits similar qualities, with both of them creating bureaucracies.

Weber was the first theorist to accord an independent role to the state in the spread of capitalism, so people who view the state as a crucial vehicle for transforming society - environment relations will almost inevitably encounter Weberian ideas. Traditional authority is modelled on authority within families. These arrangements are referred to as patrimonial states. With spread of rationalization states derive more of their authority from rationally based, more meritocratic processes like democracy.

Emile Durkheim (1858-1917)

Durkheim, like Weber, carried out a wide array of analyses, most famously his study of subcultural variations in the incidence of Suicide (1897), his work in the Sociology of Religion (1912), and his methodological treatise on the Rules of the Sociological Method (1895). We are going to focus primarily on the environmental implications of the Division of Labor in Modern Society (1893), Durkheim's doctoral dissertation and his first major publication in Sociology. Durkheim argues that an increase in human population density and overall population size intensifies competition between humans and that in turn leads people to specialize and trade the products produced through specialized activities. Occupations emerge as people become specialists in a particular activity. In this sense the emergence of a more pronounced division of labor between peoples derives from urbanization and globalization. It also stems to some degree from population increases. Durkheim is the only one of the three classical theorists to assign a prominent role to population change as a causal force. As with Weber, technological change (by specialists) plays a role in the overall dynamic driving urbanization and industrialization.

Auguste Comte's "Theory of Positivism"



Positivism
approach to the study of society that relies specifically on scientific evidence, such as experiments and statistics, to reveal a true nature of how society operates



Positivism describes an approach to the study of society that specifically utilizes scientific evidence such as experiments, statistics, and qualitative results to reveal a truth about the way society functions. It is based on the assumption that it's possible to observe social life and establish reliable knowledge about its inner workings.

Positivism also argues that sociology should concern itself only with what can be observed with the senses and that theories of social life should be built in a rigid, linear, and methodical way on a base of verifiable fact. Nineteenth-century French philosopher Auguste Comte developed and defined the term in his books "The Course in Positive Philosophy" and "A General View of Positivism." He theorized that the knowledge gleaned from positivism can be used to affect the course of social change and improve the human condition.

The Queen Science

Initially, Comte was primarily interested in establishing theories that he could test, with the main goal of improving our world once these theories were delineated. He wanted to uncover natural laws that could be applied to society, and he believed that the natural sciences, like biology and physics, were a stepping stone in the development of social science. He believed that just as gravity is a truth in the physical world, similar universal laws could be discovered in relation to society.

Comte, along with Emile Durkheim, wanted to create a distinct new field with its own group of scientific facts. He hoped that sociology would become the "queen science," one that was more important than the natural sciences that preceded it.

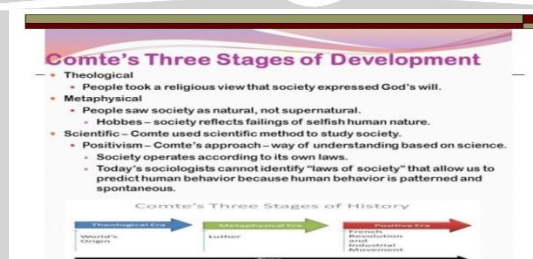
Five Principles of Positivism

Five principles make up the theory of positivism. It asserts that the logic of inquiry is identical across all branches of science; the goal of inquiry is to explain, predict, and discover; and research should be observed empirically with human senses. Positivism also maintains that science is not the same as common sense, and it should be judged by logic and remain free of values.

Three Cultural Stages of Society

Comte believed that society was passing through distinct stages and was then entering its third. The stages included the theological-military stage, the metaphysical-judicial stage, and the scientific-industrial society.

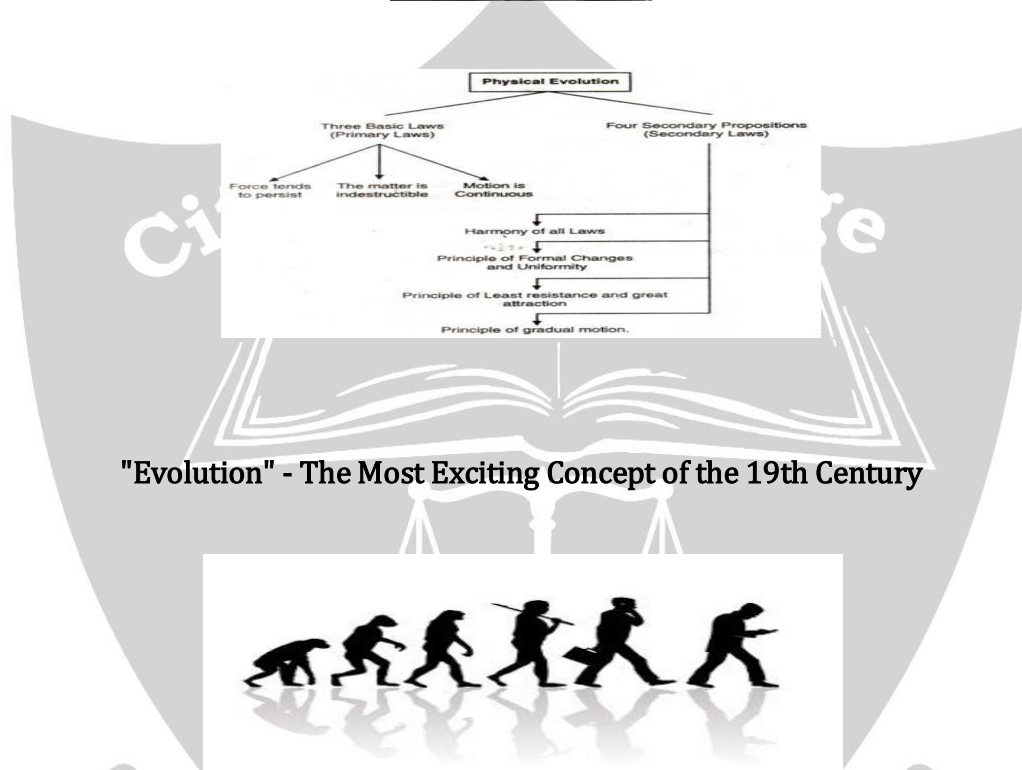
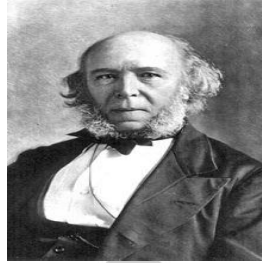
During the theological-military stage, society held strong beliefs about supernatural beings, enslavement, and the military. The metaphysical-judicial stage saw a tremendous focus on political and legal structures that emerged as society evolved, and in the scientific-industrial stage, a positive philosophy of science was emerging due to advances in logical thinking and scientific inquiry.



Positivism Today

Positivism has had relatively little influence on contemporary sociology because it is said to encourage a misleading emphasis on superficial facts without any attention to underlying mechanisms that cannot be observed. Instead, sociologists understand that the study of culture is complex and requires many complex methods necessary for research. For example, by using fieldwork, researchers immerse themselves in another culture to learn about it. Modern sociologists don't embrace the version of one "true" vision of society as a goal for sociology like Comte did,

Herbert Spencer's Theory of Social Evolution



"Evolution" - The Most Exciting Concept of the 19th Century



"Evolution" was one of the most exciting ideas of the 19th century. Its most influential sponsor was the naturalist Charles Darwin. Darwin developed the concept of "Evolution" in his "Origin of Species - 1859." Spencer applied the principle of evolution to the social world and called it "social evolution." He saw social evolution as "a set of stages through which all the societies moved from simple to the complex and from the homogeneous to the heterogeneous."

Meaning of the Concept of "Evolution"

The term "evolution" comes from the Latin word "evolvere" which means "to develop" or to "unfold." It closely corresponds to the Sanskrit word "Vikas". Evolution literally means gradual "unfolding" or "unrolling." It indicates changes from "within" and not from "without"-, it is spontaneous but not automatic. It must take place on its own accord. It implies continuous change that takes place especially in some structure. The concept applies more precisely to the internal growth of an organism.

Meaning of "Social Evolution"

The term "evolution" is borrowed from biological science to sociology. The term "organic evolution" is replaced by "social evolution" in sociology. Whereas the term "organic evolution" is used to denote the evolution of organism, the expression "social evolution" is used to explain the evolution of human society. Here the term implies the evolution of man's social relations. It was hoped that the theory of social evolution would explain the origin and development of man.

Spencer's Theory of Evolution

As L.A. Coser has pointed out the "evolutionary principle" or "the law of evolution" constitutes the very basis of Spencerism. Spencerian interpretations relating to "evolution" could be divided into two parts:

1. General Theory of Evolution
2. Theory of Social Evolution.

1. General Theory of Evolution:

Spencer's "Theory of Social Evolution" is grounded in his "General Theory of Evolution." But the evolutionary perspective as such, Spencer borrowed from Charles Darwin's "Theory of Organic Evolution".

Spencer's Concept of "Universal Evolution"

Spencer made "evolution" a universal principle in his treatise "First Principles." The fundamental principle behind every phenomenon or every development whether it is physical or social in nature, there is the supreme law of evolution operating. The law of evolution, according to him, is the supreme law of every becoming.

Laws as Proposed by Spencer

Within the framework of universal evolution, Spencer developed his "three basic laws" and his "four secondary propositions" - each building upon each and all upon the doctrine of evolution.

a) The Three Basic Laws:

1. Law of Persistence of Energy or Force
2. The Law of Indestructibility of Matter
3. The Law of Continuity of Motion

b) Four Secondary Propositions or Laws:

In relation to the evolutionary process, Spencer has mentioned four secondary propositions or laws in addition to the three basic laws. They are as follows.

1. Uniformity of Law

- 1. Law of Transformation and Equivalence of Forces**
- 2. The Law of Least Resistance and Great Attraction**
- 3. The Principle of Alteration or Rhythm of Motion**

2. Social Evolution Theory:

Two of the main books written by Spencer namely, (i) "The Study of Sociology" and (ii) "The Principles of Sociology", provide us more details about his "theory of social evolution." Just as "the theory of organic evolution" analyses the birth, development, evolution and finally death of the organism, in the same manner "the theory of social evolution" analyses the genesis, development, evolution and finally the decay of the society.

Spencer was of the opinion that the evolutionary principle could be applied to the human society for he treated human society as an organism. Both the organism and the society grow from simple to complex and from homogeneous to heterogeneous.

"Spencer's Theory of Evolution" involves two essential but interrelated trends or strains of thought:

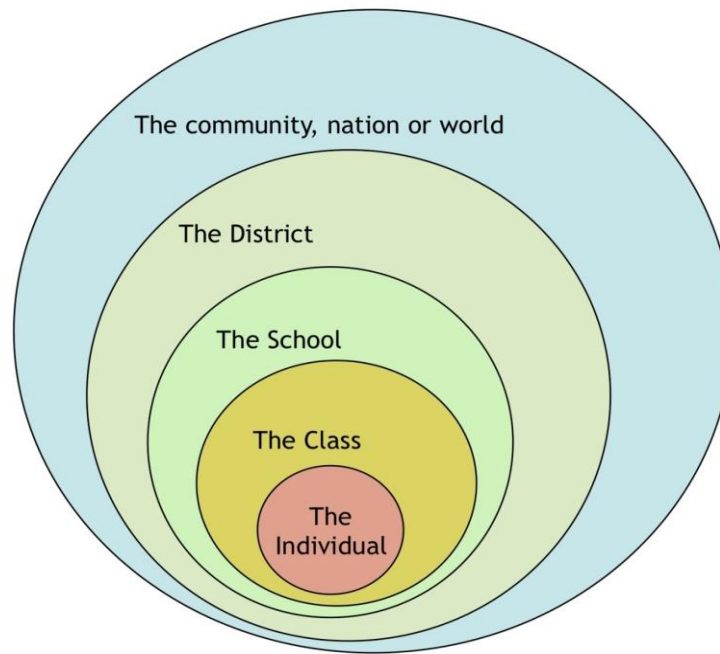
- 1. Change from simplicity to complexity or movement from simple society to various levels of compound societies; and**
- 2. Change from military society to industrial society.**

1. Change from simplicity to complexity or movement from simple society to various levels of compound societies:

As Spencer repeatedly argued all phenomena in all field proceeds from simplicity to complicity Societies also undergo evolutionary stages of development. Spencer identified four types of societies in terms of stages of their evolutionary development. They are;

- **Simple society:**
- This is the most primitive society, no complexities and consisting of several families.
- **Compound society:**
- A large number of simple societies make a compound society. This is clan society.
- **Double compound society:**
- These consist of several clans compounded into tribes and tribal societies.
- **Triply compound society:**
- Here the tribes are organised into nation states. This is the present form of the world.

Social Systems



Social System: Meaning, Elements, Characteristics and Types

The term 'system' implies an orderly arrangement, an interrelationship of parts. In the arrangement, every part has a fixed place and definite role to play. The parts are bound by interaction. To understand the functioning of a system, for example the human body, one has to analyse and identify the sub-systems (e.g. circulatory, nervous, digestive, excretory systems etc.) and understand how these various subsystems enter into specific relations in the fulfillment of the organic function of the body.

Meaning of Social System:

Society is a system of usages, authority and mutuality based on "We" feeling and likeness. Differences within the society are not excluded. These are, however, subordinated to likeness. Inter-dependence and cooperation are its basis. It is bound by reciprocal awareness. It is essentially a pattern for imparting the social behaviour.

Interrelation of individuals

It consists in mutual inter action and interrelation of individuals and of the structure formed by their relations. It is not time bound. It is different from an aggregate of people and community. According to Lapiere, "The term society refers not to group of people, but to the complex pattern of the norms of inter action that arises among and between them."

Application of conclusion

Applying these conclusions to society, social system may be described as an arrangement of social interactions based on shared norms and values. Individuals constitute it, and each has place and function to perform within it. In the process, one influences the other; groups are formed and they gain influence, numerous subgroup come into existence.

But all of these are coherent. They function as a whole. Neither individual, nor the group can function in isolation. They are bound in oneness, by norms and values, culture and shared behaviour. The pattern that thus comes into existence becomes the social system.

A social system may be defined, after Parsons, a plurality of social actors who are engaged in more or less stable interaction “according to shared cultural norms and meanings” Individuals constitute the basic interaction units. But the interacting units may be groups or organisation of individuals within the system.

Social organisations

All social organisations are, therefore, ‘social system’, since they consist of interacting individuals. In the social system each of the interacting individual has function or role to perform in terms of the status he occupies in the system. For example, in the family parents, sons and daughters are required to perform certain socially recognised functions or roles.

Similarly, social organisations function within the frame work of a normative pattern. Thus, a social system presupposes a social structure consisting of different parts which are interrelated in such a way as to perform its functions.

Comprehensive arrangement

Social system is a comprehensive arrangement. It takes its orbit all the diverse subsystems such as the economic, political, religious and others and their interrelation too. Social systems are bound by environment such as geography. And this differentiates one system from another.

Elements of Social System:

The elements of social system are described as under:

1. Faiths and Knowledge:

The faiths and knowledge brings about the uniformity in the behaviour. They act as controlling agency of different types of human societies. The faiths or the faith is the result of the prevalent customs and beliefs. They enjoy the force of the individual are guided towards a particular direction.

2. Sentiment:

Man does not live by reason alone. Sentiments – filial, social, notional etc. have played immense role in investing society with continuity. It is directly linked with the culture of the people.

3. End Goal or object:

Man is born social and dependent. He has to meet his requirements and fulfill his obligations. Man and society exist between needs and satisfactions, end and goal. These determine the nature of social system. They provided the pathway of progress, and the receding horizons.

4. Ideals and Norms:

The society lays down certain norms and ideals for keeping the social system intact and for determining the various functions of different units. These norms prescribe the rules and regulations on the basis of which individuals or persons may acquire their cultural goals and aims.

In other words, ideals and norms are responsible for an ideal structure or system of the society. Due to them the human behaviour does not become deviant and they act according to the norms of the society. This leads to organization and stability. These norms and ideals include folkways, customs, traditions, fashions, morality, religion, etc.

5. Status-Role:

Every individual in society is functional. He goes by status-role relation. It may come to the individual by virtue of his birth, sex, caste, or age. One may achieve it on the basis of service rendered.

6. Role:

Like the status, society has prescribed different roles to different individuals. Sometimes we find that there is a role attached to every status. Role is the external expression of the status. While discharging certain jobs or doing certain things, every individual keeps in his mind his status. This thing leads to social integration, organization and unity in the social system. In fact statuses and roles go together. It is not possible to separate them completely from one another.

7. Power:

Conflict is a part of social system, and order is its aim. It is implicit, therefore, that some should be invested with the power to punish the guilty and reward those who set an example. The authority exercising power will differ from group to group; while the authority of father may be supreme in the family, in the state it is that of the ruler.

8. Sanction:

It implies confirmation by the superior in authority, of the acts done by the subordinate or the imposition of penalty for the infringement of the command. The acts done or not done according to norms may bring reward and punishment.

Characteristics of Social System:

Social system has certain characteristics. These characteristics are as follows:

1. System is connected with the plurality of Individual actors:

It means that a system or social system cannot be borne as a result of the activity of one individual. It is the result of the activities of various individuals. For system, or social system, interaction of several individuals has to be there.

2. Aim and Object:

Human interactions or activities of the individual actors should not be aimless or without object. These activities have to be according to certain aims and objects. The expression of different social relations borne as a result of human interaction.

3. Order and Pattern amongst various Constituent Units:

Mere coming together of various constituent units that form social system does not necessarily create a social system. It has to be according to a pattern, arrangement and order. The underlined unity amongst various constituent units brings about 'social system'.

4. Functional Relationship is the Basis of Unity:

We have already seen different constituent units have a unity in order to form a system. This unity is based on functional relations. As a result of functional relationships between different constituent units an integrated whole is created and this is known as social system.

5. Physical or Environmental Aspect of Social System:

It means that every social system is connected with a definite geographical area or place, time, society etc. In other words, it means that social system is not the same at different times, at different place and under different circumstances. This characteristic of the social system again point out towards its dynamic or changeable nature.

6. Linked with Cultural System:

Social system is also linked with cultural system. It means that cultural system bring about unity amongst different members of the society on the basis of cultures, traditions, religions etc.

7. Expressed and implied Aims and Objects:

Social system is also linked with expressed and implied aims. In other words, it means that social system is the coming together of different individual actors who are motivated by their aims and objectives and their needs.

8. Characteristics of Adjustment:

Social system has the characteristic of adjustment. It is a dynamic phenomenon which is influenced by the changes caused in the social form. We have also seen that the social system is influenced by the aims, objects and the needs of the society. It means that the social system shall be relevant only if it changes itself according to the changed objects and needs. It has

been seen that change takes place in the social system due to human needs, environment and historical conditions and phenomena.

9. Order, Pattern and Balance:

Social system has the characteristics of pattern, order and balance. Social system is not an integrated whole but putting together of different units. This coming together does not take place in a random and haphazard manner. There is an order and balance.

It is so because different units of the society do not work as independent units but they do not exist in a vacuum but in a socio-cultural pattern. In the pattern different units have different functions and roles. It means that there is a pattern and order in the social system.

Types of Social System:

Parsons presents a classification of four major types in terms of pattern variable. These are as follows:

1. The Particularistic Ascriptive Type:

According to Parsons, this type of social system tends to be organized around kinship and sociality. The normative patterns of such a system are traditional and thoroughly dominated by the elements of ascription. This type of system is mostly represented by preliterate societies in which needs are limited to biological survival.

2. The Particularistic Achievement Type:

There is a significant role of religious ideas as differentiating element in social life. When these religious ideas are rationally systematized that possibility of new religious concepts emerge. As a result of this nature of prophecy and secondly it may depend on non-empirical realm to which the prophecy is connected.

3. The Universalistic Achievement Type:

When ethical prophecy and non-empirical conceptions are combined, a new set of ethical norms arise. It is because the traditional order is challenged by the ethical prophet in the name of supernatural. Such norms are derived from the existing relations of social member; therefore they are universalistic in nature. Besides, they are related with empirical or non-empirical goals, therefore they are achievement oriented.

4. The Universalistic Ascription Type:

Under this social type, elements of value orientation are dominated by the elements of ascription. Therefore emphasis is placed on status of the actor, rather than his performance. In such a system, actor's achievements are almost values to a collective goal. Therefore such a system becomes politicized and aggressive. An authoritarian State example of this types.

Maintenance of Social System:

A social system is maintained by the various mechanisms of social control. These mechanisms maintain the equilibrium between the various processes of social interaction.

In brief, these mechanisms may be classified in the following categories:

1. Socialization.

2. Social control.

(1) Socialization:

It is process by which an individual is adjusted with the conventional pattern of social behaviour. A child by birth is neither social nor unsocial. But the process of socialization develops him into a functioning member of society. He adjusts himself with the social situations conforming with social norms, values and standards.

(2) Social Control:

Like socialisation, social control is also a system of measures by which society moulds its members to conform with the approved pattern of social behaviour. According to Parsons, there are two types of elements which exist in every system. These are integrative and disintegrative and create obstacles in the advancement of integration.

Functions of Social System:

Social system is a functional arrangement. It would not exist if it were not so. Its functional character ensures social stability and continuity. The functional character of society, Parsons has discussed in depth. Other sociologists such as Robert F. Bales too have discussed it.

It is generally agreed that the social system has four primary functional problems to attend. These are:

- 1. Adaptation,**
- 2. Goal attainment,**
- 3. Integration,**
- 4. Latent Pattern-Maintenance.**

1. Adaptation:

Adaptability of social system to the changing environment is essential. No doubt, a social system is the result of geographical environment and a long drawn historical process which by necessity gives it permanence and rigidity. Yet, that should not make it wooden and inelastic. It need be a flexible and functional phenomenon.

2. Goal Attainment:

Goal attainment and adaptability are deeply interconnected. Both contribute to the maintenance of social order. Every social system has one or more goals to be attained through cooperative effort. Perhaps the best example of a societal goal is national security. Adaptation to the social and nonsocial environment is, of course, necessary if goals are to be attained. But in addition, human and nonhuman resources must be mobilised in some effective way, according to the specific nature of tasks.

The economy of a society is that subsystem which produces goods and services for a wide variety of purposes; the "polity", which includes above all the Government in complex societies

mobilizes goods and services for the attainment of specific goals of the total society regarded as a single social system.

3. Integration:

Social system is essentially an integration system. In the general routine of life, it is not the society but the group or the subgroup in which one feels more involved and interested. Society, on the whole does not come into one's calculations. Yet, we know as indicated by Durkheim, that individual is the product of society. Emotions, sentiments and historical forces are so strong that one cannot cut oneself from his moorings.

4. Latent Pattern-maintenance:

Pattern maintenance and tension management is the primary function of social system. In absence of appropriate effort in this direction maintenance and continuity of social order is not possible. In fact within every social system there is the in built mechanism for the purpose.

Every individual and subgroup learns the patterns in the process of the internalization of norms and values. It is to invest the actors with appropriate attitude and respect towards norms and institution, that the socialization works. It is not; however, merely the question of imparting the pattern, equally essential is to make the actor to follow it. For this there is always a continuous effort -in operational terms of social control.

Equilibrium and Social Change:

Equilibrium is a state of 'balance'. It is "a state of just poise". The term is used to describe the interaction of units in a system. A state of equilibrium exists, when systems tend towards conditions of minimum stress and least imbalance. The existence of balance between units facilitates the normal operation of system. Community evaluates and recognises the importance of equilibrium.

The equilibrium condition is a "condition of integration and stability". It is sometimes made possible with the development of a certain set of productive forces such as pressure groups which brings into being an appropriate super structure of institutions. Equilibrium can also be of moving sort, which according to Parsons, is "an orderly process of change of the system".

Social Structure

Social Structure – Meaning, Elements and Types!

Social structure is the basic concept for the proper understanding of society. Herein we propose to give a somewhat detailed view of the important concept of social structure.

I. Meaning of Social Structure:

Since long many efforts have been made to define 'Social Structure' but still there is no unanimity of opinion on its definition.

Herbert Spencer was the first writer to throw light on the structure of society. He called society an organism but his view of society was confused. Emile Durkheim also made a futile attempt to define it.

The following are the important views on social structure:

(i) Nadel's view:

S. F. Nadel writes, "We arrive at the structure of society through abstracting from the concrete population and its behaviour, the pattern or net work (or system) of relationships obtaining between actors in their capacity of playing roles relative to one another."

Nadel, therefore, says, "Structure indicates an ordered arrangement of parts, which can be treated as transportable, being relatively invariant, while the parts themselves are variable. According to him there are three elements of a society: —

(i) a group of people

(ii) institutionalized rules according to which the members of the group interact

(iii) an institutionalized pattern or expression of these interactions

The institutionalized rules or patterns do not change easily and this creates orderliness in society. These rules determine the statuses and roles of the individuals. There is an order among these roles and statuses also which provides an ordered arrangement of human beings.

(ii) Ginsberg's view:

According to Ginsberg, "The study of social structure is concerned with the principal forms of social organisation, i.e. types of groups, associations and institutions and the complex of these which constitute societies..... A full account of social structure would involve a review of the whole field of comparative institutions."

Ginsberg has written that the human beings organise themselves into groups for the achievement of some object or goal and these groups are called as institutions. The sum total of these institutions gives birth to the structure of society.

(iii) Radcliffe Brown's view:

Radcliffe Brown was a great social anthropologist of England. He belongs to the structural-functional school of sociology. He writes, "The components of social structure are human beings, the structure itself being an arrangement of persons in relationship institutionally defined and regulated.

To clarify his definition, he quoted examples from the Australian and African tribal societies. He said that kinship system among them is the description of institutionalized relationship. These relationships bind the individuals together in a specialised way and thus ascribe to them particular positions.

He has distinguished between structural form, and 'social structure'. Social structure is abstract; its expression is possible only in the functions or roles of the parts or units of social structure. Therefore, we can understand social structure only in terms of the functions or roles of its components.

(iv) Parsons' view:

According to Talcott Parsons, "Social structure is a term applied to the particular arrangement of the interrelated institutions, agencies and social patterns as well as the statuses and roles which each person assumes in the group."

These statuses give birth to different institutions, agencies and patterns. All these when interrelated and organised in a particular manner build the social structure of society. Social structure is concerned with forms of inter-relationship between these units rather than with the units. These units constitute the society. The ordered arrangement seen between these units is social structure.

(v) Johnson's view:

Thus, according to Johnson, the 'structure' itself is a pattern of stability which is created by the interrelation of the parts. These parts are the groups and sub-groups of society. He does not mean by stability that there is no change at all in the structure, but actually he means that it is comparatively stable.

For example, the structure of community consists of institutions and associations which in turn consist of human beings. Every human being is allocated a particular status and role to perform. With the death of the individual, there is no change in the status and role itself.

(vi) MacIver's view:

MacIver and Page have also regarded the social structure as abstract which is composed of several groups like family, church, class, caste, state, community etc. They have given due consideration to those sources and powers who bind these groups into a chain to give them a definite form of social structure.

After going through the various views on social structure, we may conclude as under:

- (a) Social structure is an abstract and intangible phenomenon.
- (b) As individuals are the units of association and institutions so these associations and institutions are the units of social structure.
- (c) These institutions and associations are inter-related in a particular arrangement and thus create the pattern of social structure.
- (d) It refers to the external aspect of society which is relatively stable as compared to the functional or internal aspect of society.

(e) Social structure is a “living” structure which is created, maintained for a time and changes.

II. Elements of Social Structure:

In a social structure the human beings organise themselves into associations for the pursuit of some object or objects. The aim can be fulfilled only if the social structure is based upon certain principles.

These principles set the elements of social structure in motion which is as follows:

(i) Normative System:

Normative system presents the society with the ideals and values. The people attach emotional importance to these norms. The institutions and associations are inter-related according to these norms. The individuals perform their roles in accordance with the accepted norms of society.

(ii) Position System:

Position system refers to the statuses and roles of the individuals. The desires, aspirations and expectations of the individuals are varied, multiple and unlimited. So these can be fulfilled only if the members of society are assigned different roles according to their capacities and capabilities. Actually the proper functioning of social structure depends upon proper assignment of roles and statuses.

(iii) Sanction System:

For the proper enforcement of norms, every society has a sanction system. The integration and coordination of the different parts of social structure depend upon conformity to social norms. The non-conformists are punished by the society according to the nature of non-conformity.

(iv) A System of Anticipated Response:

The anticipated response system calls upon the individuals to participate in the social system. His preparation sets the social structure in motion. The successful working of social structure depends upon the realisation of his duties by the individual and his efforts to fulfill these duties.

(v) Action System:

It may be emphasized that social structure is an abstract entity. It cannot be seen. Its parts are dynamic and constantly changing. They are spatially widespread and, therefore, difficult to see as wholes. Any scientific understanding of social structure would require structural-functional approach.

III. Types of Social Structure:

Particularistic social values are the features of particular societies and these differ from society to society. If, for example, selection is made on the basis of caste, religion, state etc. it means that in such societies particularistic social values are considered more important.

When the statuses are achieved on the basis of efforts, it means that such societies attach importance to achieved social values. When the statuses are hereditary then the society gives consideration to ascribed social statuses.

The four types of social structure are:

(i) The Universalistic-Achievement Pattern:

This is the combination of the value patterns which sometimes are opposed to the values of a social structure built mostly about kinship, community, class and race. Universalism by itself favours status- determination on the basis of generalized rules independently of one's achievement.

(ii) The Universalistic-Ascription Pattern:

Under this type of social structure, the elements of value-orientation are dominated by the elements of ascription. Therefore, in such a social structure, strong emphasis is laid on the status of the individual, rather than on his specific achievements. The emphasis is on what an individual is rather than on what he has done. Status is ascribed to the group than to the individual. The individual derives his status from his group.

There is a strong emphasis on the state as the primary organ for the realization of the ideal states of collective affairs. Collective morality as distinguished from the individual morality has a particularly central place. To sum up, it may be said that the universalistic-achievement type of social structure is "individualistic" whereas the universalistic-ascription type is "collectivistic".

(iii) The Particularistic-Achievement Pattern:

The emphasis on achievement leads to the conception of a proper pattern of adaptation which is the product of human achievement and which can be maintained only by continuous effort. This type involves a far more unequivocal acceptance of kinship ties than is the case with either of the universalistic types. It is more traditionalistic. Parsons has kept the Indian and the Chinese social structure under this category.

(iv) The Particularistic-Ascriptive Pattern:

In this type also the social structure is organised around the relational reference points notably those of kinship and local community but it differs from the particularistic-achievement type inasmuch as the relational values are taken as given and passively "adapted to" rather than made for an actively organised system. The structure tends to be traditionalistic and emphasis is laid on its stability. According to Parsons, the Spanish social structure is the example of such a type.

IV. Social Institutions:

We may also devote some attention to the concept of social institutions because social institutions are- essential to maintain the ordered arrangement of social structure. The institutions are collective modes of behaviour. They prescribe a way of doing things. They bind the members of the group together. Some thinkers have distinguished between 'institutions' and 'institutional agencies'.

Kinds of Institutions:

Primary institutions

There are five kinds of institutions. These are (i) the family, (ii) economics, (iii) religion, (iv) education, and (v) state. There are a number of secondary institutions derived from each of the five primary institutions. Thus the secondary institutions derived from family would be the marriage, divorce, monogamy, polygamy etc.

Secondary institutions

The secondary institutions of economics are property, trading, credit, banking etc. The secondary institutions of religion are church, temple, mosque, totem, taboo etc. The secondary institutions of education are school, college, university etc. The secondary institutions of state are interest groups, party system, democracy etc.

Institution never dies

An institution never dies. New institutional norms may replace the old norms, but the institution goes on. For example, the modern family has replaced the norms of patriarchal family, yet family as an institution continues. When feudalism died, government did not end. The governmental and economic functions continued to be fulfilled, although according to changed norms. All the primary institutions are thousands of years old, only the institutional norms are new.

Functions of Institutions:

The functions of institutions are of two kinds:

(i) **Manifest** and (ii) **Latent**. Manifest functions are those functions which are intended and main functions, i.e., those functions for which the institution primarily exists. Latent functions are unintended functions. They are not primary functions but only the by-products.

Manifest functions

Thus the manifest functions of education are the development of literacy, training for occupational roles and the inculcation of basic social values. But its latent functions would be keeping youth off the labour market, weakening the control of parents or development of friendship. The manifest functions of religion are worship of God and instruction in religious ideology. Its latent functions would be to develop attachment to one's religious community, to alter family life and to create religious hatred.

The manifest function of economic institutions is to produce and distribute goods while its latent functions may be to promote urbanization, promote the growth of labour unions and

redirect education. The latent functions of an institution may support the intended objectives, or may damage the norms of the institution.

Inter-relations of Institutions:

A social structure owes its stability to a proper adjustment of relationships among the different institutions. No institution works in a vacuum. Religion, education, family, government and business all interact on each other. Thus education creates attitudes which influence the acceptance or rejection of religious dogmas.

Religion may exalt education because it enables one to know the truths of God or denounce it because it threatens the faith. Business conditions may influence the family life. Unemployment may determine the number of people who feel able to marry. An unemployed person may postpone his marriage till he gets employed in a suitable job.

Socio-Economic Changes in the Society



Introduction

Socioeconomics (also known as social economics) is the social science that studies how economic activity affects and is shaped by social processes. In general it analyzes how modern societies progress, stagnate, or regress because of their local or regional economy, or the global economy. Societies are divided into three groups: social, cultural and economic. It also refers to the ways that social and economic factors influence the environment.

Overview

Socioeconomics" is sometimes used as an umbrella term for various areas of inquiry. The term "social economics" may refer broadly to the "use of economics in the study of society". More narrowly, contemporary practice considers behavioral interactions of individuals and groups through social capital and social "markets" (not excluding, for example, sorting by marriage) and the formation of social norms. In the relation of economics to social values.

Socioeconomic Factors of Environmental Change

Socioeconomic system at the regional level refers to the way social and economic factors influence one another in local communities and households. These systems have a significant impact on the environment through deforestation, pollution, natural disasters, and energy

production and use. Through telecoupled systems, these interactions can lead to global impact. Local economies, food insecurity, and environmental hazards are all negative effects that are a direct outcome of socioeconomic systems.

Deforestation

- Deforestation is a major cause of environmental change. Deforestation can be attributed to population growth, change in household dynamics, and resource management. Forests are traditionally owned by the state and control resource management which means their government is responsible for the development of forested land. Between 1970 and 2011, the tree coverage decreased by 20.6%.^[7] The decrease can be attributed to community development and increased use of resources. The issue of deforestation is contributing to climate change because the wood is frequently burned and used as timber fuel which emits CO₂ into the atmosphere. Deforestation is also happening due to population growth and the expansion of farmland which creates feedback loops. When forests are cut down to begin agriculture practices, soil degradation often takes place and leads to further issues like crop yields, which can contribute to food insecurity and a decrease in the economy.

Pollution

- Ocean pollution has massively affected small fishing communities around the world. When the ocean water gets polluted, it has a range of effects on the ocean life. Fish absorb mercury from coal mining and fossil fuel burning which makes them toxic to eat. Food insecurity is a socioeconomic impact of toxic marine life because small coastal communities depend on fishing to drive their local markets.^[9] Big companies produce this pollution as a spillover system, which affects the fish, which then affects the surrounding communities.

Natural disasters

- Natural disasters are becoming more severe as the environment is shifting. In the Western hemisphere, landslides are becoming more prevalent and severe. As communities continue to expand and develop, landscapes are disrupted by human interactions and unstable hillside areas begin to crumple under these pressures.^[10] These effects can be responsible for habitat loss for animals, home loss for humans, and complete destruction of industrial establishments. This can affect local economies just as any other natural disaster because it disrupts the entire flow of communities. They can be divided into private and public, for example, a highway being demolished by a landslide would be considered a public cost. A local farm that lost all of its crops due to a landslide would be considered a private cost. Urbanization and deforestation are primarily responsible for the increasing number of landslides in small communities.^[11]

Households

- Another socioeconomic factor is the change in the household family. The nuclear family is traditionally two parents and their children living under the same roof. In the past, households frequently inhibited extended family members such as grandparents. With the shift in the number of people under one roof, there has been an increase in direct energy consumption.^[12] Fewer people per household means more households. People are shifting

towards single person households as our societal norms evolve. More households mean more energy being used to do things like heat the house, power more TVs, and use more lights. It also means more geographical land space being taken up by people which can lead to further urbanization of rural communities. This has been a shift in communities across the globe.

Conclusion

- Deforestation, natural disasters, pollution, and energy consumption explicitly exhibit how human and natural systems are integrated systems. They are influenced by government policies and contextual factors which often have a more negative impact on the environment.^[13] Human interactions with the environment create a domino effect. These socioeconomic systems are all interconnected and produce effects from the local level, all the way up to the global level.

Social Status and Social class



Social mobility is highly dependent on the overall structure of social statuses and occupations in a given society. The extent of differing social positions and the manner in which they fit together or overlap provides the overall social structure of such positions. Add to this the differing dimensions of status, such as Max Weber's delineation of economic stature, prestige, and power and we see the potential for complexity in a given social stratification system. Such dimensions within a given society can be seen as independent variables that can explain differences in social mobility at different times and places in different stratification systems. In addition, the same variables that contribute as intervening variables to the valuation of income or wealth and that also affect social status, social class, and social inequality do affect social mobility. These include sex or gender, race or ethnicity, and age

Role of Education in Social Mobility

Education provides one of the most promising chances of upward social mobility and attaining a higher social status, regardless of current social standing. However, the stratification of social classes and high wealth inequality directly affects the educational opportunities and outcomes. In other words, social class and a family's socioeconomic status directly affect a child's chances for obtaining a quality education and succeeding in life. By age five, there are significant developmental differences between low, middle, and upper class children's cognitive and no cognitive skills.

Income Inequality

Average family income, and social status, have both seen a decrease for the bottom third of all children between 1975–2011. The 5th percentile of children and their families have seen up to a 60% decrease in average family income.^[11] The wealth gap between the rich and the poor, the upper and lower class, continues to increase as more middle-class people get poorer and the lower-class get even poorer. As the socioeconomic inequality continues to increase in the United States, being on either end of the spectrum makes a child more likely to remain there, and never become socially mobile.

A child born to parents with income in the lowest quintile is more than ten times more likely to end up in the lowest quintile than the highest as an adult (43 percent versus 4 percent). And, a child born to parents in the highest quintile is five times more likely to end up in the highest quintile than the lowest (40 percent versus 8 percent).

Economic sociology

Economic sociology is the study of the social cause and effect of various economic phenomena. The field can be broadly divided into a classical period and a contemporary one, known as "New economic sociology".

Contemporary economic sociology may include studies of all modern social aspects of economic phenomena; economic sociology may thus be considered a field in the intersection of economics and sociology. Frequent areas of inquiry in contemporary economic sociology include the social consequences of economic exchanges, the social meanings they involve and the social interactions they facilitate or obstruct.

Social Processes: The Meaning, Types, Characteristics of Social Processes

Social processes are the ways in which individuals and groups interact, adjust and readjust and establish relationships and pattern of behavior which are again modified through social interactions.



The concept of social process refers to some of the general and recurrent forms that social interaction may take. The interaction or mutual activity is the essence of social life. Interaction between individuals and groups occurs in the form of social process. Social processes refer to forms of social interaction that occur again and again.

Let us discuss social interaction in order to have an understanding of social process.

Meaning of Social Interaction:

Man is a social animal. It is difficult for him to live in isolation. They always live in groups. As members of these groups they act in a certain manner. Their behaviour is mutually affected. This interaction or mutual activity is the essence of social life. Social life is not possible without interactions.

Social interactions are reciprocal relationships which not only influence the interacting individuals but also the quality of relationships. According to Gillin and Gillin, "By social interaction we refer to social relations of all sorts in functions – dynamic social relations of all kinds – whether such relations exist between individual and individual, between group and group and group and individual, as the case may be".

When the interacting individuals or groups influence the behaviour of each other it is called social interaction. People in action with one another means interaction of some kind. But not every kind of action is social.

When people and their attitudes are involved the processes become social. Social interaction may then be defined as that dynamic interplay of forces in which contact between persons and groups result in a modification of the attitudes and behaviour of the participants.

Social interaction usually takes place in the forms of cooperation's, competition, conflict, accommodation and assimilation. These forms of social interaction are called "social processes".

Meaning of Social Process:

Social processes refer to forms of social interaction that occur repeatedly. By social processes we mean those ways in which individuals and groups interact and establish social relationships. There are various of forms of social interaction such as cooperation, conflict, competition and accommodation etc. According to Maclver, "Social process is the manner in which the relations of the members of a group, once brought together, acquire a distinctive character".

Types of Social Processes:

There are hundreds of social processes. But we find some fundamental social processes that are found to appear repeatedly in society. These fundamental processes are socialisation, cooperation, conflict, competition, accommodation, acculturation and assimilation etc. Loomis classified social processes into two categories; the elemental and the comprehensive or master processes.

The elemental processes are

- (1) Cognitive mapping and validation**
- (2) Tension management and communication of sentiment**
- (3) Goal attaining and concomitant 'latent' activity**

- (4) Evaluation
- (5) Status-role performance
- (6) Evaluation of actors and Allocation of status-roles
- (7) Decision-making and initiation of action
- (8) Application of sanctions
- (9) Utilization of facilities.

The comprehensive or master processes are

- (1) Communication,
- (2) Boundary maintenance,
- (3) System linkage,
- (4) Social control,
- (5) Socialization and.
- (6) Institutionalization.

Social process can be positive or negative. Accordingly, social processes have been classified into two broad categories, variously entitled 'conjunctive and disjunctive, 'associative and dissociative'.

Associative Process:

The associative or conjunctive social processes are positive. These social processes work for the solidarity and benefit of society. These categories of social processes include cooperation, accommodation, assimilation and acculturation etc. Three major social processes such as cooperation, accommodation and assimilation are discussed below.

1. Cooperation:

Cooperation is one of fundamental processes of social life. It is a form of social process in which two or more individuals or groups work together jointly to achieve common goals. Cooperation is the form of social interaction in which all participants benefit by attaining their goals.

Cooperation permeates all aspects of social organisation from the maintenance of personal friendships to the successful operation of international programmes. The struggle for exists forces the human beings not only to form groups but also to cooperate with each other.

Co-operation means working together in the pursuit of like or common interests. It is defined by Green as "the continuous and common Endeavour of two or more persons to perform a task or to reach a goal that is commonly cherished.

The impossibility of solving many of our personal problems alone cause to work with others. Cooperation also results from necessity. It would be impossible to operate a modern factory, a large department store, or an educational system if the divisions and branches in each do not work together.

Characteristics:

Following are the important characteristics of cooperation:

1. Cooperation is an associative process of social interaction which takes place between two or more individuals or groups.
2. Cooperation is a conscious process in which individuals or groups have to work consciously.
3. Cooperation is a personal process in which individuals and groups personally meet and work together for a common objective.
4. Cooperation is a continuous process. There is continuity in the collective efforts in cooperation.
5. Cooperation is a universal process which is found in all groups, societies and nations.
6. Cooperation is based upon two elements such as common end and organised effort.
7. Common ends can be better achieved by cooperation and it is necessary for the progress of individual as well as society

Types of Cooperation:

Cooperation is of different types. MacIver and Page have divided cooperation into two main types namely, (i) Direct Cooperation (ii) Indirect Cooperation.

(i) Direct Cooperation:

Under direct cooperation may be included all those activities in which people do like things together. For example, plying together, working together, carrying a load together or pulling the car out of mud together. The essential character of this kind of cooperation is that people do such identical function which they can also do separately. This type of cooperation is voluntary e.g., cooperation between husband and wife, teacher and student, master and servant etc.

(ii) Indirect Cooperation:

Under indirect cooperation is included those activities in which people do unlike tasks together towards a common end. For example, when carpenters, plumbers and masons cooperate to build a house. This cooperation is based on the principle of the division of labour.

A.W. Green has classified cooperation into three main categories such as (i) Primary cooperation (ii) Secondary cooperation (iii) Tertiary cooperation.

(i) Primary Cooperation:

This type of cooperation is found in primary groups such as the family. In this form, there is an identify of interests between the individuals and the group. The achievement of the interests of the group includes the realization of the individual's interests.

(ii) Secondary Cooperation:

Secondary cooperation is found in secondary groups such as Government, industry, trade union and church etc. For example, in an industry, each may work in cooperation with others

for his own wages, salaries, promotion, profits and in some cases prestige and power. In this form of cooperation there is disparity of interests between the individuals.

(iii) Tertiary Cooperation:

This type of cooperation is ground in the interaction between the various big and small groups to meet a particular situation. In it, the attitudes of the cooperating parties are purely opportunistic; the organisation of their cooperation is both loose and fragile. For example, two political parties with different ideologies may get united to defeat their rival party in an election.

Ogburn and Nimikoff divided cooperation into three main types:

i. General Cooperation:

When some people cooperate for the common goals then there is cooperation, which is known as general cooperation e.g. cooperation found in cultural functions is the general cooperation.

ii. Friendly Cooperation:

When we want to attain the happiness and contentment of our group we give cooperation to each other, then this type of cooperation is known as friendly cooperation e.g. dancing, singing, dating etc.

iii. Helping Cooperation:

When some people work for the victims of famine or flood then this type of cooperation is known as helping cooperation.

Role of Cooperation:

Cooperation is the most elementary form of social process without which society cannot exist. According to Kropotkin, it is so important in the life of an individual is that it is difficult to survive without it. Even among the lowest animals such as ants and termites, cooperation is evident for survival.

Cooperation is the foundation of our social life. The continuation of the human race requires the cooperation of male and female for reproduction and upbringing of children. Cooperation for human beings is both a psychological and social necessity. It is needed at every step in our life.

Cooperation helps society to progress. Progress can better be achieved through united action. The outstanding progress in science and technology, agriculture and industry, transport and communication would not have been possible without Cooperation.

All the progress that mankind has made in the various fields is to be attributed to the cooperating spirit of the people. Cooperation is an urgent need of the present- day world. It is not only needed among the individuals and groups but also among the nations. It provides solutions for many international problems and disputes.

2. Accommodation:

Adjustment is the way of life. It can take place in two ways such as adaptation and accommodation. Adaptation refers to the process of biological adjustment. Accommodation, on the other hand, implies the process of social adjustment. "Accommodation is the achievement of adjustment between people that permits harmonious acting together in social situation. It is achieved by an individual through the acquisition of behaviour patterns, habits and attitudes which are transmitted to him socially.

It is a process through which individuals or groups make adjustment to the changed situation to overcome difficulties faced by them. Sometimes new conditions and circumstances arise in the society. Individuals have learned to make adjustment to the new situation. Thus, accommodation means adjusting oneself to the new environment.

It is the termination of competing or conflicting relations between individuals, groups and other human relationship structures. It is a way of inventing social arrangement which enable people to work together whether they like it or not. This led Sumner to refer to accommodation as 'antagonistic cooperation'.

Characteristics:

Characteristics of accommodation are discussed below:

(i) It is the End-result of Conflict:

The involvement of hostile individuals or groups in conflict makes them realize the importance of accommodation. Since conflict cannot take place continuously, they make room for accommodation. It is the natural result of conflict. If there were no conflict, there would be no need of accommodation.

(ii) It is both Conscious and Unconscious Process:

Accommodation is mainly an unconscious activity because a newborn individual accommodates himself with his family, caste, play-group, school, and neighbourhood or with the total environment unconsciously. Sometimes, individuals and groups make deliberate and open attempt to stop fighting and start working together. For example, warring groups enter into pacts to stop war. Striking workers stop strike after having an understanding with the management.

(iii) It is a Universal Activity:

Human society is composed of antagonistic elements and hence conflicts are inevitable. No society can function smoothly if the individuals and groups are always engaged in conflict. They must have to make efforts to resolve conflicts, so accommodation is very much necessary. It is found in some degree or other in every society all the time.

(iv) It is a Continuous Process:

Accommodation is not confined to any particular stage or to any fixed social situation. Throughout the life, one has to accommodate oneself with various situations. The continuity of the process of accommodation does not break at all. It is as continuous as man's breathing.

(v) It is a Mixture of both Love and Hatred:

In the words of Ogburn and Nimkoff, accommodation is the combination of two kinds of attitude love and hatred. The attitude of love makes people to cooperate with one another but it is the hate which leads them to create conflicts and to get involved in them and then to accommodate with one another.

Forms or Methods of Accommodation:

Accommodation or resolution of conflicts may be brought about in many ways and accordingly may assume various forms, the most important of them being the following:

1. Admission of one's Defeat:

This method of accommodation is applicable between the conflicting parties of unequal strength. The stronger group can pressurize the weaker group by its strength. The weaker party submits to the stronger one out of fear or because of fear of being over-powered.

For example, in war, the victorious nation imposes its will on the vanquished and the war comes to close when the stronger party achieves a clear-cut victory over the other. The loser has to choose whether it will admit one's own defeat or continue the conflict with the risk of being eliminated together.

2. Compromise:

This method is applicable when the combatants are of equal strength. In compromise, each party to the dispute makes some concessions and yields to some demand of the other. The "all or nothing" attitude gives way to a willingness to yield certain points in order to gain others.

3. Arbitration and Conciliation:

Accommodation is also achieved by means of arbitration and conciliation which involves attempts of the third party to resolve the conflict between the contending parties. For example, the conflict between the employer and the employee, husband and wife, two friends, labour and management are resolved through- the intervention of an arbitrator or a conciliator or a mediator. Difference should, however, be noted between conciliation and arbitration.

4. Toleration:

Toleration is the method of accommodation in which there is no settlement of dispute but there is only the avoidance of overt conflict or open conflict. Toleration is found in the field of religion where different religious groups exist side by side, having different policies and ideologies.

5. Conversion:

Conversion is a method of accommodation in which one of the contending parties tries to convert his opponents to his view of point by proving that he is right and they are wrong. As a result, the party which has been convinced is likely to accept the view point of other party. For example, the conversion of a large number of Hindus to Islam and Christianity was owing to their inability to tolerate the sufferings of caste-restriction in India. This method may also occur in politics, economics and other fields.

6. Rationalization:

Accommodation can be achieved by rationalization. It is a method which involves the withdrawal of contending party from the conflict on the basis of some imaginary explanations to justify his action. In other words it means an individual or a group rationalises his behaviour by plausible exercises and explanations.

7. Super ordination and Subordination:

The most common method of accommodation which is found in each and every society is superordination and subordination. In the family the relationships among parents and children are based on this method. In larger groupings whether social or economic the relationships are fixed on the same basis.

Importance of Accommodation:

Accommodation is the way which enable people to work together whether they like it or not. Society can hardly go on without accommodation. Since conflict disturbs social integration, disrupts social order and damages social stability, accommodation is essentially essential to check conflict and to maintain cooperation which is the sine qua non of social life.

It not only reduces or controls conflict but also enables the individuals and groups to adjust themselves to changed conditions. It is the basis of social organization. As Burgess remarks: "Social organization is the sum total of accommodation to past and present situations. All the social heritages, traditions, sentiments, culture, techniques are accommodations..... "

3. Assimilation:

Assimilation is a fundamental social process; it is that process by which individuals belonging to different cultures are united into one. Successful accommodation sets the stage for an additional consequence of human interactions, namely assimilation. This implies the complete merging and fusion of two or more bodies into a single common body, a process analogous to digestion, in which we say that food is assimilated.

Assimilation in social relationships means that the cultural differences between divergent groupings of people disappear. Thus, they come to feel; think and act similarly as they absorb new common traditions, attitudes and consequently take on a new cultural identity. We see the process operating among ethnic groups which enter a society with their own society's culture.

Characteristics of Assimilation:

1. Assimilation is an associative process.
2. Assimilation is a universal process. It is found in every place and at all times.
3. Assimilation is a slow and gradual process. It is gradual as the individual comes to share the expectations of another group and slowly acquires a new set of values. The process cannot take place overnight. The assimilation of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman cultures has taken more than two centuries in Britain.
4. Assimilation is a unconscious process. Individuals are not conscious that they discard their own values and acquire new set of values.
5. Assimilation is a two-way process. It is based on the principle of give and take. Assimilation takes place when groups of individuals borrow cultural elements from each other and incorporate them to their own culture. Contact between two groups essentially affects both. Both the groups discard their cultural element and substitute them with new ones.

Factors Conducive for Assimilation:

According to Gillin and Gillin, factors favouring assimilation are toleration, equal economic opportunity, sympathetic attitude on the part of the dominating groups towards the minority group, exposure to the dominant culture, similarity between the cultures of the minority and dominant groups, and amalgamation or intermarriage. On the other hand, factors hindering assimilation are isolating conditions of life, attitude of superiority on the part of the dominant group, excessive cultural and social difference etc.

The following factors may account for the ready occurrence of assimilation:

1. Toleration:

Toleration is an important factor which facilitates the process of assimilation. Tolerance helps people to come together, to develop contacts and to participate in common cultural and social activities. When the dominant group is hospitable and tolerant towards differences, the minority groups have a greater opportunity to participate in the total community life.

2. Close Social Contact:

Close social contact is another leading factor which promotes the process of assimilation in a greater way. When the people or group of different cultures come into close proximity with each other, the assimilation process takes place very easily. The close social contact creates a good understanding among the people and the group and this creates a healthy atmosphere in which people exchange their views in a better way.

3. Amalgamation:

Amalgamation is another promoting factor of assimilation. By amalgamation we mean, individuals or groups come into close contact to one another. It occurs when two different cultural groups establish matrimonial relationship among themselves.

4. Equal Economic Opportunity:

The inequality of economic status among the people of different cultural groups hinder the process of assimilation. But the equal economic opportunities facilitate assimilation process. The people or groups having equal economic position become more easily intimate. Thus, intimate relationship promotes assimilation.

5. Common Physical Traits:

Common physical traits or qualities of the people of different cultures also promote the process of assimilation. The foreign immigrants of the same race can more easily assimilate than those with different races. For instance, the Indians who live in America permanently can easily assimilate with the Indian culture.

6. Cultural similarity:

Cultural similarities between two groups of individuals promote assimilation. If there are similarities between culture groups, assimilation is quick to take place. Similarly, assimilation occurs most readily when two culture groups have common language. Without knowledge of language, the individual remains outside the adopted society. The first step in assimilation into a new society is, therefore, to learn a language.

Factors Hindering Assimilation:

Merely bringing persons of different backgrounds together does not assure that a fusion of cultures and personalities take place. Sometimes it results in conflict rather than fusion between the contiguous groups. There are various factors that retard assimilation. These factors are discussed below.

1. Physical Differences:

Differences in features, complexion of skin and other physical trait may also help or hinder in assimilation. Generally, the adjustment problems are the easiest for those immigrants who in appearance are supposedly most like the people of the new land.

It may be pointed out that physical differences in themselves may not produce antagonisms or prejudice between peoples as is the case in South Eastern, Asia and Latin America, but when other factors operate to produce group frictions, physical differences give rise to inferiority and undesirability.

2. Cultural Differences:

Language and religion are usually considered to be main constituents of culture, Immigrants having the same religion and language can easily adjust themselves in other area or country. In America for example English speaking Protestants are assimilated with the great speed and ease whereas non-Christians who do not speak English, have the greatest difficulty in being

assimilated there. Customs and belief are other cultural characteristics who can aid or hinder assimilation.

3. Prejudice:

Prejudice is a barrier to assimilation. Prejudice is the attitude on which segregation depends for its success. As long as the dominant group prejudices those who have been set apart, neither they as a group nor their individual members can easily become assimilated to the general culture. Prejudice also impedes assimilation between constituent elements within a given society.

Not all prejudice is negative; however, when groups prejudice one another with unusually favourable attitudes, the process of assimilation is speeded, just as it is retarded by negative attitudes.

4. Sense of superiority and inferiority:

Assimilation is hindered by the feelings of superiority and inferiority. The people who have strong feelings of superiority, generally hate the people who suffer from a sense of inferiority. Due to this reason intimate relationship between two groups of people become difficult. Hence, assimilation is retarded.

5. Domination and subordination:

Assimilation between two groups of people is almost impossible where one group dominates the other. In this case social relation which is essential for assimilation does not develop among the people of dominant and subordinate groups. The dominant group always considers the people of subordinate group as inferior and exercises its power over them. As a result jealousy, hatred, suspicion and conflict etc. develop among them. All these hinder the process of assimilation.

6. Isolation:

Isolation also hinders assimilation. People who live in isolation fail to establish social contacts with others. The isolated people cut off entire social relationship with other people in society. Therefore, the process of assimilation becomes very difficult.

Dissociative Processes:

Social process which leads to negative results is called dissociative processes. These social processes result in disintegration of society. These also known disjunctive social processes. Competition and conflict etc. are examples of dissociative social processes.

Competition:

Competition is one of the dissociative form of social processes. It is actually the most fundamental form of social struggle. It occurs whenever there is an insufficient supply of anything that human beings desire, in sufficient in the sense that all cannot have as much of it as they wish. Ogburn and Nimkoff say that competition occurs when demand out turns supply. People do not compete for sunshine, air and gifts of nature because they are abundant in supply.

But people compete for power, name, fame, glory, status, money, luxuries and other things which are not easily available. Since scarcity is in a sense an inevitable condition of social life, competition of some sort or the other is found in all the societies.

Characteristics:

By analyzing various definitions, the following characteristics of competition can be drawn:

(i) It is Universal:

Competition is found in every society and in every age. It is found in every group. It is one aspect of struggle which is universal not only in human society but also in the plant and animal worlds. It is the natural result of the universal struggle for existence.

(ii) It is Impersonal:

Competition is not a personal action. It is an "interaction without social contact." The competitors are not in contact and do not know one another. They do not compete with each other on a personal level. The attention of all the competitors is fixed on the goal or the reward they aim at. Due to this reason competition is known as an impersonal affair.

(iii) It is an Unconscious Activity:

Competition takes place on the unconscious level. Achievement of goal or the reward is regarded as the main object of competitors. Rarely they do know about other competitors. For example, the students of a particular class get engaged to secure the highest marks in the final-examination. They do not conceive of their classmates as competitors. Students may, no doubt, be conscious of the competition and much concerned about marks.

Forms of Competition:

Competition can be divided into many categories or forms. They are economic competition, cultural competition, social competition, racial competition, political competition etc. It exists everywhere but appears in many forms.

1. Economic Competition:

Generally, economic competition is found in the field of economic activities. It means a race between the individuals and groups to achieve certain material goods. Thus economic competition takes place in the field of production, consumption, distribution and exchange of wealth. For example, competition between two industrial sectors for the production of goods. In modern industrial society, the materialistic tendency of people has led to economic competition to a great extent.

2. Cultural Competition:

Cultural competition is found among different cultures: It occurs when two or more cultures try to establish their superiority over others. This type of competition leads to cultural diversities in society. When one culture tries to establish its supremacy over other cultures, it gives birth to cultural competition.

3. Social Competition:

Social competition is mainly found in modern societies. It is the basic feature of present day world. For acquiring a high status, popularity, name and fame in society people compete with each other. Social competition plays a vital role in the determination of individual's status in society.

4. Racial Competition:

Racial competition is found among different races of the world. It takes place when one race tries to establish its superiority over the other. The whole human society is divided into a number of races and there always arises an intense competition among them. The competition between the Indo-Aryan race and Dravidian race in India is example of racial competition. Similarly, in South Africa, there is a competition between the white and black races.

5. Political Competition:

Political takes place in the political field. In all democratic countries, competition is inevitable among the various political parties and even between the different members of a political party to obtain political power. Similarly, at the international level, there is always diplomatic competition between different nations. In Pakistan, competition between PTI and PDM. for political power is a bright example of political competition.

Role of Competition:

Competition is considered to be very healthy and a necessary social process. It is indispensable in social life. It has played a major role in the survival of human beings. It is the basic law of life. It is extremely dynamic. It performs many useful functions in society, According to H.T. Mazumdar; it performs both positive and negative functions. They are briefly mentioned below:

(i) Assignment of right individual to proper place:

Competition assigns right individual to a place in the social system. It provides the individuals better opportunities to satisfy their desires for new experiences and recognition. It believes in achieved status. It spurs individuals and groups on to exert their best efforts. Competition determines who is to perform what function. The division of labour and specialisation of function in modern life are the products of competition. It fulfills one's desire for higher status, which one can achieve by struggling and competing.

(ii) Source of motivation:

Competition motivates others to excel or to obtain recognition or to win an award. The practice of awarding prizes and scholarships to those who occupy the few top position on the merit is designed to foster creativity and promote striving excellence. Competition stimulates achievement by lifting the levels of aspiration for which some individuals work harder for success.

(iii) Conducive to progress:

Healthy and fair competition is considered essential for economic, social as well as technological and scientific progress. Through competition a proper man is selected and

placed in the proper place. It is obvious that when a proper man is in the proper place the technological and general progress of the society cannot be hampered. People make their best efforts when they find themselves in competition. It is competition which has made inventions and discoveries in different fields possible.

Besides the above positive functions, competition also performs a few negative functions as well.

(i) Competition may lead to frustration:

Competition may create emotional disturbances. It may develop unfriendly and unfavorable attitudes among the persons or groups toward one another. Unfair and unhealthy competition has the most disintegrating effects. It may lead to neurosis through frustration and to violation of the rules by those who fail in the struggle for status according to “the rules of the game”.

(ii) Competition may lead to monopoly:

Unlimited competition in a capitalist economy gives rise to monopoly. It throws the real needs of the people into waste and causes starvation in the midst of plenty. It may cause fear, insecurity, instability and panic.

For example, in the economic field, businessmen seek to protect themselves against competition that is, by erecting tariff barriers against foreign competition by agreeing upon prices. Labourers unite for protecting their wages and bureaucrats protect themselves through their associations.

(iii) Competition may lead to conflict:

Competition, if it is uncontrolled, may lead to conflicts which are considered inimical to group solidarity or cohesion. Sometimes it may become violent involving unethical and unfair means to divert the competitors’ attention from sportsmanship which is outcome of fair competition.

Therefore, competition should always be healthy and fair.

Conflict:

Conflict is one of the dissociative or disintegrative social processes. It is a universal and fundamental social process in human relations. Conflict arises only when the attention of the competitors is diverted from the object of competition to themselves.

As a process, it is the anti-thesis of cooperation. It is a process of seeking to obtain rewards by eliminating or weakening the competitors. It is a deliberate attempt to oppose, resist or coerce the will of another or others. Conflict is a competition in its occasional, personal and hostile forms.

Conflict is also goal oriented. But unlike cooperation and competition, it seeks to capture its goal by making ineffective the others who also seek them.

Characteristics:

Conflict is an important form of social process. It is a part of human society. The main characteristics of conflict are as follows:

(i) It is a Universal Process:

Conflict is an ever-present process. It exists at all places and all times. It has been in existence since time immemorial. The cause of the universality of conflict is the increase of man's selfishness and his materialist tendency. Karl Marx has rightly mentioned, that 'violence is the mid-wife of history'.

(ii) It is a Personal Activity:

Conflict is personal and its aim is to eliminate the opposite party. The defeat of the opponent is the main objective in conflict. When competition is personalised it becomes conflict. The parties, locked in conflict, lose sight of their definite goal or objective and try to defeat one another.

(iii) It is a Conscious Activity:

Conflict is a deliberate attempt to oppose or resist the will of another. It aims at causing loss or injury to persons or groups. The attention of every party is fixed on the rival rather than on the reward or goal, they seek for. So consciously, knowingly or deliberately the parties make struggle with each other in conflict.

(iv) It is an Intermittent Process:

There is no continuity in conflict. It is occasional. It lacks continuity. It is not as continuous as competition and cooperation. It may take place all of a sudden and may come to an end after sometime. If the conflict becomes continuous, no society can sustain itself. So it is an intermittent process.

Causes of conflict:

Conflict is universal. It cannot be definitely said when conflict came into existence or there is no definite cause for its emergence. Still then a number of thinkers have pointed out the valid causes of conflict.

Malthus an eminent economist and mathematician says that conflict arises only when there is shortage of food or means of subsistence. According to him, the increase of population in geometrical progression and the means of subsistence in arithmetical progression is the main cause of conflict between the people.

The rate of change in the moral norms of a society and in man's hopes, demands, and desires is also responsible for the emergence of conflict. For example, the moral norm that children should obey their parents have persisted in our country since time immemorial but now the younger generation wants to go in its own way. In consequence, there is more parent-youth conflict than before.

Type of Conflict:

Conflict expresses itself in thousands of ways and various degrees and over every range of human contact. MacIver and Page have distinguished two fundamental types of conflict. Direct and Indirect conflict.

(i) Direct Conflict:

When a person or a group injures, thwarts or destroys the opponent in order to secure a goal or reward, direct conflict occurs; such as litigation, revolution and war.

(ii) Indirect Conflict:

In indirect conflict, attempts are made by individuals or groups to frustrate the efforts of their opponents in an indirect manner. For example, when two manufacturers go on lowering the prices of their commodities till both of them are declared insolvent, indirect conflict in that case take place.

George Simmel has also distinguished four types of conflict. These are:

(i) War:

When all the efforts to resolve the conflict between two States fail, war finally breaks out as it is the only alternative to the peaceful means of solution. War provides only means of contact between alien groups. Though it is dissociative in character but it has a definitely associative effect.

(ii) Feud:

Feud or factional strife does not take place among the states or nations. It usually occurs among the members of the society. This kind of strife is known as intra-group but not the inter-group conflict.

(iii) Litigation:

Litigation is a form of conflict which is judicial in nature. To redress their grievances and to get justice people take recourse to legal means in the court of law.

(iv) Conflict of Impersonal ideals:

It is a conflict carried on by the individuals not for themselves but for an ideal. For example, the conflict carried on by the communists and capitalists to prove that their own system can bring in a better world order.

Personal conflict is a conflict between two persons within the same group. Racial conflict is conflict between the two races-whites and Negroes in South Africa. The class conflict is a conflict between two class such as poor and rich or the exploiters and the exploited. Conflict between the two political parties for power is the political conflict. International conflict is the conflict between two nations such as between India and Pakistan over Kashmir issue.

Besides the above, conflict can also be of the following types:

(i) Latent and Overt Conflict:

Sometimes individuals or groups do not want to express their feeling of conflict due to some reasons. The unexpressed or hidden conflict is known as the latent conflict. When the individuals or groups feel bold enough to take advantage of a particular situation, they express their feeling of conflict openly. Such open conflict is known as overt conflict. For example, the latent conflict between India and Pakistan may become overt in the form of war over Kashmir issue.

(ii) Personal and Corporate Conflict:

Personal conflict arises among people within a group. It occurs due to various personal motives like hostility, envy, treachery etc. Corporate conflict, on the other hand, arises among groups within a society or between two societies. It is both inter-group and intra-group conflict. For example, racial riots, communal riots, war between nations, labour-management conflict etc.

Role of Conflict:

At the outset, it may be said that conflict causes social disorder, chaos and confusion. It may disrupt social unity but like competition, conflict performs some positive functions. Conflict is both harmful as well as useful for the society.

Positive Functions:

Following are the positive functions of conflict.

(i) It promotes the solidarity and fellow-feeling:

The conflict which promotes the solidarity and fellow-feeling within the groups and societies is known as corporate conflict. This conflict tends to increase the moral and promote the solidarity of the in-group, threatened by the out-group. For example, in war time cooperation and patriotism among the citizens of a nation are more perfect than in peace time. "Inter-group conflict", to quote Ogburn and Nimkoff is a potent factor in promoting inter-group cooperation."

(ii) It enlarges the victorious group:

The victory won through the process of conflict enlarges the victorious group. The victorious group either increases its power or incorporates new territory and population. In this way conflict makes possible the emergence of a larger group.

(iii) It leads to redefinition of value system:

Conflict may lead to a redefinition of the situation by the contesting parties. Generally, the parties which are in conflict with each other give up the old value system and accept new ones when the conflict is over. In this way conflict may give rise to new types of cooperation and accommodation.

(iv) It acts as a cementing factor in the establishment of intimate relations:

Conflict in certain cases acts as a cementing factor in the establishment of intimate and friendly relations among people or parties that were involved in it until a short time ago. For example, the end of the verbal conflict between lovers, friends and married couples leads to the establishment of relations which are now more intimate than before.

(v) It changes the relative status of the conflicting parties:

Conflict changes the relative status of the contestants and of the non-contestants as well. For example, after the Second World War, both Germany and Japan lost their status as great powers. China today has become a leading Asian power; United States has emerged as a super-power.

Negative Functions:

The negative functions of conflict are mentioned below:

(i) It causes social disorder, chaos and confusion: War, a type of conflict, may destroy the lives and properties of which are involved in it. It may bring incalculable damage and immeasurable suffering to a number of people. The warring parties generally incur great losses. They gain nothing in comparison with the loss incurred. The modern mode of warfare which can destroy millions of people and vast amount of properties within a few minute, has brought new fears and anxieties for the mankind.

(ii) It disrupts social unity and cohesion:

Conflict is regarded as anti-thesis to cooperation. It disrupts normal channels of cooperation. It is a costly way of settling disputes. The results of intergroup conflict are largely negative. Conflict weakens the solidarity of the group by diverting members' attention from group objectives. It violates the national integration in a greater way which may lead to the disorganization of the society.

(iii) It causes a lot of psychological and moral damage:

The morale of individuals touches a new low in conflict on a personal level. It makes people psychologically weak. It spoils the mental peace of man. It may even make the people to become inhuman. In case, conflict does not come to quick end, it makes the conflicting individuals very weak and apprehensive about losing something. Therefore, it is quite likely that- it may lead to their moral deterioration.

Distinction between competition and Conflict:

To clarify the distinction between conflict and competition the following points may be noted:

- i. Conflict takes place on a conscious level, competition is unconscious.
- ii. Conflict involves contact, competition does not.
- iii. Conflict may involve violence, competition is non-violent.

iv. Conflict is personal, competition is impersonal activity.

v. Conflict lacks continuity, competition is a continuous process.

vi. Conflict disregards social norms, competition does care for norms.

vii. Conflict diverts members attention from group objectives, competition keeps members alert to the goal or objective.

Cooperation, Conflict and Competition: Interactions:

Cooperation is the basic form of human interaction in which men strive jointly with each other for a good goal. Competition as a form of interaction occurs when two or more persons or groups struggle for some goal. Conflict takes the form of emotionalized and violent opposition in which the major concern is to overcome the opponent as a means of securing a given goal or reward.

Direct and openly antagonistic struggle

It is direct and openly antagonistic struggle of persons or groups for the same object or end, cooperation is an associative process, while competition and conflict are dissociative processes. Competition and conflict divide men. But competition differs from conflict in that the former is impersonal, while the latter is personalized competition in a less violent form of struggle than conflict.

Three forms of interaction

The three forms of interaction thus appear to be distinct and separate. In reality, however, cooperation, conflict and competition are interrelated. They are ever-present processes in human relations. They are not separable things but phases of one process which involves something of each.

Interests remain harmonious

Cooperation exists between men when their interests remain harmonious. But according to Davis, there is no group whether family or the friendly group which will not contain the seeds of suppressed conflict. Elements of conflict exist in all situations, because the ends which different individuals try to attain are always to some extent mutually exclusive.

Conflict also involves cooperation

Conflict also involves cooperation. In very conflict, there is some hidden basis of compromise or adjustment. For example, enemies in wartime cooperate under certain rules while they proceed to annihilate each other with the accepted modes and weapons of war. As end-result of conflict, there emerge arrangements and agreements which give rise to cooperation.

As competition becomes more personal

There is no competition which will not contain the seeds of conflict. As competition becomes more personal, it shades into conflict. Conflict does not always occur when competition becomes acute. It only happens if attitudes of the competitors become personal and hostile toward one another.

Competition will contain such attitudes

But every competition will contain such attitudes, though suppressed. An individual wishes not only to win the prize but beat another individual. Each knows that he can win the prize only by defeating the other. When competition becomes personalised in this way and becomes keener, hostility between the competitors easily develops.

Competition also involves cooperation. A competitive struggle implies some agreement among the competitors. Members of football teams compete according to rules prescribed for them.

Interrelations between three processes

The interrelations between three processes has been stated by Giddings in following ways. In a given region, with specific physiographic characteristics, including food supplies, an 'area of characterization' is formed; and human beings dwelling intend to become increasingly alike, and to develop solidarity on the basis of 'consciousness of kind'. In this way, says Giddings, The first two conditions of social life... namely grouping and substantial resemblance are provided.

But since they are alike, individuals living together in one habitat compete with each other in obtaining things which each is able to get by his own effort, and they combine their effort to obtain things that no one can get without the help of others.

Concept of Laissez-Faire



Laissez-Faire

What Is Laissez-Faire?

Laissez-faire is an economic theory from the 18th century that opposed any government intervention in business affairs. The driving principle behind laissez-faire, a French term that translates as "leave alone" (literally, "let you do"), is that the less the government is involved in the economy, the better off business will be—and by extension, society as a whole. Laissez-faire economics are a key part of free market capitalism.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

- Laissez-faire is an economic philosophy of free market capitalism.
- The theory of laissez-faire was developed by the French Physiocrats during the 18th century.
- Later free market economists built on the ideas of laissez-faire as a path to economic prosperity, though detractors have criticized it for promoting inequality.

Laissez Faire

Understanding Laissez-Faire

The underlying beliefs that make up the fundamentals of laissez-faire economics include, first and foremost, economic competition constitutes a "natural order" that rules the world. Because this natural self-regulation is the best type of regulation, laissez-faire economists argue that there is no need for business and industrial affairs to be complicated by government intervention. As a result, they oppose any sort of federal involvement in the economy, which includes any type of legislation or oversight; they are against minimum wages, duties, trade restrictions, and corporate taxes. In fact, laissez-faire economists see such taxes as a penalty for production.

History of Laissez-Faire

Popularized in the mid-1700s

Popularized in the mid-1700s, the doctrine of laissez-faire is one of the first articulated economic theories. It originated with a group known as the Physiocrats, who flourished in France from about 1756 to 1778;¹ led by a physician, they tried to apply scientific principles and methodology to the study of wealth. These "economists" (as they dubbed themselves) argued that a free market and free economic competition were extremely important to the health of a free society. The government should only intervene in the economy to preserve property, life, and individual freedom; otherwise, the natural, unchanging laws that govern market forces and economic processes—what later British economist Adam Smith, dubbed the "invisible hand"—should be allowed to proceed unhindered.

Laissez-faire" in an economic context

Legend has it that the origins of the phrase "laissez-faire" in an economic context came from a 1681 meeting between the French finance minister Jean-Baptiste Colbert and a businessman named Le Gendre. As the story goes, Colbert asked Le Gendre how best the government could help commerce, to which Le Gendre replied "Laissez-nous faire" – basically, "Let us do (it)." The Physiocrats popularized the phrase, using it to name their core economic doctrine.

As an experiment in 1774

Unfortunately, an early effort to test laissez-faire theories did not go well. As an experiment in 1774, Turgot, Louis XVI's Controller-General of Finances, abolished all restraints on the heavily controlled grain industry, allowing imports and exports between provinces to operate as a free trade system. But when poor harvests caused scarcities, prices shot through the roof; merchants ended up hoarding supplies or selling grain in strategic areas, even outside the country for better profit, while thousands of French citizens starved. Riots ensued for several months. In the middle of 1775, order was restored—and with it, government controls over the grain market.

British economists as Smith and David Ricardo

Despite this inauspicious start, laissez-faire practices, developed further by such British economists as Smith and David Ricardo, ruled during the Industrial Revolution of the late 18th and early 19th century. And, as its detractors noted, it did result in unsafe working conditions and large wealth gaps. Only in the beginning of the 20th century did develop industrialized nations like the U.S. begin to implement significant government controls and regulations to protect workers from hazardous conditions and consumers from unfair business practices—though it's important to note that these policies were not intended to restrict business practices and competition.

Critiques of Laissez-Faire

One of the chief critiques of laissez-faire is that capitalism as a system has moral ambiguities built into it: It does not inherently protect the weakest in society. While laissez-faire advocates argue that if individuals serve their own interests first, societal benefits will follow, detractors feel laissez-faire actually leads to poverty and economic imbalances. The idea of letting an economic system run without regulation or correction in effect dismisses or further victimizes those most in need of assistance, they say.

The 20th-century British economist John Maynard Keynes was a prominent critic of laissez-faire economics, and he argued that the question of market solution versus government intervention needed to be decided on a case-by-case basis.

Relationship between Sociology and Law

Two interwoven topics

Sociology and Law are two interwoven topics. Society is directly related to Sociology and in this matter, every society follows certain laws. Therefore, Laws are the essential part of the society. Sociology helps law to better understand society for smoother regulation and formation of laws. Similarly, the law is important to regulate a society. Norms, customs, traditions all these come under the law if the law did not exist then the society would not be less than a jungle. A human need certain rules and regulation to keep them on track and hence laws were made. These laws are made and established by society itself or governments are elected to formulate laws. From the formation to the execution till its impact on society everything comes under the umbrella of Sociology.



Laws are produced to and put into action through different societal processes. Every social institution such as family, polity, crime, corporation also individuals all these requirements and comprise of different laws.

Social Control over Society

In Sociology, we would say that law is a Social Control over Society. To have harmonious society one needs to build laws. Social control is basically a component utilized by the administration which manages the exercises of all people inside any general public, with the law being an immaculate illustration. When something is orally people tend to ignore and take it lightly. So therefore now people have to build Judiciary system and law enforcement agencies. When something goes wrong these agencies look after that issue and hence people keep in mind what consequences they can face if they go against the law and act as an example for others. This is also related to Politics but it is also as important for Sociology. The different institution may likewise be utilized as types of social control, for example, the training framework i.e. Schools and colleges, religion or media, contingent upon how and to the degree which they are utilized. For example, every one of them has the ability to show individuals an arrangement of good standards and principles, which is likewise a type of social control.

Two different trains or domains

Law is a societal phenomenon. Often law and sociology are seen as two different trains or domains and different groups of information. However, law and Sociology has similar subject matters such as both evolve around social relationships, principles, social controls, commitments and desires coming from specific social status and connections between or among people and society. Anything happening in social lives of people liable to lawful control and legal explanations does have likenesses with the social hypothesis and frequently read like the social hypothesis.

Social changes occur there must be changes in the law

Often laws get neglected due to developments in society. So, as the social changes occur there must be changes in the law. Just like modern Sociology of law after Second World War sociology of law became the field of learning and factual study but a law was not central but some well-known sociologist wrote about a law in society. Sociologist Talcott Parsons in his work stated that law is the essential part of social control. Later, critical sociologist evolved with an idea that law as a weapon of power. Further sociologist Philip Selznick contended that modern law has become receptive to general public's need instead it should be drawn ethically as well. German Sociologist Niklas Luhmann shares that Law is functional system of society therefore he states

Criminal Justice System in Pakistan

In a country like Pakistan, knowledge is seldom celebrated. It is more so in different fields of study that affect the lives of public at large. The extant material focuses on reform or improvements without stating clearly what the system is and how it operates. The knowledge gap qua justice sector is acute. A point of departure can be a brief elucidation of the criminal justice system, which this overview will try to provide in topical manner.

Constitution of Pakistan and Judicature

The constitution of a country constitutes its basic organs i.e. the legislature, executive and judicature. The 1973 Constitution of Pakistan, like its predecessor constitutional instruments, provides for the three organs. As Pakistan is a Federation, its constitution provides for executive, legislature and judicature at both federal and provincial levels. It must be noted that the concept of judicature is often confused with the term judiciary; while judicature means the administration of justice, the judiciary is the system of courts in a country.

2. Judicature and the Criminal Justice System

The Constitution of Pakistan provides for the separation of judiciary from the executive, and this constitutional dictate has yet to witness fruition. The traditionally strong executive has remained central to power and has kept the legislature and the judicature peripheral by controlling the purse. Since 2007, the judiciary has gained some space by using its suo motu

powers to enforce Fundamental Rights coupled with its power to punish contempt or non-observance of its orders the legislature has not been able to assert its power through its conventions, privileges and rules, and due to its partisan nature. The Constitution establishes constitutional courts including the Supreme Court, High Courts, Federal Shariat Court, and provides for jurisdictions of different courts relating to constitutional, civil, criminal and service matters. The cumulative reading of the competence of federal and provincial legislatures, the jurisdictions of constitutional courts, and the fundamental rights provides for the constitutional basis of the criminal justice system in Pakistan.

3. Role of Federal and Provincial Governments and Criminal Justice System

Under the Constitution, law and order is the responsibility of the provinces that discharge it through their provincial governments. In the provinces, the criminal justice system is managed through the Home and Prosecution Departments. The responsibility of the federation is concurrent to the provinces[7] and extends to federally administered territories of the Islamabad Capital Territory (ICT), the Gilgit Baltistan (GB), and the Azad Jammu and Kashmir (AJK). The federal government is also responsible for dealing with inter-provincial coordination in criminal matters that it carries out through the Ministry of Interior (MoI). In addition, the federal government has power over the Federal Investigation Agency (FIA), which functions as a federal police that investigates and prosecutes organized crimes of illegal immigration, human trafficking, cybercrime etc. The federal and provincial governments use their respective rules of business to exercise superintendence of the criminal justice system; this use of delegated legislation to counterweight the primary legislation is an important mechanism that must be researched thoroughly to bring about any reform in the system of governance of the criminal justice system.

4. Criminal Justice System

Ontologically, the study of crimes is styled as Criminology and the study of the agencies that control or respond to crime is called Criminal Justice (CJ). The US has a rich tradition in the production of Criminal Justice knowledge, and offers distinct degree programmes. Based on the US pedagogical practice, the criminal justice system of Pakistan may be divided into five components:

- (i) Police,
- (ii) Prosecution,
- (iii) Courts;
- (iv) Prisons,
- (v) Corrections.

Each component has its own functions, organization, budget, working and legal framework. In practice, a typical provincial criminal justice system is managed by the Home Department under which the police and prisons work as its attached departments. A brief introduction to each component has been discussed below.

• Police:

The police is an organization, whereas policing is the function of preventing and detecting crime. In Pakistan, insofar as the organizational aspect is concerned, each province has its own police organization, like the Punjab Police, Sindh Police, KP Police and Baluchistan Police. The total number of police personnel in Pakistan is about half a million. Each province has its own

organizational law. The Police Order, 2002 is the organizational law of the Punjab Police; the KP Police Act, 2017 is the organizational law of the KP Police; the Sindh Police works under the Sindh (Repeal of the Police Act, 1861 and the Revival of the Police Order, 2002) (Amendment) Act, 2019, and the Baluchistan Police employs the Baluchistan Police Act, 2011. The powers of policing are provided by the Code of Criminal Procedure 1898, and all police organizations derive their police powers from it. The legal framework of policing primarily supports the detection model of policing by providing the legal basis of investigation and subsequent processes; it provides very limited powers of preventing crime to the police organizations.

- **Prosecution:**

The function of the prosecution is to evaluate the evidence collected by the police, and to filter the quality and quantity of cases to be sent up for trial. Historically, it was part of police organizations. Following the example of the UK where the UK Crown Prosecution Service (CPS) was founded in 1986, the prosecution was separated for the first time from police organizations in 1986, but the arrangement was reversed in 1991. Thereafter, since 2003, separate prosecution departments/attached departments have been established in all the provinces of Pakistan. The organization and functions of prosecution departments are governed by separate provincial laws. Punjab Prosecution Department was established in 2006 under the Punjab Criminal Prosecution Service (Constitution, Functions and Powers) Act, 2006; the Sindh Prosecution Service works as an attached department of the Sindh Law Department and its working law is the Sindh Criminal Prosecution Service (Constitution, Functions and Powers) Act, 2010. Likewise, with some variations, the KP Prosecution Service (Constitution, Functions and Powers) Act, 2005 and the Baluchistan Prosecution Service (Constitution, Functions and Powers) Act, 2003 establish prosecution organizations in KP and Baluchistan.

- **Courts:**

The courts that deal with criminal matters are magistrate and sessions courts. Contrary to the constitutional courts that are established under the constitution and have a binding effect on the executive, the magistrate and sessions courts are products of the Code of Criminal Procedure 1898, and essentially decide facts. The magistrates have charge of different police stations and their working is as important as of police stations. Owing to their significance, the Chief Justice of Pakistan, Mr. Asif Saeed Khosa, termed the police and courts 'conjoined twins'. The courts adjudicate upon criminal matters by conducting trials in accordance with the law. The courts of magistrates and additional sessions are present at the level of tehsil/taluka in every district of the country. All the accused individuals have to be produced before them within twenty-four hours in accordance with the Constitution (Article 10). The courts follow an adversarial system of adjudication. Criminal cases are required to be proved beyond reasonable doubt, and the accused is treated as innocent unless proven guilty.

- **Prisons and Corrections:**

Prisons work as an attached department to the Home Departments of the provinces. Maintaining an incarceration-based prison system is a very expensive project for any economy. All over the world, the trend is to minimize the burden on prisons. In Pakistan, conceptually, every district should have a district prison and for every division, there should be a central prison; however, in practice, the district and central jails have not been provided to all districts and divisions of the country. The legal framework of prisons is very old in the entire country;

prisons in all the provinces are constituted and function under the Prisons Act, 1894, except Sindh, where the Sindh Prisons and Corrections Services Act, 2019 has been enacted recently. The prison departments in Pakistan also contain corrections facilities that are aimed at providing skills to the prisoners so that they can rehabilitate themselves in society upon their return. Unfortunately, due to a lack of investment in corrections, the results of the corrections system are limited and their facilities are virtually merged into prisons establishments. The regime of parole and probation that work as alternatives to imprisonment were introduced in 1927 through the Directorates of Parole and Probation under Home Department. After independence, such directorates were introduced in all provinces within the Home Departments. For the sake of knowledge and in the context of Pakistan, the definitions of three key terms related to rehabilitation and reintegration must be noted:

- **Corrections:**

"Services and programs aimed at correcting the criminal conduct of the Prisoners in order to rehabilitate and integrate them in the society"

- **Probation:**

- The term probation is based on two laws titled as the Good Conduct Probationer's Release Act, 1926 and the Probation of Offenders Ordinance, 1960. The concept of probation is that first time offenders may be released by the court on surety. Probation may be applied as an alternate to imprisonment.

- **Parole:**

- The term parole is not defined in the law. The Good Conduct Probationer's Release Rules, 1927 refer to Parole Officers who supervise the prisoners on 'parole'. The concept is that the provincial governments may suspend the sentence of a prisoner and release him under a licence owing to his good behavior.

-

Juvenile Delinquency **Factors Contributing to Juvenile Delinquency**



Illegal actions by a minor

Juvenile delinquency is a term used to describe illegal actions by a minor. This term is broad in range and can include everything from minor violations like skipping school to more severe crimes such as burglary and violent actions.

Understanding why a minor commits a crime is essential to preventing future crimes from happening. Addressing the issues that has led to the choices that the minor child has made can help them change their actions in the future.

By addressing many of these issues at an early age, adults may be able to stop juvenile delinquency from starting. If delinquency has already occurred, addressing these issues and building protective barriers may allow the child to develop in a more secure environment and avoid problems in the future as well as when they are adults.

Leading Contributing Factors to Juvenile Delinquency

Poor School Attendance

Poor school attendance is one of the top factors contributing to delinquency. School is not only a place to learn and grow; it is also a structured routine that provides children with a goal to accomplish each day.

The routine of getting up, getting prepared, attending school, completing the work, and returning home each day establishes a routine that is a basis for good choices in the future.

Children who are not encouraged to learn this type of routine are losing out on establishing good habits. They are also experiencing a lot of free time that can be used to “learn” about other things that will not enhance their lives or their futures.

Failure to accept the routine of attending school actually instills in children that they do not have to comply with societal norms and that they can do as they please.

Poor Educational Standards

The type of school that a child attends may also contribute to their delinquency. Overcrowded and underfunded schools tend to lack discipline and order.

The chaos often experienced in these schools lead children to act more defensively because they are scared by their surroundings.

Parental involvement in school work and school based activities has been found to be a very large deterrent for delinquent activities.

When an adult is active in the lives of a child, that child is more prone to perform well in school and social surroundings because they know that the adult will see their actions.

Violence in the Home

One of the largest contributing factors to delinquency is violence in the home. Every Tulsa juvenile criminal defense attorney will tell you that when a child is subjected to violence, they are in turn violent people.

Lashing out at others for the violence they experience at home is very common.

Teens subjected to violent actions, or those who witness it to others, are more likely to act out their fears and frustrations. They often have a “don’t care” attitude and this allows them to get into trouble more easily.

Violence in Their Social Circles

If the neighborhood in which a child lives is violent, the children will have a tendency to be more prone to delinquency.

Many people describe this as street survival methods because the child gets into trouble as a way to stay out of trouble from area gang members or violent people. In many cases, when you remove the child from this type of situation, their tendency for delinquent actions is removed.

Peer Pressure

Similar to neighborhood pressures, peer pressure from direct acquaintances can have an effect on how a juvenile reacts to bad situations. If all of their friends are committing delinquent acts, the child may feel pressured to do the same to be accepted.

The best way to avoid this type of situation is to be actively involved with who your child is hanging out with on a regular basis. Know their friends. Know about their friends’ parents. This not only instills confidence in your child to do the right thing, but it can also help parents keep their children away from bad influences.

Socioeconomic Factors

Juvenile delinquency is more common in poorer neighborhoods. While all neighborhoods are not exempt from delinquent activities, it is believed they happen more in areas where children feel they must commit crimes to prosper.

Theft and similar crimes may actually be a result of necessity and not that of just a petty crime. The only true help for this situation is to make sure that children in these areas have access to what they need and understand that they do not have to commit a crime to get ahead in life.

Substance Abuse

Substance abuse in a home or by the child is a very common cause for delinquency. Children who are exposed to substance abuse often do not have the necessities they need to thrive and are forced to find these necessities in other ways. Others, who become dependent on a substance may also need to commit crimes to sustain their habit.

Counseling and treatment for this type of situation is the only real remedy to help these children. This type of situation can cause their self-worth to deteriorate and allow them to commit acts that they would not otherwise have considered.

Lack of Moral Guidance

Parental or adult influence is the most important factor in deterring delinquency. When a parent or other adult interacts with the child and shows them what is acceptable behavior and what is considered wrong, the child is more likely to act in a way that is not delinquent.

It is very important for a child to have a bond with a good adult who will influence their actions and show them the difference between what is right and what is wrong.

Even if your child has committed an act of delinquency, their lives are not over. You, as their caregiver have the chance to turn around their lives and show them how to change their ways.

It starts with hiring a quality Tulsa juvenile criminal defense attorney so that they can receive a fair trial. Once they have gone through this process, as a caregiver, you can begin to change the influences in the child's life so that they can start fresh and go into adulthood with a clean slate.

Drug Addiction

Drug addiction is not a hallmark of moral failure or lack of willpower—it's a complex disease that deserves long-term, extensive treatment, just like any other chronic condition. People who have not struggled with substance abuse may find it difficult to understand why anyone would start using. Why would someone willingly put themselves in harm's way by taking dangerous substances? There are, in fact, many reasons why some people turn to or start abusing drugs, and unfortunately the consequences can be life-shattering. While every case is unique, there are general patterns that indicate why some people use drugs, how addiction develops, and the consequences of drug abuse.

- **Why People Use Drugs**
- **How Addiction Develops**
- **Why Some Become Addicted**
- **The Effects of Drug Addiction**

Why People Use Drugs

While specific incentives differ from person to person, generally speaking, people start using drugs to escape or mask pain.

In some individuals, the onset of drug use can be from untreated psychiatric issues including anxiety and depression. The rush of pleasure from using drugs can provide temporary solace from suffering, which can stem from many mental health or other issues including the following:

- Trauma or abuse
- Mental illness
- Low self-esteem
- Poverty
- Relationship problems
- Loss of a loved one
- Stress
- Chronic pain or medical conditions

But whatever their reason for starting, once addiction sets in, the disease usually spirals more and more out of their control.

How Addiction Develops

For most people, the initial decision to take drugs is voluntary. But as they are swept up into the cycle of addiction, the neural pathways in their brain change so they are less able to control their behavior and resist their intense impulses.

It works like this: the brain rewards pleasurable experiences (such as food, intimacy, and laughter) with surges of feel-good chemicals like dopamine. But using drugs triggers the release of *much* more dopamine than chocolate or cuddling does, and the rush of euphoria compels them to repeat the experience. The more someone uses drugs, the more they condition their brain to anticipate the same substance-fueled pleasant sensations. That's why it's so difficult to stop. The brain becomes wired for addiction. Eventually, one's tolerance may build so much that addictive behavior no longer provides any pleasure, and using drugs simply becomes a way to avoid withdrawal. They need drugs just to keep feeling normal.

Why Some Become Addicted

Not everyone who experiments with drugs becomes an addict. There's no single factor that can predict whether someone will become addicted, though there are general social, biological, and environmental factors that do increase the risk.

Biology. Genes, in combination with environmental factors, account for about half of a person's addiction vulnerability. Being male, African American, or having a mental illness can also increase a person's risk of progressing to addiction.

Environment. Family, friends, and socioeconomic status have a significant impact on a person's likelihood of developing an addiction. Physical and sexual abuse, peer pressure, stress, and parental guidance can greatly affect the occurrence of substance abuse.

Development. Although a person can become an addict at any age, the earlier substance use begins, the more likely it will escalate to serious addiction.

The Effects of Drug Addiction

The sad truth is that more deaths, illnesses, and disabilities are caused by substance abuse than by any other preventable health condition. Prolonged drug dependence interferes with

just about every organ in the human body, and while different drugs have different damaging effects, these are some of the common conditions substance abuse can cause:

- Damaged immune system, which increases susceptibility to infection
- Cardiovascular conditions, including heart attacks and collapsed veins
- Nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain
- Liver overexertion or liver failure
- Seizures and strokes
- Widespread brain damage that can interfere with memory, attention, and decision-making, as well as permanent brain damage

Some of the worst effects of substance abuse aren't even health related. Drug abuse can have a number of damaging consequences on an addict's social and emotional well-being, including:

- Loss of employment
- Relationship loss
- Incarceration
- Financial trouble
- Homelessness

Many problems can be reversed or minimized by getting sober, but there may be some health and emotional issues that simply won't heal with time. The best way to prevent permanent damage is to seek professional treatment ASAP to overcome the addiction.

Process of Socialization

Understanding Socialization in Sociology

Socialization is a process that introduces people to social norms and customs. This process helps individuals function well in society, and, in turn, helps society run smoothly. Family members, teachers, religious leaders, and peers all play roles in a person's socialization.

This process typically occurs in two stages: Primary socialization takes place from birth through adolescence, and secondary socialization continues throughout one's life. Adult socialization may occur whenever people find themselves in new circumstances, especially those in which they interact with individuals whose norms or customs differ from theirs.

The Purpose of Socialization

During socialization, a person learns to become a member of a group, community, or society. This process not only accustoms people to social groups but also results in such groups sustaining themselves. For example, a new sorority member gets an insider's look at the customs and traditions of a Greek organization. As the years pass, the member can apply the information she's learned about the sorority when newcomers join, allowing the group to carry on its traditions.

Socialization has numerous goals for youth and adults alike. It teaches children to control their biological impulses, such as using a toilet instead of wetting their pants or bed. The

socialization process also helps individuals develop a conscience aligned with social norms and prepares them to perform various roles.

The Socialization Process in Three Parts

Socialization involves both social structure and interpersonal relations. It contains three key parts: context, content and process, and results. **Context**, perhaps, defines socialization the most, as it refers to culture, language, social structures and one's rank within them. It also includes history and the roles people and institutions played in the past. One's life context will significantly affect the socialization process. For example, a family's economic class may have a huge impact on how parents socialize their children.

Race also plays a factor in socialization. Since white people don't disproportionately experience police violence, they can encourage their children to know their rights and defend them when the authorities try to violate them. In contrast, parents of color must have what's known as "the talk" with their children, instructing them to remain calm, compliant, and safe in the presence of law enforcement.

Content and process

While context sets the stage for socialization, the content and process constitute the work of this undertaking. How parents assign chores or tell their kids to interact with police are examples of content and process, which are also defined by the duration of socialization, those involved, the methods used, and the type of experience.

Behavioral norms suitable for school

School is an important source of socialization for students of all ages. In class, young people receive guidelines related to behavior, authority, schedules, tasks, and deadlines. Teaching this content requires social interaction between educators and students. Typically, rules and expectations are both written and spoken, and student conduct is either rewarded or penalized. As this occurs, students learn behavioral norms suitable for school.

Results

Results are the outcome of socialization and refer to the way a person thinks and behaves after undergoing this process. For example, with small children, socialization tends to focus on control of biological and emotional impulses, such as drinking from a cup rather than from a bottle or asking permission before picking something up. As children mature, the results of socialization include knowing how to wait their turn, obey rules, or organize their days around a school or work schedule. We can see the results of socialization in just about everything, from men shaving their faces to women shaving their legs and armpits.

Stages and Forms of Socialization

Sociologists recognize two stages of socialization: primary and secondary.

Primary socialization

Occurs from birth through adolescence. Caregivers, teachers, coaches, religious figures, and peers guide this process.

Secondary socialization

It occurs throughout our lives as we encounter groups and situations that were not part of our primary socialization experience. This might include a college experience, where many people interact with members of different populations and learn new norms, values, and behaviors. Secondary socialization also takes place in the workplace or while traveling somewhere new. As we learn about unfamiliar places and adapt to them, we experience secondary socialization.

Group socialization

Occurs throughout all stages of life. For example, peer groups influence how one speaks and dresses. During childhood and adolescence, this tends to break down along gender lines. It is common to see groups of children of either gender wearing the same hair and clothing styles.

Organizational socialization

Occurs within an institution or organization to familiarize a person with its norms, values, and practices. This process often unfolds in nonprofits and companies. New employees in a workplace have to learn how to collaborate, meet management's goals, and take breaks in a manner suitable for the company. At a nonprofit, individuals may learn how to speak about social causes in a way that reflects the organization's mission.

Anticipatory socialization

Many people also experience anticipatory socialization at some point. This form of socialization is largely self-directed and refers to the steps one takes to prepare for a new role, position, or occupation. This may involve seeking guidance from people who've previously served in the role, observing others currently in these roles, or training for the new position during an apprenticeship. In short, anticipatory socialization transitions people into new roles so they know what to expect when they officially step into them.

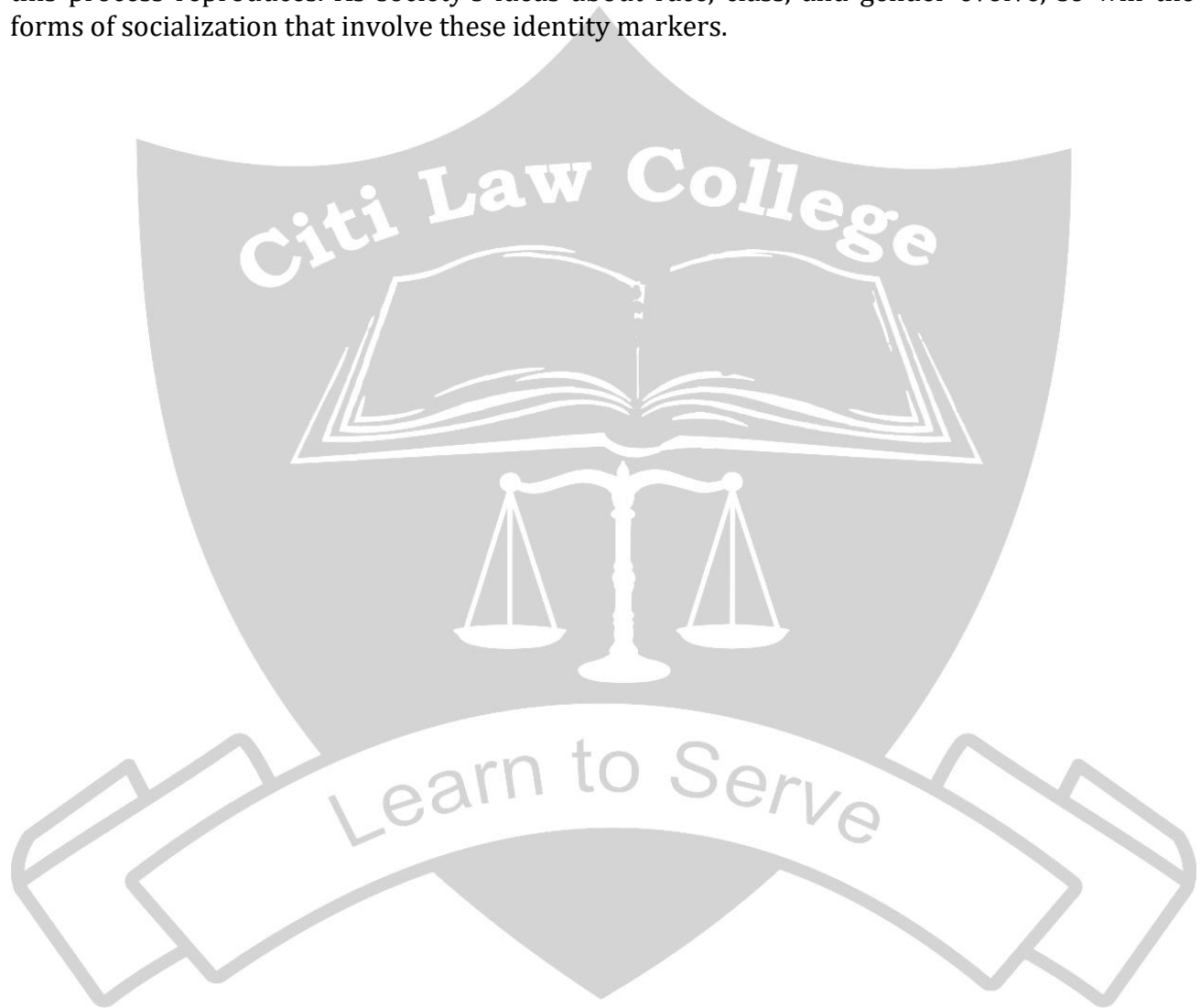
Forced socialization

Finally, forced socialization takes place in institutions such as prisons, mental hospitals, military units, and some boarding schools. In these settings, coercion is used to re-socialize people into individuals who behave in a manner fitting of the norms, values, and customs of the institution. In prisons and psychiatric hospitals, this process may be framed as rehabilitation. In the military, however, forced socialization aims to create an entirely new identity for the individual.

Criticism of Socialization

While socialization is a necessary part of society, it also has drawbacks. Since dominant cultural norms, values, assumptions, and beliefs guide the process, it is not a neutral endeavor. This means that socialization may reproduce the prejudices that lead to forms of social injustice and inequality.

While socialization is necessary, it's important to recognize the values, norms, and behaviors this process reproduces. As society's ideas about race, class, and gender evolve, so will the forms of socialization that involve these identity markers.





Principles of Political Science

Nature of Political Science

Introduction

Political science is that branch of the social sciences that studies the state, politics, and government. Political Science deals extensively with the analysis of political systems, the theoretical and practical applications to politics, and the examination of political behavior.

Political Theory

Political theory is concerned mainly with the foundations of political community and institutions. It focuses on human nature and the moral purposes of political association. To clarify these concepts, political theorists draw on enduring political writings from ancient Greece to the present and on various writings by moral philosophers. Political theory also focuses on empirical research into the way political institutions function in practice.

The Importance of Political Science

The importance of political science lies in the fact that all of us live within political systems and we are affected by the changes in the global political economy. With the advent of globalization, there has been a concomitant rise in the interest taken by the people of the world in understanding the political systems of other countries. Hence, political scientists become valued and important as they provide the lens through which we can understand the global political economy. There are many universities that provide graduate and higher-level degrees in political science and in recent years, because of the renewed interest in political science as a field of study, there are many takers for these courses.

Behavioural revolution and new institutionalism

In the 1950s and the 1960s, a behavioural revolution stressing the systematic and rigorously scientific study of individual and group behaviour swept the discipline. A focus on studying political behaviour, rather than institutions or interpretation of legal texts, characterized early behavioural political science, including work by Robert Dahl, Philip Converse, and in the collaboration between sociologist Paul Lazarsfeld and public opinion scholar Bernard Berelson.

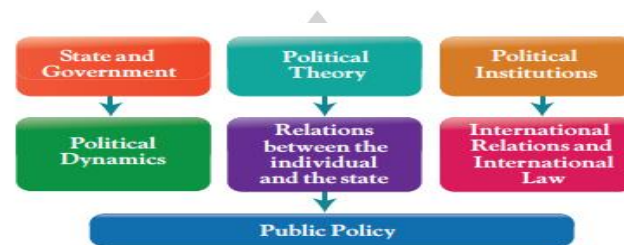
The late 1960s and early 1970s witnessed a take off in the use of deductive, game theoretic formal modelling techniques aimed at generating a more analytical corpus of knowledge in the discipline. This period saw a surge of research that borrowed theory and methods from economics to study political institutions, such as the United States Congress, as well as political behaviour, such as voting. William H. Riker and his colleagues and students at the University of Rochester were the main proponents of this shift.

Definition of Political Science

“The branch of knowledge that deals with the state and systems of government; the scientific analysis of political activity and behaviour.”

“Political Science is a social science concerned chiefly with the description and analysis of political and especially governmental institutions and processes”

Scope of Political Science



The scope of political science is vast and experts have divided the field of political science into five sub-disciplines that are political theory, public administration, comparative politics, international relations, and public law. It needs to be noted that these sub-disciplines cover the entire gamut of the modern political economy and provide the basis for the study and understanding of how the global political economy works. The study of the matters concerning the allocation and distribution as well as the transfer of power is one of the main preoccupations of political scientists. The success or otherwise of the governance structures is gauged by political scientists who examine the multifaceted and multilayered factors at work that contribute to good or bad governance. The scope of the political scientists has now been broadened to include the realm of the study of the democratic elections across the world. In other words, with the explosion in the political systems all over the world, political scientists, and their scope of study has been considerably enhanced.

Sub-Fields of Political Science

The overall field of political science includes several major subfields: comparative politics, international relations, political economy, and political philosophy. Most political science departments at universities encourage students to specialize or concentrate in one of these subfields

State Politics

Political scientists usually organize the study of their own country into a separate sub discipline, so within the State, politics is recognized as its own specialty. Given the size of the States and its role in the world , the politics sub discipline is very large. Political scientists interested in American politics often study political institutions such as the Legislature, the Executive, and the Judiciary. They also examine the various factors that impact these institutions, such as political parties, elections, public opinion, voting, and interest groups

Comparative Politics

Comparative politics compares systems of government in other countries. For example, a comparative political scientist might examine the impact of political parties on elections in Australia, the United Kingdom, and the United States, or she might compare the constitutions of Argentina and Barbados.

International Relations

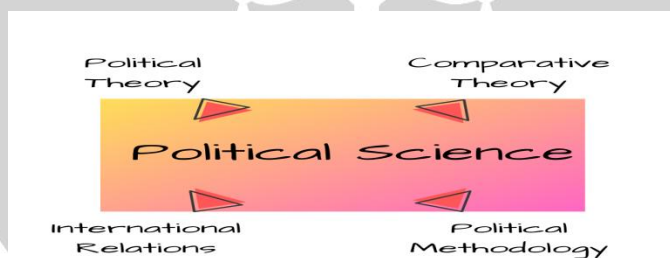
International relations scholars examine the ways in which nations interact. Whereas comparative politics *compare* the internal workings of a state, international relations focuses on how states *relate* to one another, such as why and how states trade, cooperate, and fight.

Political Economy

Political economy is the study of how economics and politics affect each other. Political scientists in this subfield might look at the impact of economic power on international relations or how different economies develop within similar political systems.

Political Philosophy

Some political scientists study the tradition of political philosophies from Plato to the present. This subfield tries to answer questions and develop theories about such abstract issues as ethics, authority, the nature of liberty and freedom, the meaning of civil rights and civil liberties, and how governments should function.



Relationship of Political Science with other Disciplines

Cross-Disciplinary Connections

What distinguishes political science as an academic discipline is its emphasis on government and power. However, the study of government and power is not confined to political science—it naturally permeates into other social sciences as well. For example:

Economics:

Economic and political processes are closely related because the actions of political institutions frame—and can either expand or constrain—economic activity. Republicans are more likely to promote free-market policies such as tax breaks and business deregulation, while Democrats favor business regulation and government intervention as a way of promoting economic equality. Additionally, economic conditions can have a direct influence on

political institutions. Throughout history, the outcomes of many presidential and congressional elections have rested on the economy. Voters tend to vote against the party in power if they perceive a decline or standstill in their personal financial situations.

Sociology:

Political scientists also study the social bases of politics. For example, what are the political activities of various social classes, races, ethnicities, and religions? How do political values, attitudes, and beliefs come about? How do social forces work together to change political policies on issues such as abortion, criminal justice, foreign policy, and welfare? How do social movements outside of the formal institutions of political power affect politics? For example, the civil rights and women's suffrage movements helped to not only reshape public policy but public opinion as well.

History:

Political scientists attempt to analyze and understand historic political patterns in addition to specific political events. This requires putting historical events and texts into a political context. For example, how have political party systems helped to create long-standing changes in the electoral landscape and reshape traditional party coalitions throughout the 19th and 20th centuries? A good textual example is the U.S. Constitution. It is both a historical (and historic) document, in that it describes the creation of a new form of government by the Founding Fathers, and a political one, in that it sets the framework for the functioning of the U.S. government as a system of shared powers, checks and balances, and fed.

Relationship of Political Science with Law

Relation of Law with Political Science General Definitions:

- ▶ **Law:-** Law is the enforceable body of rules to govern any society.
- ▶ **Political Science:-** Herold Lasswell, *Political Science as an empirical discipline (as) the study of shaping and sharing of Power and Political act (as) one performed in power perspective.*

The perspective of political science

Law is the study of legal institutions and law from the perspective of political science. It is concerned with the analysis of legal institutions, the behavior of legal decision-makers and citizens, and the study of legal and constitutional doctrine and culture. Public law seeks to understand the role of law in society and in government.

Basic Concepts of Political Science

Influence, Power and Authority

Influence:

Influence authority and power are among the most common keywords in politics. They are present at all levels in a political system, but they are differently presented. However, the certain ground is Common that a human relationship exists and that the assessment of one or other parties affects the other's behavior. The effect is that consciously sought to have contributed to a state of affairs by accidents normally not considered evidence of the exercise of influence (power, authority).

Power is a command

Power is a command and, therefore, an imperative, and its disobedience means the exercise of coercion Influence, on the other hand, is sans coercion. It is the response to the influence that matters, though it may affect the policymaking. The interest and pressure groups and the consultative bodies exert influence on the policy-making process. However, all such agencies have no power to compel compliance in preferred directions.

An official ideology

There is an official ideology in a totalitarian polity, and the ideology is totalitarian in that the totality of social life is considered a legitimate matter for political control. In other totalitarian systems, which are the modern phenomenon and the traditional distinction is drawn between democracies and despotism, there is an absence of sophisticated ideology in which politics is equated with the social in political systems so described, the ruler is supreme, and all institutions are his agencies. In such politics, influence is highly concentrated, competition is weak, nominal, or nonexistent, and the rule is often arbitrary.

Authority and Legitimacy

There must be a concentration of recognized authority for common good and power of common action, a final authority capable of commanding the loyalty of Citizen's greatness. It implies that there must be a concentration of recognized authority. It should command the bulk of society; it is the final authority to command as it is legitimate.

In the traditional and legal forms of authority, the emphasis is on rules, and in the other, Weber, charismatic, the accent is on personal qualities. In practice, political authority is not of a pure type but a mixture. Much authority is based on traditions and is important as it is in Britain. So deep-rooted have the conventions of the Constitution, as Dicey has named them, been found in the habits of Englishmen, and so found the mechanism of government is created on their foundation that without them the political system of the country becomes maimed if not absolutely unworkable. The United States has a written constitution, and utmost importance is attached to legality, but some Presidents, like Woodrow Wilson and Franklin Roosevelt, have exercised significant.

Power

Power, like authority, is a means of favorably affecting another's behavior, but by might not right. Those who possess and exercise power use force to impose their will. But the essence of authority is not power, although authority and power are normally found together. Even widely acclaimed rulers cannot rule by authority alone.

Authority and power may pass gradually or dramatically from one individual or group to another and be either dispersed or concentrated. There is an alteration in government and the periodic elections in the parliamentary and presidential patterns of government, after regularly specified intervals. The right to govern flows from the electorate. This is a gradual and constitutional process of transferring power from one -group or individual to another.

Technically, authority and power are concentrated in the Cabinet in the Parliamentary system of government. The Cabinet is a wheel within a wheel. Its outside ring consists of a party with a majority in the representative chamber, the next ring being the Ministry, which contains men who are most active within the party and the smallest of all being the Cabinet, containing the real leaders or chiefs.

Political Elites:

The concept of political elites was first brought into the realm of politics by H. D. Lasswell. Since then, much has been written on political elites and the cases argued in detail. The common theme is that there is a distinct and identifiable group of persons in any and every polity that constitutes the political elites with sophistication. This elite may change without revolution, and another replaces one ruling group.

Legitimacy

Introduction

In political science, legitimacy is the right and acceptance of an authority, usually a governing law or a regime. Whereas authority denotes a specific position in an established government, the term legitimacy denotes a system of government—wherein government denotes "sphere of influence". An authority viewed as legitimate often has the right and justification to exercise power. Political legitimacy is considered a basic condition for governing, without which a government will suffer legislative deadlock(s) and collapse. In political systems where this is not the case, unpopular régimes survive because they are considered legitimate by a small, influential élite In Chinese political philosophy, since the historical period of the Zhou Dynasty (1046–256 BC), the political legitimacy of a ruler and government was derived from the Mandate of Heaven, and unjust rulers who lost said mandate therefore lost the right to rule the people.

Philosophy of Legitimacy

In moral philosophy, the term legitimacy is often positively interpreted as the normative status conferred by a governed people upon their governors' institutions, offices, and actions, based upon the belief that their government's actions are appropriate uses of power by a legally constituted government.

Kinds of Legitimacy



Civil legitimacy

Civil legitimacy can be granted through different measures for accountability than voting, such as financial transparency and stake-holder accountability. In the international system another method for measuring civil legitimacy is through accountability to international human rights norms. In an effort to determine what makes a government legitimate, the Center for Public Impact launched a project to hold a global conversation about legitimacy stating, inviting citizens, academics and governments to participate. The organization also publishes case studies that consider the theme of legitimacy as it applies to projects in a number of different countries including Bristol, Lebanon and Canada.

"Good" governance vs "bad" governance

The United Nations Human Rights Office of the High Commission (OHCHR) established standards of what is considered "good governance" that include the key attributes transparency, responsibility, accountability, participation and responsiveness (to the needs of the people).

Input, output and throughput legitimacy

Assessing the political legitimacy of a government can be done by looking at three different aspects of which a government can derive legitimacy. Fritz Scharpf introduced two normative criteria, which are output legitimacy, i.e. the effectiveness of policy outcomes for people and input legitimacy, the responsiveness to citizen concerns as a result of participation by the people. A third normative criterion was added by Vivien Schmidt, who analyzes legitimacy also in terms of what she calls throughput, i.e. the governance processes that happen in between input and output.

Negative and positive legitimacy

Abulof distinguishes between negative political legitimacy (NPL), which is about the object of legitimation (answering what is legitimate), and positive political legitimacy (PPL), which is about the source of legitimation (answering who is the 'legitimator') NPL is concerned with establishing where to draw the line between good and bad; PPL with who should be drawing it in the first place. From the NPL perspective, political legitimacy emanates from appropriate actions; from a PPL perspective, it emanates from appropriate actors. In the social contract tradition, Hobbes and Locke focused on NPL (stressing security and liberty, respectively), while Rousseau focused more on PPL ("the people" as the legitimator). Arguably, political stability depends on both forms of legitimacy.

Instrumental and substantive legitimacy

Weber's understanding of legitimacy rests on shared values, such as tradition and rational-legality. But policies that aim at (re-)constructing legitimacy by improving the service delivery or 'output' of a state often only respond to shared needs. Therefore, substantive sources of legitimacy need to be distinguished from more instrumental ones. Instrumental legitimacy rests on "the rational assessment of the usefulness of an authority ...", describing to what extent an authority responds to shared needs. Instrumental legitimacy is very much based on the perceived effectiveness of service delivery. Conversely, substantive legitimacy is a more abstract normative judgment, which is underpinned by shared values. If a person believes that an entity has the right to exercise social control, he or she may also accept personal disadvantages.

Forms of Legitimate Governments

Communism

Where the legitimacy of a Communist state derives from having won a civil war, a revolution, or from having won an election such as the Presidency of Salvador Allende (1970–73).

Constitutionalism

Where the modern political concept of constitutionalism establishes the law as supreme over the private will, by integrating nationalism, democracy, and limited government.

Democracy

Where government legitimacy derives from the popular perception that the elected government abides by democratic principles in governing, and thus is legally accountable to its people.

Fascism

Where in the 1920s and the 1930s it based its political legitimacy upon the arguments of traditional authority; respectively, the German National Socialists and the Italian Fascists claimed that the political legitimacy of their right to rule .

Monarchy

Where the divine right of kings establishes the political legitimacy of the rule of the monarch (king or queen); legitimacy also derives from the popular perception (tradition and custom) and acceptance of the monarch as the rightful ruler of nation and country.

State, Nation, and Nationality Distinguished

State, Nation, and Nationality Distinguished: The terms "state" and "nation" are frequently identified both in popular usage and in scientific discussion. Both terms, and also the term "nationality," have acquired various meanings, and the looseness, with which they are employed, even by scientific writers, has been productive of much confusion and misunderstanding.

The Nation Defined:-

Ethnic Factor: -

Burgess, adhering to the etymological meaning, defines a nation as a population of ethnic unity, inhabiting a territory of a geographic unity. But this definition has been criticized because

neither popular usage nor political science generally regards the nation as merely an ethnic aggregation nor do they consider that geographic unity is essential.

Non-Ethnic and Linguistic Factors:-

The bonds which make people a nation are not necessarily ethnic and linguistic, although those are undoubtedly the most important factors. Thus the Swiss people constitute a nation, as the term is now generally used, that is, in the political sense, but they are not of the same race nor do they possess a common language.

The Nation Considered as a Political Phenomenon:-

As has been said, the term “nation” as used today by most writers connotes a political organization that is, a nation is not only an association of which the bonds of the union are cultural and spiritual, but it is also a politically organized aggregation. In short, it is a state. Consequently, the terms state and nation are frequently used as synonyms.

The Terms “National” and “Nationality”:-

The term “national,” as stated above, is used by writers both as a noun and as an adjective. In the former sense, it is used in diplomatic correspondence and by writers on international law to denote a person who is entitled to the protection of the state. Ordinarily, such a person is a citizen, but he may be an alien, for many states have under their protection classes of persons whom the French call proteges, who are not citizens.

What is a Nationality?

The terms “nation” and “nationality,” as stated above, have frequently been and still are used as synonyms, and those who have distinguished between them have by no means been in agreement as to the difference. Lord Bryce suggested that it might not be wide of the mark to say that while nationality is a population held together by certainties, as, for example, language and literature, ideas, customs, and traditions, in such wise so to feel itself a coherent unity distinct from other populations similarly held together by like ties of their own, a nation is a nationality which has~organized itself into a political body either independent or desiring to be independent.

The Essential Elements of Nationality:-

1. Purity of Race: -

Having defined in a general way the term “nationality,” let Us now inquire what are the essential or usual elements which constitute a group of people a nationality. The community of race and community of language are undoubtedly the most important of, these elements, but it is necessary to recognize that neither is absolutely essential. The race is a physical phenomenon, whereas nationality is a complex phenomenon in which spiritual elements enter. To identify race and nation is, as has been well said, to subordinate moral conscience to organic life and to make the animalism which is in man the whole of humanity.

2. Community of Language: -

The community of language, however, is usually regarded as an essential element, as stated above, since language supplies the medium through which the people maintain intercourse with one another and through which they can express their culture and ideals in common literature.

The lack of this medium separates people somewhat as the barriers of mountains and seas formerly did, prevents them from knowing and understanding one another, and thus renders difficult the development of the common consciousness and the community of ideas which are necessary to constitute real nationality.

3. Geographic Unity:-

Geographic unity is another characteristic that is usually attributed to a nationality. That is to say, the population constituting the nationality must occupy a fixed territory, the parts of which are contiguous. In fact, however, examples of nationalities composed of peoples distributed or scattered over territories which were non-contiguous and which belonged to different states have not been lacking.

4. Community of Religion:-

Today, however, the element of religious unity is no longer regarded as essential. We have seen recent examples of nationalities professing different religions, but who, nevertheless, have been brought together into a single state, for example, the Serbs, who are Greek Catholics, and the Croats, who are Roman Catholics, but who have lately united with each other and -with the Slovenes to form the Yugo-Slav state. It may be observed, however, that the Serbs and Croats speak the same language and have in the main common traditions and a similar culture. These bonds have, therefore, proved stronger than the separatist influence of religious differences.

5. Common Political Aspirations: -

As is well known, delegations representing many nationalities appeared at the peace conference in Paris in 1917, invoking the principle of self-determination and demanding that they be allowed to separate from the states of which they were a part and to organize themselves into new and independent states. They proceeded on the theory that it is a sort of natural right of every people who form a nationality to determine for themselves their own destiny and consequently to free themselves from the subjection of other states to which they happen to be unwillingly yoked.

6. Other Contributing Factors:-

It is now generally admitted that while all of the abovementioned factors are or have been important contributing forces in the development of nationality no one of them is absolutely essential. More and more, in recent years, it has come to be recognized that it is not so much come in the unity of race, language, religion, or residence which impresses people with the character of nationality, as it is the feeling of community of interests and ideals, of like-mindedness, as the sociologists say, the mutual sympathy which comes from the consciousness of wrongs and oppression suffered through common subjection during a long period of time to a despotic government, the pride of a common share in great historic struggles, and the possession of a common heritage and common traditions expressed in song and legend.

Elements of State

These definitions draw attention to the fact that the state has four essential elements. These are: (1) population, (2) territory, (3) government, (4) sovereignty (or independence). The first two elements constitute the physical or material basis of the state while the last two form its political and spiritual basis.

1. Population:

The state is a human institution. So population is its primary element. There is no hard and fast rule about population. The ancient Greek writers like Plato and Aristotle favoured a small population. According to Plato, an ideal state should have a population of 5040.

In modern times, Rousseau, prompted by considerations of direct democracy, fixed the number at 10,000. In modern times states vary greatly from the few thousands of Monaco or of San Marino to the crores of China or of India. The modern tendency is in favour of large states. All that can be said is that a large population is an advantage from the point of view of military defense.

2. Territory:

A definite and more or less permanent territory is also regarded as an essential element of the state. In modern times, the citizens are bound together by residence on a common territory. Land, water and air space comprise the territory of a state.

According to international law, all states are equal in status and right, no matter how unequal they are in population and area. It is claimed that small states are good for efficient administration and inculcating among the people a sense of unity and love for the state.

3. Government:

A people occupying a definite territory cannot form a state unless they are politically organized i.e., unless they possess a government. Government is the political organization of the state. It is the concrete and visible instrument of state power.

4. Sovereignty:

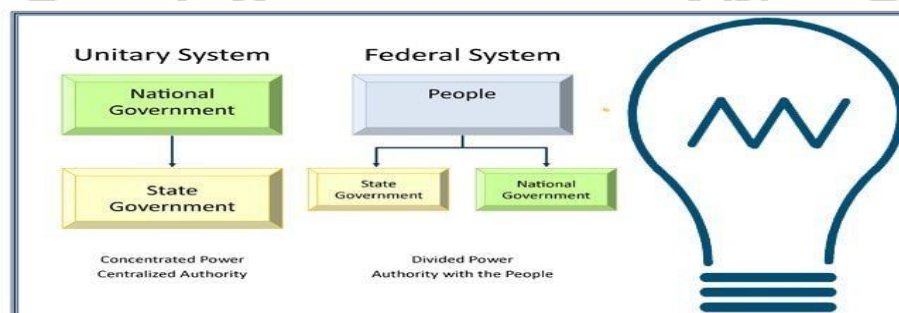
By far the most important characteristic of the state is its sovereignty. It is the characteristic which distinguishes the state from all other associations. It denotes the supreme power or the final authority from which there is no appeal.

Sovereignty has two aspects internal and external. Internally viewed, the state has supreme power over all individuals and associations within its fixed area. It can compel obedience of its people to its laws and commands. Externally viewed, the state is free from control of any foreign state or alien rule. Before independence India was not a state as it was ruled by the British.

5. International Recognition:

In modern times relations among nations have grown and many international organisations and institutions have come into being. Therefore some scholars have argued that international recognition be an essential element of state. The recognition of the sovereign status of a new state by other states is called international recognition.

Types of States and Governments



Unitary and Centralized Government

Unitary and Centralized Government Explained As stated in a previous article, unitary government is that form in which the supreme governing authority of a state is concentrated in a single organ or set of organs, established at and operating from a common center. For this

reason, it is sometimes described as centralized government, although the two things are not necessarily identical. In a sense, all non federal systems of government belong to this class, but even federal governments are centralized in so far as the central government is charged with legislating for the whole country and with the administration of the particular matters committed to its care.

Deconcentration and Decentralization: -

As stated above, unitary government is not necessarily at the same time centralized government, although it is always such in large part. In France, for example, where the system of government is unitary in the sense that all final governing authority centers in and radiates from the central government at Paris, the effect has been attenuated by a process of deconcentration and to some extent also by a process of decentralization.

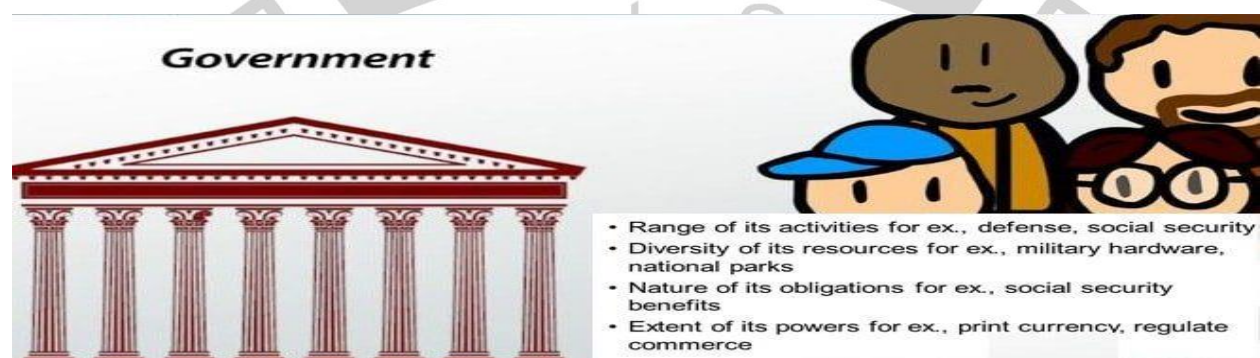
Through the process of deconcentration the active administration of many affairs has been shifted from the central government at Paris to its representatives and, agents in the departments, arrondissements, and communes (the prefects, sub-prefects, mayors, commissioners of police, etc) The effect has thus been to relieve the congestion at Paris and to facilitate the work of administration throughout the local areas.

Elements of Strength: -

Naturally a form of government so Widely distributed must, at least in the Opinions of the people who have deliberately established it, and who are content to live under it, possess elements of strength which are superior to those of the federal form. These elements are mainly such as result from uniformity of law, policy, and administration throughout the whole country, and from the strength, internal and external, which naturally inheres in a unified system of government.

In the fields of foreign policy and national defense the strength of centralized government is especially manifest. Unitary government also possesses the merit of being simpler in organization and, it is claimed, less expensive than federal government, because of the lack of duplication of central and local authorities and services.

Federal Form of Government



Characteristic of federal government represents the antithesis of the system described above. Its characteristic feature consists in the fact that the power of legislation, government, and administration of the state instead of being concentrated in a single set of central organs at the capital or in their local representatives and agents, is divided and distributed between the central authorities on the one hand and the authorities of the component units of the federal union on the other.

The federal system, therefore, represents a combination of centralized and local government it is centralized as regards all such matters of legislation and administration as have been committed to the care of the national authorities it is local as regards all other matters.

Elements of Strength:-

Like all other systems, federal government has its elements of strength and weakness. Its strong points are, in the main, those which are regarded as the defects of unitary government. In the first place, more than any other form of political organization, it affords the means by which petty states may unite themselves into a more powerful commonwealth and thereby obtain the manifest advantages, internal and external, which flow from union, without at the same time wholly surrendering their separate existences and sacrificing their right to govern themselves in respect to matters which concern them alone. It thus combines the advantages of national unity with those of local autonomy and the right of self-government.

Weakness of Federal Government:-

The federal system of government, however, like other forms, has its defects. Some of these are inherent in the very nature of the system, while others are peculiar to the particular forms which have been adopted by different states. In recent years there has been an increasing disposition among writers to dwell upon its defects and to emphasize less its elements of strength, for the reason that with the growing complexity of modern society its defects have more and more revealed themselves in a striking degree.

First of all, in the conduct of foreign affairs federal government possesses an inherent weakness not found in unitary government. The experience of the United States in particular has shown that the individual members of the federal union, by virtue of their reserved powers over the rights of person and property may embarrass the national government in enforcing its treaty obligations in respect to aliens residing in the United States.

In the domain of internal affairs federal government has also shown itself to be weak for the reason that it means a division of power between coordinate authorities in legislation and administration, and division of power usually means weakness, whatever may be the other advantages which it secures. It means, or may mean, diversity of legislation in respect to matters concerning which the general interests of the country require uniformity of legislation.

Confederations



Confederations' Character:-

Definitions of confederations, like those of states, are multifarious, and no useful purpose would be served by quoting them. Most authors agree that a confederation is a union or association of states formed to promote or achieve certain specific objects, especially the maintenance of their common external security.

Nor is it terminated in the same way that personal unions are, but usually comes to an end through secession and dissolution or the establishment in its place of a federal union or a

unitary state. It differs from a unitary state in that its component members are not mere administrative circumscriptions but real states, in full possession, as stated above, of their sovereignty and independence.

Unlike a federal union, a confederation does not possess single sovereignty, but there is a plurality of sovereignties, as many in fact as states are composing it. Ordinarily, each member state remains an international person; it may enter into treaty relations with foreign states and even engage in war with them without involving their associates. If war breaks out between two or more of them, it is international war and not civil war.

A Confederation is Not a State:-

It is, on the contrary, merely a *vinculum Juris* between sovereign states, a simple association, having no juridical personality of its own, and no rights or competence except such as exist in virtue of express delegation by the confederated states. Another group of writers, which includes four, DeLouter, and Schulze, while admitting that it is not a state, maintains that it possesses an international personality and does the component states.

The fact is that no known confederation ever possessed the character of a true state. Still, there is no reason why it cannot possess at least a limited international personality. Whether it does or not depends upon the terms of the particular pact upon which it rests.

Examples of Confederations:-

History abounds in examples of confederations, for the tendency of neighboring states to associate themselves together for defense purposes and further their common interests has proved to be almost as strong as the social impulse among individuals. Among the ancient Greeks, confederations were numerous, the more important being the Boeotian, Delian, Lycian, Achaean, and Italian leagues.

In some cases, the component members were federated together much more closely than in others. The constitution of the Achaean League, for instance, provided for a common executive magistracy, a legislative body, and even a rudimentary judiciary.

In fact, its organization was so highly developed that some writers considered it to have been essentially a federal union rather than a confederation. Leagues and confederations among the early Italian cities were not uncommon, though they never attained the perfection and degree of importance of Greece.

No common administrative or judicial organs were created, the enforcement of the congress's resolutions being left to the individual states. The powers conferred upon the general congress were so meager and the means of enforcing its will so inadequate that it perished, to use the language of De Tocqueville, through the excessive weakness of its government.

The German Bund, 1815-1867:-

The German Confederation embraced at first thirty-eight states of varying rank and important kingdoms, grand duchies, principalities, and free cities. It was declared a perpetual league to preserve Germany's external and internal security and the independence and inviolability of the confederate states.

The Central American Federation, 1907-1918:-

A recent example of a confederation was formed in 1907 by the five Central American states of Guatemala, Costa Rica, Honduras, Nicaragua, and Salvador. It differed from all previous

Confederations concerning the objects created to accomplish and in the instrumentalities through which they were to be achieved.

Today, there remains no example of a confederation in the sense in which the term has been defined above. Experience has demonstrated the inherent Weakness of this type of union. It represents a transitory stage of political development. Those that have existed in the past have all disappeared through the consolidation of their member states either into federal unions or unitary states.

Presidential and Parliamentary Form of Government

There are basically two forms of democratic government systems – Presidential and Parliamentary. Pakistan and India follows a parliamentary form of government modelled on Britain's.

Apart from the parliamentary and presidential systems, there can also be a hybrid system incorporating features of both systems. The chief difference between these systems is the extent of power separation between the legislative, the executive and the judiciary. Another major difference between the presidential and parliamentary systems is the accountability of the executive to the legislature.

Presidential System of Government

In a presidential system, the head of the government leads an executive, that is distinct from the legislature. Here, the head of the government and the head of the state are one and the same. Also, a key feature is that the executive is not responsible to the legislature.

Features of the Presidential System

1. The executive (president) can veto acts by the legislature.
2. The president has a fixed tenure and cannot be removed by a vote of no-confidence in the legislature.
3. Generally, the president has the power to pardon or commute judicial sentences awarded to criminals.
4. The president is elected directly by the people or by an electoral college.

Merits of Presidential System

The advantages of the presidential system are given below:

Separation of powers:

Efficiency of administration is greatly enhanced since the three arms of the government are independent of each other.

Expert government:

Since the executive need not be legislators, the President can choose experts in various fields to head relevant departments or ministries. This will make sure that people who are capable and knowledgeable form part of the government.

Stability:

This type of government is stable. Since the term of the president is fixed and not subject to majority support in the legislature, he need not worry about losing the government. There is no danger of a sudden fall of the government. There is no political pressure on the president to make decisions.

Less influence of the party system:

Political parties do not attempt to dislodge the government since the tenure is fixed.

Demerits of Presidential System

The disadvantages of the presidential system are given below:

Less responsible executive:

Since the legislature has no hold over the executive and the president, the head of the government can turn authoritarian.

Deadlocks between executive and legislature:

Since there is a more strict separation of powers here, there can be frequent tussles between both arms of the government, especially of the legislature is not dominated by the president's political party. This can lead to an erosion in efficiency because of wastage of time.

Rigid government:

Presidential systems are often accused of being rigid. It lacks flexibility.

Spoils system:

The system gives the president sweeping powers of patronage. Here, he can choose executives as per his will. This gives rise to the spoils system where people close to the president (relatives, business associates, etc.) get roles in the government.

Parliamentary System of Government

India chose a parliamentary form of government primarily because the constitution-makers were greatly influenced by the system in England. Another reason the founding fathers saw was that the parliamentary model would only work to accommodate the varied and diverse groups within our population. Also, the strict separation of powers in the presidential system would cause conflicts between the two branches, the executive and the legislature, which our newly-independent country could ill-afford. There are more parliamentary forms of government in the world than there are presidencies. In this system, the parliament is generally supreme and the executive is responsible to the legislature. It is also known as the Cabinet form of government, and also 'Responsible Government'.

Features of the parliamentary system

1. Close relationship between the legislature and the executive:

Here, the Prime Minister along with the Council of Ministers forms the executive and the Parliament is the legislature. The PM and the ministers are elected from the members of parliament, implying that the executive emerges out of the legislature.

2. Executive responsible to the legislature:

The executive is responsible to the legislature. There is a collective responsibility, that is, each minister's responsibility is the responsibility of the whole Council.

3. Dual executive:

There are two executives – the real executive and the titular executive. The nominal executive is the head of state (president or monarch) while the real executive is the Prime Minister, who is the head of government.

4. Secrecy of procedure:

A prerequisite of this form of government is that cabinet proceedings are secret, and not meant to be divulged to the public.

5. Leadership of the Prime Minister:

The leader of this form of government is the Prime Minister. Generally, the leader of the party that wins a majority in the lower house is appointed as the PM.

6. Bicameral Legislature:

Most parliamentary democracies follow bicameral legislature.

7. No fixed tenure:

The term of the government depends on its majority support in the lower house. If the government does not win a vote of no confidence, the council of ministers has to resign.

Elections will be held and a new government is formed.

Merits of Parliamentary System

The advantages of the parliamentary system are as follows:

Better coordination between the executive and the legislature:

Since the executive is a part of the legislature, and generally the majority of the legislature supports the government, it is easier to pass laws and implement them.

Prevents authoritarianism:

Since the executive is responsible to the legislature, and can vote it out in a motion of no confidence, there is no authoritarianism. Also, unlike the presidential system, power is not concentrated in one hand.

Responsible government:

The members of the legislature can ask questions and discuss matters of public interest and put pressure on the government. The parliament can check the activities of the executive.

Representing diverse groups:

In this system, the parliament offers representation to diverse groups of the country. This is especially important for a country like India.

Flexibility:

There is flexibility in the system as the PM can be changed easily if needed. During the Second World War, the British PM Neville Chamberlain was replaced by Winston Churchill. This is unlike the presidential system where he/she can be replaced only after the entire term or in case of impeachment/incapacity.

Demerits of Parliamentary System

The disadvantages of the parliamentary system are as follows:

No separation of powers:

Since there is no genuine separation of powers, the legislature cannot always hold the executive responsible. This is especially true if the government has a good majority in the house. Also, because of anti-defection rules, legislators cannot exercise their free will and vote as per their understanding and opinions. They have to follow the party whip.

Unqualified legislators:

The system creates legislators whose intention is to enter the executive only. They are largely unqualified to legislate.

Instability:

Since the governments sustain only as long as they can prove a majority in the house, there is instability if there is no single-largest party after the elections. Coalition governments are

generally quite unstable and short-lived. Because of this, the executive has to focus on how to stay in power rather than worry about the state of affairs/welfare of the people.

Ministers:

The executive should belong to the ruling party. These rules out the hiring of industry experts for the job.

Failure to take a prompt decision:

Because there is no fixed tenure enjoyed by the Council of Ministers, it often hesitates from taking bold and long-term policy decisions.

Party politics:

Party politics is more evident in the parliamentary system where partisan interests drive politicians more than national interests.

Control by the bureaucracy:

Civil servants exercise a lot of power. They advise the ministers on various matters and are also not responsible to the legislature.

Comparison of Presidential and Parliamentary Systems

Basis	Parliamentary	Presidential
Executive	Dual	Single
Accountability	Executive accountable to legislature	Executive not accountable to legislature
Ministers	Only from among MPs	People outside the legislature can be appointed
Dissolution of lower house	PM can dissolve before the expiry of the term	President cannot dissolve
Tenure	Not fixed	Fixed

Authoritarianism

Authoritarianism is a form of government characterized by the rejection of political plurality, the use of a strong central power to preserve the political *status quo*, and reductions in the rule of law, separation of powers, and democratic voting. Political scientists have created many typologies describing variations of authoritarian forms of government. Authoritarian regimes

may be either autocratic or oligarchic in nature and may be based upon the rule of a party or the military

1. **Limited political pluralism, realized with constraints on the legislature, political parties and interest groups.**
2. **Political legitimacy based upon appeals to emotion and identification of the regime as a necessary evil to combat "easily recognizable societal problems, such as underdevelopment or insurgency".**
3. **Minimal political mobilization and suppression of anti-regime activities.**
4. **Ill-defined executive powers, often vague and shifting, which extends the power of the executive.**

Characteristics of Authoritarian System

Authoritarianism also tends to embrace the informal and unregulated exercise of political power, a leadership that is "self-appointed and even if elected cannot be displaced by citizens' free choice among competitors", the arbitrary deprivation of civil liberties and little tolerance for meaningful opposition. A range of social controls also attempt to stifle civil society while political stability is maintained by control over and support of the armed forces, a bureaucracy staffed by the regime and creation of allegiance through various means of socialization and indoctrination.

Authoritarianism is marked by "indefinite political tenure" of the ruler or ruling party (often in a one-party state) or other authority. The transition from an authoritarian system to a more democratic form of government is referred to as democratization.

Constitutions in authoritarian regimes

1. Authoritarian **dominant-party** states that
2. Impose sanctions (such as libel judgments) against, but do not **arbitrarily arrest**, political dissidents;
3. Permits "reasonably open discussion and criticism of its policies";
4. Hold "reasonably free and fair elections", without systemic intimidation, but "with close attention to such matters as the drawing of election districts and the creation of party lists to ensure as best it can that it will prevail—and by a substantial margin";
5. Reflect at least occasional responsiveness to public opinion; and
6. Create "mechanisms to ensure that the amount of dissent does not exceed the level it regards as desirable". Tushnet cites **Singapore** as an example of an authoritarian constitutionalist state, and connects the concept to that of **hybrid regimes**.

Economy

Scholars such as Seymour Lipset, Carles Boix, Susan Stokes, Dietrich Rueschemeyer, Evelyne Stephens and John Stephens argue that economic development increases the likelihood of democratization. Adam Przeworski and Fernando Limongi argue that while economic development makes democracies less likely to turn authoritarian, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that development causes democratization (turning an authoritarian state into a democracy).

Eva Bellin argues that under certain circumstances the bourgeoisie and labor are more likely to favor democratization, but less so under other circumstances. Economic development can boost public support for authoritarian regimes in the short-to-medium term.

Institutions

1. **Control of the media by the authoritarian incumbents.**
2. **Interference with opposition campaigning.**
3. **Electoral fraud.**
4. **Violence against opposition.**

5. Large-scale spending by the state in favor of the incumbents.
6. Permitting of some parties, but not others.
7. Prohibitions on opposition parties, but not independent candidates.
8. Allowing competition between candidates within the incumbent party, but not those who are not in the incumbent party.

Interactions with other elites and the masses

The foundations of stable authoritarian rule are that the authoritarian prevents contestation from the masses and other elites. The authoritarian regime may use co-optation or repression (or carrots and sticks) to prevent revolts. In the 2010s, Kazakhstan has unsuccessfully tried to mobilize citizens and police to cooperate through the zero tolerance policing of petty crimes.

Manipulation of information

According to a 2019 study by Sergei Guriev and Daniel Treisman, authoritarian regimes have over time become less reliant on violence and mass repression to maintain control. The study shows instead that authoritarians have increasingly resorted to manipulation of information as a means of control. Authoritarians increasingly seek to create an appearance of good performance, conceal state repression, and imitate democracy.

Systemic weakness and resilience

- (1) "The increasingly norm-bound nature of its succession politics";
- (2) "the increase in meritocratic as opposed to factional considerations in the promotion of political elites";
- (3) "The differentiation and functional specialization of institutions within the regime";
- (4) "The establishment of institutions for political participation and appeal that strengthen the CCP's legitimacy among the public at large".

Violence

Authoritarians may resort to measures referred to as "coup-proofing", i.e. structures that make it hard for any small group to seize power. These coup-proofing strategies may include the strategic placing of family, ethnic, and religious groups in the military; creation of an armed force parallel to the regular military; and development of multiple internal security agencies with overlapping jurisdiction that constantly monitor one another. Research shows that some coup-proofing strategies reduce the risk of coups occurring. However, coup-proofing reduces military effectiveness, and limits the rents that an incumbent can extract. A 2016 study shows that the implementation of succession rules reduce the occurrence of coup attempts. Succession rules are believed to hamper coordination efforts among coup plotters by assuaging elites who have more to gain by patience than by plotting.

Authoritarianism and fascism

Authoritarianism is considered a core concept of fascism and scholars agree that a fascist regime is foremost an authoritarian form of government, although not all authoritarian regimes are fascist. While authoritarianism is a defining characteristic of fascism, scholars argue that more distinguishing traits are needed to make an authoritarian regime fascist.

Effect on Development

Studies suggest that several health indicators (life expectancy and infant and maternal mortality) have a stronger and more significant association with democracy than they have with GDP per capita, size of the public sector or income inequality.^[91] Prominent economist Amartya Sen has theorized that no functioning liberal democracy has ever suffered a large-scale famine.

The Organs of Government

Constitution empowers three arms of government



The Legislature

Organs of Govt. : The Legislature

- The Legislature of Bangladesh is Unicameral.
- 300 members are elected by universal suffrage for 5 years.

Functions of The Legislatures :

- Law making
- Control over the budget
- Control over the executive
- Judicial
- Amendment of the constitutions
- Mirror of the public opinion.



In our country the central legislature is called the Parliament, which has two Houses:

(1) Upper House (Senate)

(2) Lower House National Assembly (مجلس شوری)

Functions of Legislature

(1) Law Making:

In modern times the most important function of legislature is law making. Ordinary Bills can be introduced by the members of the Parliament and by the Ministers, while Money Bills can be introduced only by the Ministers in the Lower House. The Members of the Legislature can by a majority vote accept or reject any Bill. The Members of Legislature or the Parliament enjoy full freedom of speech and also of criticism of the policies of the government.

(2) Control over the Budget:

The legislature has control over the budget of the executive (Government) and without its approval the executive cannot spend even a single 'paisa'. In England and India, the Members of the Parliament can impose a cut on any demand on the budget but they cannot increase it.

(3) Control over Executive:

In a Parliamentary Government the Legislature or the Parliament exercises full control over the executive or the Council of Ministers. The Parliament has the right to put Questions and Supplementary Questions to the Cabinet.

The Parliament can remove the Cabinet by a No- Confidence Motion. It can bring in Adjournment Motions and Censure Motions against the Cabinet. The Parliament can appoint a committee to investigate the affairs of the ministers.

(4) Judicial:

In certain countries the legislature has to perform certain judicial functions. For example, in India and America the Parliament and the Congress can remove the President by a process of Impeachment. In England, the House of Lords is the final Court of Appeal. In Canada, the Upper House, i.e. the Senate hears the divorce cases. In Switzerland, the Federal Assembly has the power to interpret the Constitution.

(5) Electoral:

In certain countries, the legislature elects the President, the Vice-President and the Judges. In India, the Parliament takes part in the election of the President and the Vice-President. (In the election of the President, besides the Parliament, the State Legislatures also take part, but in the election of the Vice- President, only the Parliament takes part).

In Russia, the Judges of the Supreme Court are elected by the Parliament of that country. In Switzerland also the members of the Executive and Federal Tribunal are elected by the members of Parliament. Formerly, in China the President was elected by the Parliament.

(6) Amendment of the Constitution:

In every democracy, the power to amend the constitution rests with the legislature of that country. The only difference is that in some countries, a similar procedure is adopted as that for the amendment of ordinary laws. In some other countries a special procedure is adopted for the amendment of the constitution. In our country, the Parliament can amend certain clauses of the constitution with a two thirds majority and for amending certain clauses; the approval of one half of the state legislatures is needed.

(7) A Minor of Public Opinion:

Now-a-days, the legislature acts as the mirror of public opinion, because it criticises and compels the executive to act according to the wishes of the people.

(8) Right of the Legislature to remove the Judges:

In India, China, Soviet Russia, England and the U.S.A., the Parliament has the power to remove the judges of the Federal or Supreme Court.

(9) As a Board of Directors:

In certain countries the legislature acts as a Board of Directors for Government Corporations, because it decides the manner in which the Administrative Branch is to be organized and perform its functions. It also decides the ways and means for raising money.

We have given the functions of the legislatures in democratic countries. The situation in totalitarian countries is quite different. In these countries, the executive has a great control over the legislature; hence the executive is not responsible to the legislature. Its functions like law-making and the passage of the budget are nominal.

The legislature acts according to the directions of the executive. Thus we see that in democratic countries, the legislatures exercise a great control over the executive, but in totalitarian regimes the legislature is controlled by the executive.

The Executive

- Executive is that organ which implements the laws passed by the legislature and the policies of the government.
- The broad form of executives mean all the functionaries, political power-holders and permanent civil servants who undertake the execution of laws and policies and run the administration of state.

Meaning:

The second important organ of the government is executive. The legislature enacts the laws and the executive implements them. In ancient times the executive (Monarch and Council of Ministers) used to make the implement laws and it also awarded punishment to the law-breakers.

The definition is very comprehensive. According to it, the Head of the State, Council of Ministers and all other officials who implement the laws are included in the executive. If the word executive is used in a narrow sense, it will include only the President and the Council of Ministers, and the officials are not included in it.

Generally, the term executive is used in a narrow senses and it includes the head of the State and his Council of Ministers, who are required to implement the laws and make policies for running the administration of the State.

Types of Executive:

Modern executive represents different viewpoints.

We give below the various forms of executive which are functioning in a large number of countries of the world:

(1) Nominal and Real Executive:

In many countries the Head of the State has nominal powers, as in Great Britain, Japan, Denmark, Sweden, Norway, Belgium and Holland. In these countries, the powers of the Monarch are exercised by his ministers. Thus there is nominal executive in these countries. Contrary to this, under the Constitution of the U.S.A., the President has been given many powers and he himself exercises these powers.

(2) Single and Plural types of Executives:

Single executive means that all executive powers are vested in one Head of the State, e.g., the President of America exercises all executive powers. In Switzerland, the executive power is not in the hands of only one individual, but in the hands of a Council of seven members. The Chairman of this Council has no additional powers. Thus all the seven members are equally responsible for the administration in that country. This type of Swiss executive is called Plural Executive.

(3) Parliamentary and Presidential Types of Executive:

In Parliamentary executive the Cabinet is responsible to the legislature. This system is functioning in England, France, Japan, Sri Lanka, India, West Germany, Italy, Sweden, Denmark, Norway, Belgium and Holland. Where the President is the Head of the State and he has real executive powers and is not responsible to the Parliament, the system will be known as the

Presidential type of executive. This system is functioning in the United States of America. Brazil and some countries of South America. The President is elected for a fixed term in these countries and he can be removed only through an impeachment.

(4) Hereditary and Elective Executive:

When a king is the Head of the State and when after his death his son or, in case of his being issueless, some of his near relative occupies the throne, the system is called hereditary executive. This type of executive is functioning in England, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Belgium, Holland, Japan and Nepal.

In countries where the Head of State is elected either by the people or by their representatives, the system is called Elective Executive. We find this system in India, France, West Germany, Italy, the United States of America, Austria, Pakistan, Egypt, etc.

Dictatorship:

When the entire powers of the nation are in the hands of one person, it is called Dictatorship. The dictator wields power with the help of a particular party or army and later on he becomes all in all in that country. After World War 1(1914-18), Mussolini in Italy and Hitler in Germany became dictators.

In the Second World War (1939-45) Germany and Italy were defeated and the dictatorship came to an end. Today democratic governments are functioning there. In Spain, General Franco established his Dictatorship.

In Soviet Union, China, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Romania, Bulgaria and Yugoslavia, the dictatorship of the Communist Party has been established and no opposition party can be formed there.

Functions of the Executive:

The functions of the executive are not the same everywhere. The functions of the executive depend on the form of the government. In dictatorship, the functions of the executive are different from those in democracy.

Ordinarily, the following are the functions of the executive:

(1) Administrative:

In every country the Head of the State and the Council of Ministers are responsible for the maintenance of law and order and for the running of the administration. The Head of the State, on the recommendation of the Council of Ministers, makes many important political appointments. The administrators are generally recruited on the basis of competitive examinations. They are promoted, demoted and dismissed under the Civil Service Rules.

(2) Legislative:

Generally, law making is the responsibility of the legislature, but in every country the executive has an important role to play in the making of the laws. The executive prepares bills for this purpose and introduces them in the legislature. There is a Parliamentary Government in England, India, Japan, Sweden, Norway, France, Italy and West Germany.

The leader of the majority party becomes the Prime Minister. He has influence on both the organs of the government i.e., Legislature and Executive. The ministers are also important members of the Parliament. Therefore, they too have sufficient influence on the legislature or on the Parliament. In England, India and other Parliamentary countries, the Parliament spends much of its time on the discussion of the bills.

(3) The executive

The executive has not only this much role to play in the framing of the laws, but more than that. That laws passed by the legislature can be vetoed by the President. This is the practice in India and the U.S.A. Besides, the President has the right to issue Ordinances. This practice also exists in India.

The Queen has this right in England, but she can use this right on the recommendations of the Home Secretary. Besides, if there is a rebellion on a large scale in any country, the President has the right to grant general amnesty. This is the practice in India and some other countries. In some countries the President has the right to appoint the judges, as is the practice in India.

(4) Military Functions:

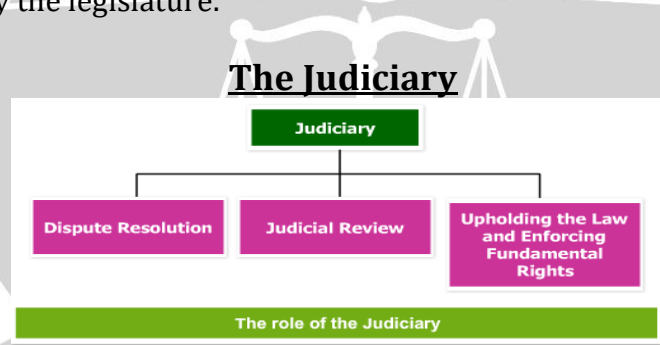
In almost all the countries, constitutionally the President or the Head of the State has many military powers. He is the Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces and has the power to promote, demote and dismiss high military officers. He himself, or with the consent of the Parliament, can declare war or peace.

(5) Foreign Relations:

The executive establishes political relations with foreign countries. Our government has established political or commercial relations with almost all big countries. The President appoints diplomatic representatives in other countries and receives those of foreign countries.

(6) Financial Functions:

Though the legislature controls the national finance, yet the executive prepares the budget and tries to get it passed by the legislature.



The Role of the Judiciary what is the Judiciary?

The judiciary is the branch of government which administers justice according to law. The term is used to refer broadly to the courts, the judges, magistrates, adjudicators and other support personnel who run the system. The courts apply the law, and settle disputes and punish law-breakers according to the law. Our judicial system is a key aspect of our democratic way of life. It upholds peace, order and good government. Citizens look to the judiciary to uphold their rights and governments look to the courts to interpret laws. The judiciary must act without fear of powerful interests, and without favouring individual parties. A court's ability to deliver justice depends on its power to enforce its rulings. Only a court of appeal can overturn the ruling of a lower court.

Separation of Powers

As a British colony, Australia adopted England's legal codes and principles. Therefore, we operate under the Westminster system which embraces the doctrine of the Separation of Powers. The judiciary is one of the three branches of government, the other two being the

parliament or the Legislature and the Executive government, which is made up of the Governor, the Premier and Ministers. The role of parliament is to make the laws, the Executive government carries out and enforces the laws, and the judiciary applies the laws in individual cases. Each branch of government has its own powers and authority and each branch exercises some power over the other two branches, but no single arm has more authority than another.

Independence of the Judiciary

Two safeguards exist to protect the independence of judges and magistrates: the way they are appointed and their system of tenure. The Governor-in-Council – that is, the Governor in consultation with government ministers – on the advice of the Attorney-General appoints judges and magistrates, who have constitutionally guaranteed tenure. This means that unless they choose to retire earlier, judges continue in office until they are 70 and magistrates until they are 65. They can only be removed from office by the Governor if the Parliament accepts a duly constituted tribunal's finding of proven misbehaviour or incapacity. Judges and magistrates cannot be removed from office simply because a government disagrees with their rulings.

Different Types of Courts

In Various Countries we have federal as well as state and territory/Lower courts. The state courts hear the vast majority of matters, from neighbourhood disputes to murder. The federal courts deal with matters not covered by state law. The High Court it is the highest of all courts, and hears original matters as well as appeals from lower courts. There is also the Supreme/ Federal Courts, the Family Courts, and Magistrates Courts. Generally, the federal courts hear matters relating to corporations, trade practices, industrial relations, bankruptcy, customs, immigration and other areas of federal law as well as matters relating to family law.

Court System of Pakistan

History

Pakistan's judicial system stems directly from the system that was used in British India as on independence in 1947, and the [Government of India Act 1935](#) was retained as a provisional Constitution. As a consequence, the legal and judicial system of the British period continued with due adaptations and modifications, where necessary, to suit the requirements of the new Republic.

Other roles of the Judiciary

The Supreme Court also conducts admission ceremonies for new legal practitioners, swearing-in ceremonies for new judges, and valedictory ceremonies for retiring judges. The Judges are actively engaged in programs of continuing judicial development. The courts perform an important educative role. Law students can access the court building to run moot courts to simulate the trial process. In rural areas, the Magistrates Court doubles as higher court when District Court judges visit to preside over matters. As well, the Magistrates Court in rural areas is the place where births, deaths and marriages are registered, and it acts as an agency for other government services. The Supreme Court deals with probate matters, which relates to the authenticating of wills and the revision of wills where the testator has not made adequate provision for the support of surviving family members.

Conclusion

In a state, courts are cornerstones of our democracy, distinctive for the transparency, predictability and accountability of their process.

Theory of Separation of Power



The three organs of the government—Legislature, Executive and Judiciary— perform the three essential functions of law-making, law-application and law- adjudication. This threefold division of governmental functions is universally accepted as the best way of organizing the government. These three functions are inter-related and inter-dependent. But these are performed by three different organs.

I. Central Idea of the Theory of Separation of Powers:

The Theory of Separation of Powers holds that the three organs of government must be separate and independent from one another. Any combination of these three functions into a single or two organs is harmful and dangerous for individual liberty. Separation of powers of the three organs is essential for the efficiency of the government and the liberty of the people. The theory of Separation of Powers holds that for keeping the government limited, which is necessary for protecting the liberty of the people, the three functions of government should be separated and performed by three separate organs.

II. Meaning of Separation of Powers:

In simple words, the theory of Separation of Powers advocates that the three powers of the government should be used by three separate organs. Legislature should use only law making powers, Executive should undertake only law enforcement functions, and Judiciary should perform only adjudication/Judicial functions. Their powers and responsibilities should be clearly defined and kept separate. This is essential for securing the liberty of the people.

Separation of Powers: Views of Montesquieu:

In his book *The Spirit of the Laws* (1748), Montesquieu enunciated and explained his theory of Separation of Powers. He wrote,

- (1) If the legislative and executive powers are combined in the same organ, the liberty of the people gets jeopardized because it leads to tyrannical exercise of these two powers.**
- (2) If the judicial and legislative powers are combined in the same organ, the interpretation of laws becomes meaningless because in this case the lawmaker also acts as the law interpreter and he never accepts the errors of his laws.**
- (3) If the judicial power is combined with the executive power and is given to one-person or one organ, the administration of justice becomes meaningless and faulty because then the police (Executive) becomes the judge (judiciary).**

(4) Finally if all the three legislative, executive and judicial powers are combined and given to one person or one organ, the concentration of power becomes so big that it virtually ends all liberty. It establishes despotism of that person or organ.

Main Supporters of the Theory of Separation of Powers:

The British jurist Blackstone and the founding fathers of the American constitution, particularly, Madison, Hamilton and Jefferson, extended their full support to the theory of separation of powers. They regarded Separation of Powers essential for protecting the liberty of the people.

Use of Separation of Powers in Modern Constitutions:

The theory of Separation of Powers guided the Declaration of Rights adopted after the French Revolution of 1789. It clearly stated that, "every society in which separation of powers is not determined has no constitution."

It laid down a governmental structure based on this theory. It gave the legislative powers to the US Congress, the executive powers to the US President and the judicial powers to the US Supreme Court. Each organ was kept separate from the other two.

The Universal Declaration of Human Rights, as adopted by the UN General Assembly on 10 December 1948, also accepted the principle of separation of powers. In fact, all contemporary democratic constitutions do provide for a separation of powers in one way or the other.

Theory of Separation of Powers:

Criticism:

1. Complete Separation is not possible:

The government is a single entity. Its three organs can never be completely separated. The legislative, executive and judicial functions are interdependent and inter-related functions and hence cannot be fully separated.

2. Complete Separation is not desirable:

Complete separation of three organs of government is neither possible nor desirable. It is not desirable because without mutual coordination these cannot carry out its functions effectively and efficiently. Complete separation of powers can seriously limit the unity and co-ordination needed by the three organs.

3. Impracticable in itself:

We cannot fully use separation of powers. The function of law-making cannot be entrusted only to the legislature. The needs of our times have made it essential to provide for law-making by the executive under the system of delegated legislation. Likewise, no one can or should prevent law-making by the judges in the form of case law and equity law.

4. Unhistorical:

The theory of Separation of Powers is unhistorical since it has never been operative in England. While formulating and advocating this theory, Montesquieu advocated that it was at work in England. Under the British parliamentary system of government, there was and continues to be a close relationship between the British Parliament and the Cabinet. Even there is no separation of judiciary from legislature in so far the British House of Lords acts as the highest court of appeals. The British Constitution has never been based on the theory separation of powers.

5. The three Organs of Government are not equal:

The Theory of Separation of Powers wrongly assumes the equality of all the three organs of the government. The legislature of the state is always regarded as the primary organ of

government. The work of the government begins by law-making. However, in actual practice the executive acts the most powerful organ of the government. The judiciary is the weakest of the three organs, yet it is always held in high esteem by the people. Hence the three organs are neither equal nor equally respected.

6. Separation of Powers can lead to deadlocks and inefficiency:

Separation of powers can lead to deadlocks and inefficiency in the working of the government. It can create a situation in which each organ can get engaged in conflict and deadlocks with other two organs.

7. Liberty does not depend only upon Separation of Powers:

The critics reject the view that liberty can be safeguarded only when there is a separation of powers among the three organs of the government. They argue that in the absence of fundamental rights, independence of judiciary, rule of law, economic equality and a spirit of democracy, there can be no liberty even when there may be present full separation of powers.

8. Separation of Functions and not of Powers:

The name 'Separation of Powers' is wrong because this theory really advocates a separation of functions. Power of the government is one whole. It cannot be separated into three separate parts. It is at the back of the functions of all the three organs of government. The theory of separation of powers is really a theory of separation of functions. Thus, the theory of Separation of Powers has several limitations. All scholars accept that absolute and rigid separation of powers is neither possible nor desirable. Three organs of government cannot be and should not be totally separated into unrelated water-tight compartments.

Separation of Powers and Checks and Balances:

The theory of Checks and Balances holds that no organ of power should be given unchecked power in its sphere. The power of one organ should be restrained and checked with the power of the other two organs. In this way a balance should be secured which should prevent any arbitrary use of power by any organ of the government. The legislative power should be in the hands of the legislature but the executive and judiciary should have some checking powers over it with a view to prevent any misuse or arbitrary use of legislative powers by the legislature. Likewise, the executive powers should be vested with the executive but legislature and judiciary should be given some checking powers over it. The same should be the case of the judiciary and its power should be in some respects checked by the legislature and executive. In other words, each organ should have some checking power over the other two organs and there should prevail, a balance among the three organs of government. In fact, the theories of Separation of Powers and Checks and Balances always go together. These have been together in operation in the US Constitution.

Sovereignty meaning and Characteristics of Sovereignty

Meaning:

The terms "Sovereign" and "Sovereignty" were first used by the French jurists in the fifteenth century and later they found their way into English, Italian and German political literature. The use of the term "Sovereignty" in Political Science dates back to the publication of Bodin's "The Republic" in 1576. "The word sovereign", says J.S. Roucek and others, "entered the vocabulary of political theory from the feudal order, wherein it designated a relationship between persons. The term sovereign had been applicable to any feudal overlord with authority over subjects in his own dominions".

Two Aspects of Sovereignty:

There are two aspects of sovereignty: internal sovereignty and external sovereignty. Internal Sovereignty means some persons, assembly of group of persons in every independent state have the final legal authority to command and enforce obedience.

This sovereignty exercises its absolute authority over all individuals or associations of the individuals within the state. Professor Harold Laski has very aptly remarked in this connection: "It issues orders to all men and all associations within that area; it receives orders from none of them. It wills is subject to no legal limitation of any kind. What it proposes is right by mere announcement of intention".

We mean, by External Sovereignty, that the State is subject to no other authority and is independent of any compulsion on the part of other States. Every independent state reserves the authority to renounce trade treaties and to enter into military agreements. Each estate is independent of other states.

Definitions of Sovereignty:

(1) "That characteristic of the state by virtue of which it cannot be legally bound except by its own or limited by any power other than itself.

(2) "Sovereignty is the sovereign political power vested in him whose acts are not subject to any other and whose will cannot be over-ridden".

(3) "Sovereignty is the supreme power of the State over citizens and subjects unrestrained by law".

(4) Sovereignty is "the common power of the state, it is the will of the nation organised in the state, it is right to give unconditional orders to all individuals in the territory of state".

(5) Burgess characterised sovereign is the "Original, absolute, unlimited power over the individual subjects and over all associations of subjects".

(6) "Sovereignty is that power which is neither temporary nor delegated, nor subject to particular rules which it cannot alter, not answerable to any other power over earth".

(7) "Sovereignty is the supreme will of the state".

(8) "Sovereignty is the daily operative power of framing and giving efficacy to the laws".

(9) Sovereignty is "the supreme, irresistible, absolute, uncontrolled authority in which the 'jurist summi imperi' reside".

(10) The sovereignty is "legally supreme over an individual or group, says Laski, he possesses "supreme coercive power".

Characteristics or Attributes of Sovereignty

According to Dr. Garner, following are the characteristics or attributes of Sovereignty:

(1) Permanence.

(2) Exclusiveness.

(3) All-Comprehensiveness.

(4) Inalienability.

(5) Unity.

(6) Imprescriptibility.

(7) Indivisibility.

(8) Absoluteness or illimitability.

(9) Originality.

Islamic Concept of Sovereignty

Basic Difference

The basic distinction between Western polity and Islamic polity is that while the former places sovereignty in either the state or in the in charge through the notion of popular sovereignty, the latter places it absolutely in Allah. Thus the simple explanation of Islamic polity is that God is sovereign and He is the source of all legislation in the form of Quran. The Islamic states base their precepts on Islamic law and constitution, the Shariah. Tauheed, the Oneness of God is the most important article of faith in Islam. The denial of this unity is the greatest conceivable violation of Islamic precepts.

Islamic Concept and other thinkers

The sovereign by definition is universal as a Muslim community is seen as one Ummah (people), which are, united under one sovereign by virtue of their faith and submission to the will of God. The word Islam means complete submission to God in the similar sense that the English philosopher Thomas Hobbes visualised the complete surrender of power by the individual to the state. The Islamic concept of submission is more powerful in that it subordinates human will to the will and law of God unconditionally. It is an ontological requirement and not a condition of any contract. Thus to state succinctly the Quranic concept of sovereignty is universal that is non territorial, transcendental, meaning beyond human agency, invisible, inalienable and truly absolute. Man as God's Khalifa on earth (viceregent) is not only the primary agent of the sovereign but also enjoys a margin of autonomy. This margin of autonomy by virtue of viceregency is the Islamic equivalent of popular sovereignty.

Basic Islamic Theme

According to Islam, sovereignty belongs to Allah. He alone is the Law Giver and believers could neither resort to totally independent legislation nor could they modify any law laid down by God. Islamic state is a political agency set up to enforce the laws of God. Herein lie the cardinal differences between the modern and Islamic conceptions. While modernity makes the state an agency of the sovereignty, in Islam the state is a repository of the Sovereign. Thus the Islamic state is conceptually stronger than the modern state.

Adoptability of Sovereignty

Nevertheless, Muslims must understand that while sovereignty belongs to Allah, it has already been delegated in the form of human agency (Quran 2:30). The political task at the moment is not to indulge in rhetoric but to reflect on how this God given agency can be best employed in creating a society that will bring welfare and goodness to people here and in the Hereafter. Muslims as individuals and as Ummah cannot be held accountable for what they do unless they have the freedom/sovereignty to do as they please. The discretion and the judgment with which Muslims apply the given law to achieve their purpose is nobody's business but of their own alone.

Islamic Political System

Basic Principles

The political system of Islam has been based on three principles, viz., Tawheed (Oneness of God), Risalat (Prophet hood) and Khilafat (Caliphate). It is difficult to appreciate the different aspects of the Islamic policy without fully understanding these three principles. I will, therefore, begin with a brief exposition of them. Tawheed (Oneness) means that one God alone is the Creator, Sustainer and Master of this universe and of all that exists in it organic or inorganic.

Directions for Legislation

They are the bountiful provisions of God and in bestowing them upon us, no one is as Him. Hence, it is neither for us to decide the aim and purpose of our existence or to prescribe the limits in our worldly authority nor is anyone else entitled to make these decisions for us. This right vest only in God who has created us endowed us with mental and physical faculties, and provided all material provisions for our use. This principle of the Oneness of God altogether negates the concept of the legal and political sovereignty of human beings, individually or collectively. Nothing can claim sovereignty, be it a human being, a family, a class or group of people, or even the human race in the world as a whole. God alone is the Sovereign and His Commandments are the Law of Islam.

Risalat” (رسالت)

The medium through which we receive the Law of God is known as “Risalat” (Prophethood). We have received two things from this source:

The Book in which God has expounded His Law; and The authoritative interpretation and exemplification of the Book of God by the Prophet, through his word and deed, in his capacity as the last messenger of God. The broad principles on which the system of human life should be based have been stated in the Book of God. Further, the Prophet of God has, in accordance with the intention of the Divine Book, set up for us a model of the system of life in Islam by practically implementing the law and providing necessary details where required. The combination of these two elements, according to Islamic terminology, is called the “Shari’ah”.

Subservience to Allah

This special role relating man to his Creator is subservience to Allah and worship of Him. All aspects of man’s life are based on this consideration. Thus, the meaning of worship must be extended to go beyond mere rituals into all activities since Allah does not only call upon us to perform rituals but His injunctions regulate all aspects of life. The Qur’an develops this theme:

“Behold, thy Lord said to the angels: ‘I will create a vicegerent on earth’” (Qur’an 2:30)

It is this Khilafat on earth which encompasses the range of activities of this human being. It consists in settlement on earth, exploration of its resources and energies, fulfillment of Allah’s purpose of making full use of its resources and developing life on it. In brief this task requires the implementation of Allah’s way which is in harmony with the Divine Law governing the whole universe.

With this healthy frame of mind, based on the right understanding on man’s role in this universe, man becomes ready to implement Allah’s teaching, as communicated through the message of Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him).

This is exactly what Islam means when it lays down that man is Khalifah (servant) of God on the earth. The state that is established in accordance with this political theory will have to fulfill the purpose and intent of God by working on God’s earth within the limits prescribed by Him and in conformity with His instructions and injunctions.

Purpose of the Islamic State

I shall now place before you a brief outline of the type of state which is built on the foundation of Tawheed (the Oneness of God), “Risalat” (the Prophethood of Muhammad) and “Khilafat” (the Caliphate).

The Holy Qur’an clearly states that the aim and purpose of this state is the establishment, maintenance and development of those virtues, with which the Creator of this universe wishes the human life to be adorned and the prevention and eradication of those evils the presence of which in human life is utterly abhorrent to God. The state in Islam is not intended for political administration only nor for the fulfillment through it of the collective will of any particular set

of people; rather, Islam places a high ideal before the state for the achievement of which, it must use all the means at its disposal. And this purpose is that the qualities of purity, beauty, goodness, virtue, success and prosperity which God wants to flourish in the life of His people, should be engendered and evolved.

Fundamental Rights

These and a few other provisions have been laid by Islam fundamental rights for every man by virtue of his status as a human being to be enjoyed under the constitution of an Islamic state. Even the rights of citizenship in Islam are not confined to persons born within the limits of its state but are granted to every Muslim irrespective of his place of birth.

And every Muslim is to be regarded as eligible and fit for all positions of the highest responsibility in an Islamic State without any discussions of race color or class. Islam has also laid down certain rights for the non-Muslims who may be living within the boundaries of an Islamic State and these rights must necessarily from part of the Islamic Constitution.

According to the Islamic terminology such non- Muslims are Dhimme (the covenant). Implying that the Islamic state has entered into a covenant with them and guaranteed their protection. The life, property and protected exactly life that of a Muslim citizen. There is no difference at all between a Muslim and Dhimme in respect of the civil or criminal law. The Islamic State shall not interfere with the personal law of the Dhimme. They will have full freedom of conscience and belief.

Executive and Legislative

The responsibility for the administration of the Government, in an Islamic state, is entrusted to an Amir (leader or chief) who may be likened to the President or the Prime Minister in the conventional democratic state.

The basic qualifications for the election of an Amir are that he should command the confidence of the *Ahlul Hal Wal'aqd* (The Constitutional Body).

They are recruited from among the scholars (of Islam), leaders, and notables who effectively have the duty to carry out this task of appointing the ruler. In this, they do not act on their own personal preferences, but on behalf of the whole nation, being as they are, its representatives. Three conditions must be met for eligibility to membership of this body, namely:

Need of Shoora

But as long as he retains such confidence he will have the authority to govern and exercise the powers of the Government, of course, in consultation with the Shura (the advisory council) and within the limits set by a Shari'ah. Every citizen will have the right to criticize the Amir should he deviate from the straight path, fail to honor the trust laid in him, transgress and tyrannize over people, change his conduct for the worst, freeze the implementation of Allah's penal code, or flouts Allah's regulations in anyway. If he fails to live up to one of the conditions stipulated for his eligibility to the office, the nation has the right to overrule his judgment either by correcting him or by deposing them.

Directions for Legislation

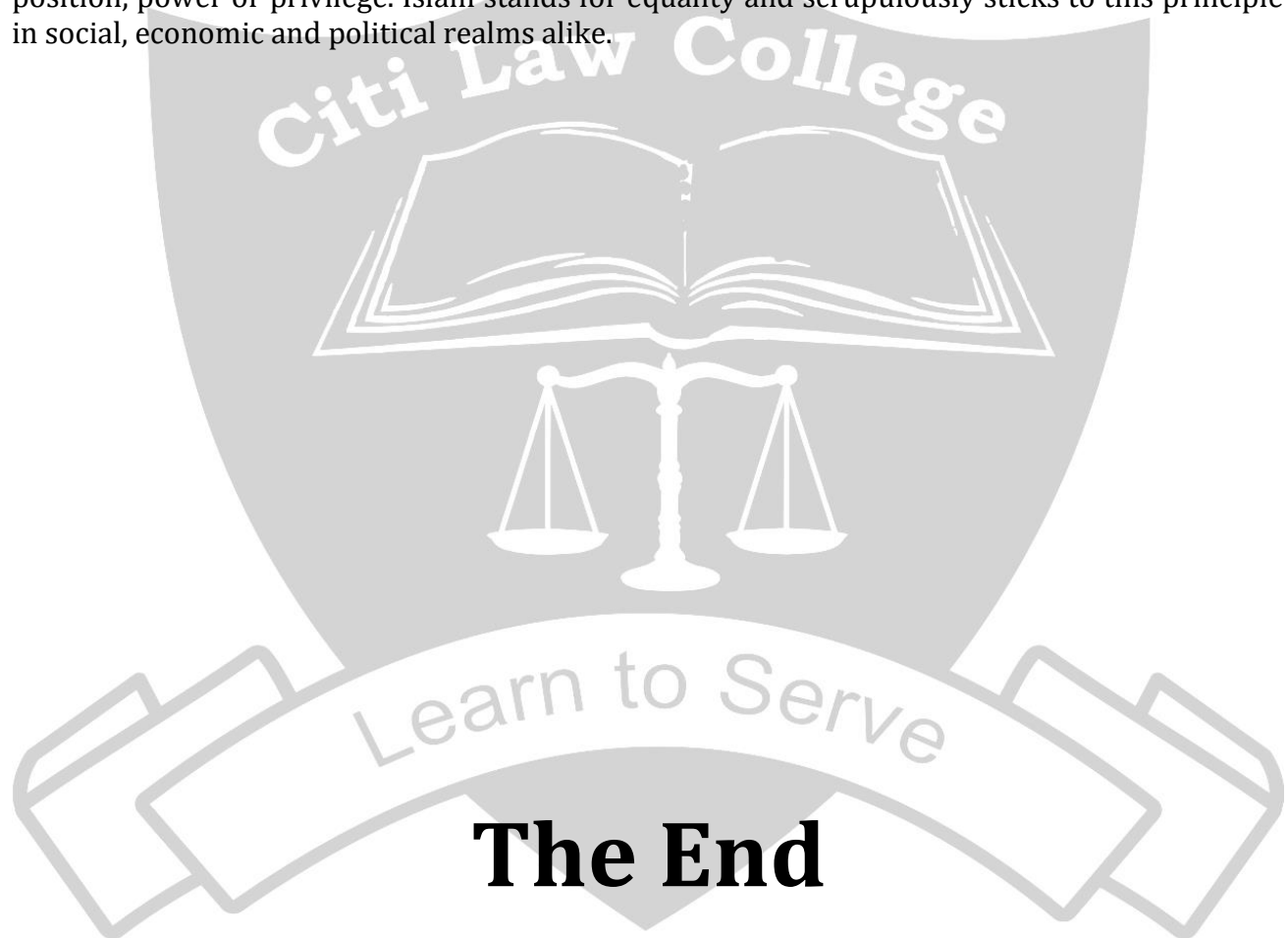
Legislation in an Islamic state will be restricted within the limits prescribed by the law of the Shari'ah. The injunctions of God and His legislative body can make any alterations or modifications in them or make any law repugnant to them. As for the commandments which are liable to two or more interpretations the duty of ascertaining the real intent of the Shari'ah, in such cases, will devolve on people possessing a specialized knowledge of the law of Shari'ah. Hence, such affairs will have to be referred to a sub-committee of the advisory council comprising men learned in Islamic Law. A vast field will still be available for legislation on

questions not covered by any specific injunctions of the Shari'ah and the advisory council or legislature will be free to legislate in regard to these matters.

The Judiciary in Islam

In Islam the judiciary is not placed under the control of the executive. It derives its authority directly from the Shari'ah and is answerable to God. The judges, no doubt can be appointed by the Government but once a judge has occupied the bench he will have to administer justice among the people according to the law of God in an impartial manner.

The organs and functionaries of the Government will not be outside his legal jurisdiction much so that even the highest executive authority of the Government is liable to be called upon to appear in a court of law as a plaintiff or defendant like any other citizen of the state. Rulers and the ruled are subject to the same law and there can be no discrimination on the basis of position, power or privilege. Islam stands for equality and scrupulously sticks to this principle in social, economic and political realms alike.





سٹی لاء کالج



الحاق شدہ یونیورسٹی آف آزاد جموں و کشمیر

*Join Quaid-e-Azam's Profession
by Earning a Professional Degree in Law*

ADMISSION OPEN

LLB

5 سالہ
پروگرام

اہلیت: انٹر میڈیٹ سیکنڈ ڈویژن + LAT

نزد CMH، راولا کوٹ آزاد جموں و کشمیر www.clc.edu.pk

05824-442207 | 0332-4442207

0332-4442207 | 05824-442207